

## **PHP 5 Fast & Easy Web Development**

by Julie C. Meloni

ISBN:1592004733

Course Technology © 2004 (545 pages)

Get up and running with PHP 5, Apache, and MySQL with ease. This guide demonstrates how to display dynamic content, build your own contact management system, create custom reports, work with XML, and much more.

## **Table of Contents**

### **PHP 5 Fast & Easy Web Development**

#### Introduction

#### **Part I - Getting Started**

Chapter 1 - Installing and Configuring MySQL

Chapter 2 - Installing Apache

Chapter 3 - Installing PHP

#### **Part II - The Absolute Basics of Coding in PHP**

Chapter 4 - Mixing PHP and HTML

Chapter 5 - Introducing Variables and Operators

Chapter 6 - Using PHP Variables

#### **Part III - Start with the Simple Stuff**

Chapter 7 - Displaying Dynamic Content

Chapter 8 - Sending E-Mail

Chapter 9 - Using Your File System

Chapter 10 - Uploading Files to Your Website

#### **Part IV - Getting to Know Your MySQL Database**

Chapter 11 - Establishing a Connection and Poking

Around

[Chapter 12](#) - Creating a Database Table

[Chapter 13](#) - Inserting Data into the Table

[Chapter 14](#) - Selecting and Displaying Data

### **Part V - User Authentication and Tracking**

[Chapter 15](#) - Database-Driven User Authentication

[Chapter 16](#) - Using Cookies

[Chapter 17](#) - Session Basics

### **Part VI - Creating Your Own Contact Management System**

[Chapter 18](#) - Planning Your System

[Chapter 19](#) - Adding Contacts

[Chapter 20](#) - Modifying Contacts

[Chapter 21](#) - Deleting Contacts

[Chapter 22](#) - Working with Contacts

### **Part VII - Additional Project Examples**

[Chapter 23](#) - Managing a Simple Mailing List

[Chapter 24](#) - Creating Custom Logs and Reports

[Chapter 25](#) - Working with XML

### **Part VIII - Appendixes**

[Appendix A](#) - Additional Configuration Options

[Appendix B](#) - Basic PHP Language Reference

[Appendix C](#) - Writing Your Own Functions and Objects

[Appendix D](#) - Database Normalization and SQL  
Reference

[Appendix E](#) - Using SQLite

[Appendix F](#) - Getting Help

[Index](#)

[List of Tables](#)

## **Back Cover**

Don't spend your time wading through manuals to learn PHP 5. Spend it doing what you do best—creating web pages! With *PHP 5 Fast & Easy Web Development* you can get up and running with PHP 5, Apache, and MySQL with ease. By the time you're finished, you'll be able to display dynamic content, build your own contact management system, create custom reports, work with XML, and much more. Less time, less effort, more results!

Screen by screen, use this comprehensive PHP 5 guide to:

- Install PHP, Apache, and MySQL
- Master the basics of coding in PHP
- Create and manipulate tables in your MySQL database
- Design and build a contact management system
- Create custom logs and reports

### **About the Author**

Julie Meloni is the technical director for i2i Interactive, a multimedia company located in Los Altos, CA. She's been developing web-based applications since the web first saw the light of day and remembers the excitement surrounding the first GUI web browser. She is the author of several books and articles on web-based programming languages and database topics,

and you can find translations of her work in several languages, including Chinese, Italian, Portuguese, Polish, and even Serbian.

# **PHP 5 Fast & Easy Web Development**

**Julie Meloni**



A DIVISION OF COURSE TECHNOLOGY

Copyright © 2004 by Thomson Course Technology PTR.

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage or retrieval system without written permission from Thomson Course Technology PTR, except for the inclusion of brief quotations in a review.

The Thomson Course Technology PTR logo and related trade dress are trademarks of Thomson Course Technology PTR and may not be used without written permission.

**SVP, Thomson Course Technology PTR:** Andy Shafran

**Publisher:** Stacy L. Hiquet

**Senior Marketing Manager:** Sarah O'Donnell

**Marketing Manager:** Heather Hurley

**Manager of Editorial Services:** Heather Talbot

**Senior Editor:** Mark Garvey

**Associate Marketing Managers:** Kristin Eisenzopf and Sarah Dubois

**Project/Copy Editor:** Kezia Endsley

**Technical Reviewer:** Arlie Hartman

**Thomson Course Technology PTR Market Coordinator:** Amanda

Weaver

**Interior Layout Tech:** Jill Flores

**Cover Designer:** Mike Tanamachi

**Indexer:** Sharon Shock

**Proofreader:** Sean Medlock

Microsoft, Windows, and Internet Explorer are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries. Netscape is a registered trademark of Netscape Communications Corporation in the U.S. and other countries. PHP is copyrighted by The PHP Group, and is released under the PHP License. MySQL is copyrighted by MySQL AB and is released under the GNU General Public License. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

**Important:** Thomson Course Technology PTR cannot provide software support. Please contact the appropriate software manufacturer's technical support line or website for assistance.

Thomson Course Technology PTR and the author have attempted throughout this book to distinguish proprietary trademarks from descriptive terms by following the capitalization style used by the manufacturer.

Information contained in this book has been obtained by Thomson Course Technology PTR from sources believed to be reliable. However, because of the possibility of human or mechanical error by our sources, Thomson Course Technology PTR, or others, the Publisher does not guarantee the accuracy, adequacy, or completeness of any information and is not responsible for any errors or omissions or the results obtained from use of such information. Readers should be particularly aware of the fact that the Internet is an ever-changing entity. Some facts may have changed since this book went to press.

Educational facilities, companies, and organizations interested in multiple copies or licensing of this book should contact the publisher for quantity discount information. Training manuals, CD-ROMs, and portions of this book are also available individually or can be tailored for specific needs.  
ISBN: 1-59200-473-3

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: 2004091914

Printed in the United States of America

04 05 06 07 08 BH 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Course PTR, a division of Course Technology  
25 Thomson Place  
Boston, MA 02210  
<http://www.courseptr.com>

## Acknowledgments

Thanks as always to the PHP Group, Zend Technologies, the Apache Software Foundation, and MySQL AB for creating and maintaining such wonderful and accessible products for all users.

Thanks to every single PHP user and developer, because without you, I wouldn't have anything to write about.

Great thanks to the all the editors who worked with me on all the editions of this book!

Enormous thanks to everyone at i2i Interactive, for their never-ending support and encouragement.

## About the Author

**Julie Meloni** is the technical director for i2i Interactive, a multimedia company located in Los Altos, CA. She's been developing web-based applications since the web first saw the light of day and remembers the excitement surrounding the first GUI web browser. She is the author of several books and articles on web-based programming languages and database topics, and you can find translations of her work in several

languages, including Chinese, Italian, Portuguese, Polish, and even Serbian.

# Introduction

If you would have told me four years ago that this little book would be so popular as to warrant a third edition, I would have laughed at you. But the style of this book, and its contents, has proven to be quite suitable for the beginning PHP programmer. The *Fast & Easy Web Development* style is a step-by-step, learn-by-example path to learning a new programming language—with pictures included! Unlike the verbose text-only chapters found in most programming books, the *Fast & Easy Web Development* style appeals to users who are new to PHP, and especially to programming in general.

This third edition takes into account feedback received from the first two editions, but holds true to the original content structure and path to learning. For example, the first three chapters are dedicated to getting Apache, MySQL, and PHP up and running on your Windows or Linux machine. You might be surprised at how simple it is, and how quickly you'll be up and running—which is good because you need all three technologies to be working in order to continue with the lessons.

In this edition, some chapters have been added to provide additional projects for practicing your new skills, and also to account for new elements present in version 5 of PHP. After completing this book, you will have a strong foundation in the basics of web-based technologies and application design, and will be prepared to learn more advanced topics and programming methodologies. However, before jumping into all that, take a moment to familiarize yourself with PHP and why it is such a wonderful language to learn and use.

## What is PHP?

Its official name is PHP: Hypertext Preprocessor, and it is a server-side scripting language. When your web browser accesses a URL, it is making a request to a web server. When you request a PHP page, something like <http://www.yourcompany.com/home.php>, the web server wakes up the PHP parsing engine and says, "Hey! You've got to do something before I send a result back to this person's web browser." Then, the PHP parsing engine runs through the PHP code found in `home.php`, and returns the resulting output. This output is passed back to the web server as part of the HTML code in the document, which in turn is passed on to your browser, which displays it to you.

## A Brief History of PHP

In 1994, an incredibly forward-thinking man named Rasmus Lerdorf developed a set of tools that used a parsing engine to interpret a few macros here and there. They were not extravagant: a guest book, a counter, and some other "home page" elements that were cool when the web was in its infancy. He eventually combined these tools with a form interpretation (FI) package he had written, added some database support, and released what was known as PHP/FI.

Then, in the spirit of Open Source software development, developers all over the world began contributing to PHP/FI. By 1997, more than 50,000 websites were using PHP/FI to accomplish different tasks—connecting to a database, displaying dynamic content, and so on.

At that point, the development process really started becoming a team effort. With primary assistance from developers Zeev Suraski and Andi Gutmans, the version 3.0 parser was created. The final release of PHP 3.0 occurred in June of 1998, when it was upgraded to include support for multiple platforms (it's not just for Linux anymore!) and web servers, numerous databases, and SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) and IMAP (Internet Message Access Protocol). Then, the birth of PHP 4.0 occurred. No small version change, PHP 4.0 marked a complete rethinking of the PHP core and a rewrite of the internals of the scripting language itself. The PHP development team and Zend Technologies produced a remarkable product with nearly a 50-fold performance improvement over version 3.0, with a long list of new and useful features.

As if that weren't enough, PHP 5 has been in the works almost since PHP 4 was released, culminating in what we have today: an even faster, feature-rich programming language suitable for procedural or object-oriented scripts, which warrants a place in the enterprise.

## What Does PHP Do?

PHP does anything you want, except sit on its head and spin. Actually, with a little on-the-fly image manipulation and Dynamic HTML, it could probably do that, too.

According to the PHP manual, "The goal of the language is to allow web developers to write dynamically generated pages quickly."

Here are some common uses of PHP, all of which are part of what you'll learn in this book:

- Perform system functions: create, open, read from, write to, and close files on your system; execute system commands; create directories; and modify permissions.
- Gather data from forms: save the data to a file, send data via e-mail, and return manipulated data to the user.
- Access databases and generate content on-the-fly, or create a web interface for adding, deleting, and modifying elements within your database.
- Set cookies and access cookie variables.
- Start sessions and use session variables and objects.
- Restrict access to sections of your website.
- Create images on-the-fly.
- Encrypt data.

These are just basic, everyday uses. PHP also includes support for integrating with Java servlets, XML, and a myriad of other higher-level functions. The possibilities literally are endless.

## Why PHP 5?

It's natural that languages continue to develop, and PHP 5 has done just that—its changes represent the next step in the growth and development of the language. There was nothing fundamentally wrong with PHP 4, and in fact the vast majority of this book can be used on servers running PHP 4 and not PHP 5. The changes in PHP 5 revolve around high-level aspects of the language, namely the object model.

If you are coming to PHP from another programming languages, especially a highly structured, specifically object-oriented language, the crossover to a flexible, procedural language that just happens to handle object-oriented programming can be frustrating. But, the ease of use and robustness is one of the reasons new programmers are drawn to PHP in the first place—the learning curve isn't steep, *and* it gets the job done.

However, this also presents a marketing problem for PHP users working in an enterprise setting. Some Powers That Be might not think PHP is suitable for enterprise-level application development, because it is not a time-tested, structured, object-oriented programming language such as C or even Java. There might not be the time or opportunity for a developer to convince her managers otherwise by showing examples of PHP and C or Java performing the same tasks—if you even can, with the same level of structure, security, reusability, and exception-handling.

From these and other problems came the development path for PHP 5, the main purposes of which were to improve the object model, instill a sense of programming discipline, and specifically design a version of PHP that meets the needs of object-oriented developers and allows them to interface with Java, .NET, and other enterprise-level application frameworks.

But beginning users—likely the primary audience of this book—will not face objects, classes, .NET, or XML-integration their first day on the job. These users simply want a fast, flexible language they can use to create basic, dynamic websites, and PHP 5 still meets that need. Although PHP 5 contains an enhanced internal scripting engine and a vastly improved object-oriented framework, the PHP Group and Zend Technologies

recognize and appreciate the roots of PHP and the core group of users who have made it so pervasive. As with PHP 4, PHP 5 does not force you to use the elements of the language you don't need.

## Overview of Changes in PHP 5

Because this book does not provide lessons in programming PHP from an object-oriented point of view, this section will not go into detail and show examples of the object model changes in PHP 5. For that, I highly recommend Harry Fuecks' article "PHP5: Coming Soon to a Webserver Near You," at <http://www.sitepoint.com/article/1192/>. This article contains an outstanding dissection of the object-related changes in PHP 5, and how to implement them.

A few other major features are part of PHP 5, including the appearance of SQLite, an embedded database engine. This is not at all meant to replace a robust database like MySQL, PostgreSQL, or Oracle. Instead, this simple, speedy little database can store database files in both files and memory and thus would be good for something like storing session data and application configuration information—simple `INSERTs` and `SELECTs`. Although this book uses MySQL as its database of choice, you can learn more about SQLite in [Appendix E](#), "Using SQLite."

Another change is in the XML arena. PHP 4 used several third-party libraries to control XML parsing and rendering, thus there was no single stable and reliable XML rendering and parsing mechanism. PHP 5 provides one XML library, Gnome's `libxml`, as the foundation for the DOM extension. This library is very fast and full-featured, and thus a solid foundation on which to rebuild the XML functionality in PHP. You will learn more about working with XML in PHP 5 in [Chapter 25](#), "Working with XML."

## Backwards Compatibility with PHP 4

The changelog and PHP manual always indicate when a new implementation will cause problems in previous versions, so at least read the changelog thoroughly if not the manual entries for your favorite

functions. However, the vast majority of PHP 5 focuses on additional functionality rather than completely replacing existing elements. If you have learned PHP using PHP 4, you might find that none of your scripts *require* a rewrite.

Requiring a rewrite and rewriting scripts for the sake of utilizing new functionality are completely different—you might want to rewrite to take advantage of new object-oriented functionality, but you might not have to. If your code is primarily procedural (as with the scripts in this book), there's a better than 95% chance that no rewrites will be necessary.

Similarly, if you cannot install PHP on your own machine for development or product purposes, as outlined in [Chapter 3](#), "Installing PHP," and must use PHP 4, do not fret. Anything taught in this book that doesn't work in PHP 4 is indicated as such.

## Is PHP Right for You?

Only you can decide if PHP should be your language of choice, whether you're developing sites for personal or commercial use on a small or large scale. I can only tell you that in the commercial realm, I've worked with all the popular server-side scripting languages—Active Server Pages (ASP), ColdFusion, JavaServer Pages (JSP), Perl, and PHP—on numerous platforms and various web servers, with varying degrees of success. PHP is the right choice for me: it's flexible, fast, and simple in its requirements, yet powerful in its output.

Before deciding whether to use PHP in a large-scale or commercial environment, consider your answers to these questions:

- Can you say with absolute certainty that you will always use the same web server hardware and software? If not, look for something cross-platform that is available for all types of web servers: PHP.
- Will you always have the exact same development team comprised entirely of ASP (or Java Server Pages or ColdFusion) developers? Or will you use whoever is available, thus necessitating a language that is easy to learn and syntactically similar to C and Perl? If you have reason to believe that your ASP or JSP or ColdFusion developers might drop off the face of the earth, don't use those tools—use PHP.
- Are memory and server load an issue? If so, don't use bloated third-party software that leaks precious memory—use PHP.

Here's the bottom line: PHP is simple, so just try it! If you like it, continue using it.

It's Open Source, so help improve it. Join a mailing list and help others. If you don't like it, you're only out the money for this book, and the software can be uninstalled without rendering your machine completely inoperable.

## **Who Should Read this Book?**

This book is designed for individuals who possess a general understanding of the concepts of working in a Web-based development environment, be it Linux/Unix or Windows. Installation and configuration related chapters assume that you have familiarity with your operating system and the basic methods of building (on Linux/Unix systems) or installing (on Windows systems) software.

Chapters discussing how to program with PHP, which make up the bulk of the book, assume no previous knowledge of the language. However, if you have experience with other programming languages such as C or Perl, you will find these lessons to be quite simple. Similarly, if you have worked with other databases such as Oracle or Microsoft SQL Server, you will have a good foundation for working through the MySQL-related chapters.

The only real requirement before reading this book is that you understand static web content creation with HTML. If you are just starting out in the world of web development, you will still be able to use this book, but you should consider working through an HTML tutorial first. If you are comfortable creating basic documents and uploading them to your web server, you will be fine.

# How this Book is Organized

This book is divided into eight parts, corresponding to particular topic groups. The chapters within each part build on the information found in those before it:

- [Part I](#), "Getting Started," walks you through the installation and configuration of MySQL, Apache, and PHP. You'll need to complete the lessons in [Part I](#) before moving on, unless you already have access to a working installation of these technologies.
- [Part II](#), "The Absolute Basics of Coding in PHP," teaches you the basics of the PHP language, starting with variables and the core structure of the language. The numerous hands-on examples will get you in the habit of writing code, uploading it, and testing the results.
- [Part III](#), "Start with the Simple Stuff," builds on the basics learned in the previous chapters, and helps you to create multi-part scripts and display dynamic content, among other things.
- [Part IV](#), "Getting to Know Your MySQL Database," introduces you to the concept of working with databases in general and MySQL in particular, and shows you how to create PHP scripts to communicate with MySQL and perform various tasks.
- [Part V](#), "User Authentication and Tracking," shows you how to use PHP to restrict access to your applications, and how to set cookies and work with user sessions, including the storage of user preferences.
- [Part VI](#), "Creating Your Own Contact Management System," contains several chapters which walk you through the design and creation of a specific type of application, in this case a contact management system, also known as a web-based address book.
- [Part VII](#), "Additional Project Examples," contains chapters devoted to other popular types of projects, such as managing a

mailing list, creating custom reports, and working with XML.

- [\*\*Part VIII\*\*](#), "Appendices," contains several handy references for the PHP and SQL languages, as well as other information including how to use SQLite and where to go to find help and additional tutorials.

## Conventions Used in this Book

This book uses different typefaces to differentiate between code and plain English, and also to help you identify important concepts.

Throughout the lessons, code, commands, and text you type or see on-screen appear in a monospaced typeface. New terms appear in *italics* at the point in the text where they are defined.

## **More Stuff**

Any errata and additional information for this and my other books can be found at <http://www.thickbook.com/>. At this site, you can download all the code samples in this book, and you will be alerted to any printing errors.

## **Part I: Getting Started**

## **Chapter List**

[Chapter 1:](#) Installing and Configuring MySQL

[Chapter 2:](#) Installing Apache

[Chapter 3:](#) Installing PHP

# **Chapter 1: Installing and Configuring MySQL**

## Overview

MySQL is the database of choice for a vast majority of web developers who use PHP, because of its efficiency and ease of use. Plus, MySQL is free, runs on multiple platforms, and its documentation is superb. When using MySQL with PHP, it's easiest to install MySQL first, because during the PHP installation and configuration process, you must tell the PHP configuration script that you plan to use MySQL in order to activate the MySQL-specific functions. As such, it's best to make sure that MySQL is present on your system, in case there are any library mismatch issues that would cause PHP to fail in its compilation. In this chapter, you learn how to:

- Install MySQL on Windows or Linux
- Create a sample database
- Create a sample table

## Various MySQL Distributions

The most popular distribution of MySQL is the open source version from MySQL AB. However, there are also commercial versions of MySQL, as well as distributions of MySQL bundled with application server software. No matter which option you choose, a solution is available for you on all platforms—any Unix-like operating system, as well as on Windows 95/98/NT/2000/XP/2003. This chapter assumes you're using the MySQL installation files from the MySQL website.

If you are using MySQL as part of a web-hosting package through an Internet service provider, you don't have to worry about downloading and installing the application in this chapter. Instead, you just need to work with your ISP to get your username and password. In almost all cases, your ISP will be running the MySQL distribution from MySQL AB. There's no harm in setting up MySQL on a development machine, if you have one available (your own workstation fits that bill), just to better understand the process. To that end, if you have a Linux workstation or server, MySQL was likely included on your OS distribution CDs as an installation option, and perhaps you even installed it already. In that case, you should check the MySQL website to compare the version numbers, and download a newer version if one is available.

The installation instructions in this chapter are based on the MySQL version 4.0.x, distributed by MySQL AB.

**Note** If you are using MySQL at your ISP and they are still using a 3.23.x version, don't worry—you will be able to use all of the database-related examples in this book.

# Installing MySQL on Windows

The MySQL installation process on Windows 95/98/NT/2000/XP/2003 is based on an executable setup program provided by MySQL AB. Once you download the zip file, all you have to do is extract its contents into a temporary directory and run the setup.exe application. After the setup.exe application installs the MySQL server and client programs, you're ready to start the MySQL server.

1. Visit the MySQL 4.0.x download page, at <http://www.mysql.com/downloads/> mysql-4.0.html, and find the Windows section on the page. There are two options; you want the one that doesn't say "without installer." In other words, you want the installer version, but it is not explicitly named as such.
2. Clicking the Download link will take you to a page of mirror sites. Select the mirror site closest to you, and click on either the HTTP or FTP link to download the file. Using the HTTP method is usually quicker.
3. Once the zip file is on your hard drive, extract its contents to a temporary directory.
4. From the temporary directory, find the setup.exe file and double-click it to start the installation. You will see the first screen of the installation wizard, as shown in the following figure. Click Next to continue.



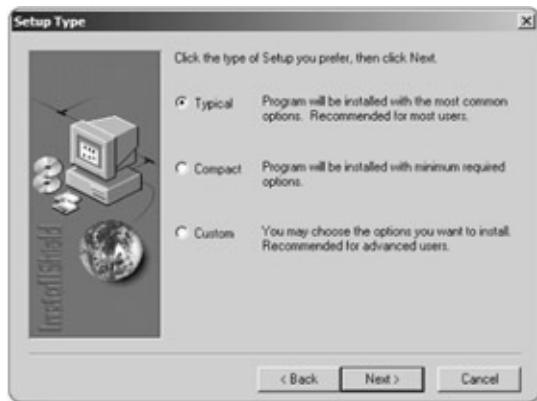
5. The second screen in the installation process contains valuable information regarding the installation location. The default installation location is C:\\mysql, but if you plan to install MySQL in a different location, this screen shows you a few changes that you will have to make on your own. The information on this screen is also important for Windows NT users who want to start MySQL as a service. Read the information and note anything relevant to your situation, and then click Next to continue.



6. With the third screen in the installation process, you select the installation location. If you want to install MySQL in the default location, click Next to continue. Otherwise, click Browse and navigate to the location of your choice, and then click Next to continue.



7. The fourth screen has you select the installation method—Typical, Compact, or Custom. Select Typical, and click Next to continue.



8. The installation process now takes over and installs files in their proper locations. When the process is finished, you will see a confirmation of completion. Click Finish to complete the setup process.



MySQL is now installed on your system. However, you won't find any shortcuts installed in your Windows Start menu after an installation of MySQL from MySQL AB, so now you must start the process yourself. If you navigate to the `C:\mysqlbin` directory, you will find numerous applications ready for action. One of these applications is called `WinMySQLadmin`, and it's a great friend to Windows users who are just getting started with MySQL. If you double-click this file, it will start the

MySQL server and place a stoplight icon in your task bar. If you right-click this icon, you can launch a graphical user interface to maintain and monitor your new server.



**Note** The first time you access WinMySQLAdmin, it will ask you to create a username and password. Go ahead and pick a username/password pair and continue.

WinMySQLAdmin will automatically interpret environment information, such as IP address, machine name, and so on. The tabs across the top allow you to view system information and also edit MySQL configuration options. To shut down the MySQL server and/or the WinMySQLAdmin tool, right-click again on the stoplight icon in your task bar and select the appropriate choice. As long as the MySQL server is running, you can run additional applications through a console window, such as the MySQL monitor.

In the [next section](#), you learn how to start MySQL manually and perform a few actions to familiarize yourself with the system.

## Testing Your MySQL Installation

In this section, you work with the MySQL utilities via the command line in a console window. When using MySQL with PHP, you'll issue the same types of commands, only within the context of the PHP code. Use the information in this section to familiarize yourself with the types of commands and responses you'll be working with later in the book.

## Starting MySQL

To start MySQL manually (without using the GUI described previously), go to the Windows Start menu, choose Run, type `c:\mysql\bin`, and press Enter.

**Note** If you installed MySQL in a different directory, substitute that directory name in the previous command.

The MySQL process will now be running in the background. You can now connect to MySQL and create databases and tables.

## Creating a Test Database

Before going any further, you should know the following:

- A database is a collection of tables.
- A table contains a set of records, also referred to as rows.
- All records have the same number of fields.
- Each field categorizes a piece of a data.

In this section, you'll conquer the first element and create a database. The utility to use is the `mysqladmin` program, which allows you to administer MySQL from the command line.

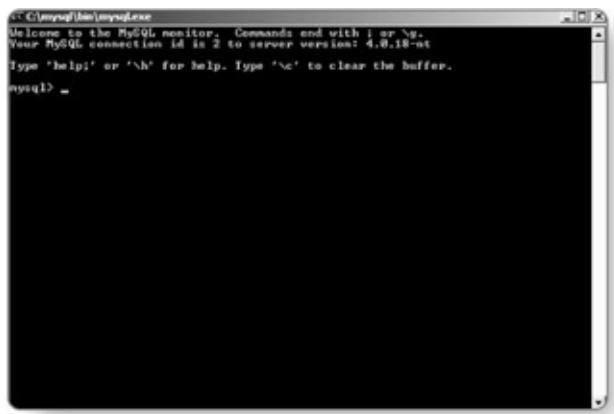
Go to the Windows Start menu, choose Run, type `mysqladmin create testDB`, and press Enter.

The window will briefly flash and then close when the command has been processed. Next, you'll add a table to the `testDB` database.

## Creating a Test Table

In this section, you create a table within the database you created in the preceding section. The utility to use is the `mysql` program, which allows you to work within the MySQL database system from the command line.

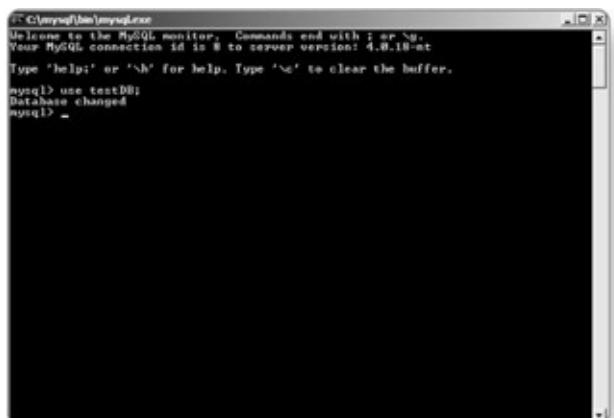
1. Go to the Windows Start menu, choose Run, type `mysql`, and press Enter.



When the MySQL Monitor starts, it provides its own prompt. At this prompt (`mysql>`), you type commands to create tables, explain tables, insert data, select data, and so on. Get used to ending your commands with a semicolon (;), because it's a common instruction terminator that is used in PHP as well.

Now that you've connected to the MySQL Monitor, you need to tell it which database to use.

2. At the prompt, type `use testDB;` and press Enter.



The MySQL Monitor will respond with Database changed if the database exists and you have permission to access it.

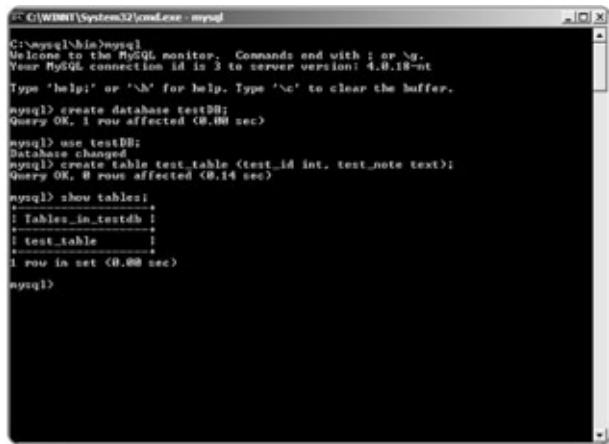
It's time to create a test table. This table will have a column for an ID number and a column for some text.

**Note** For more information about the specifics of creating tables, see [Appendix D](#), "Database Normalization and SQL Reference."

3. At the prompt, type `create table test_table (test_id int, test_note text);` and press Enter. This statement creates a table called `test_table`. Within the table, it creates a column called `test_id` of type `int` (integer). It also creates a column called `test_note` of type `text`.

The MySQL Monitor will respond with `Query OK`. It will also tell you how many rows were affected and how long it took to complete the task.

4. Verify the table creation by typing `show tables;` and pressing Enter.



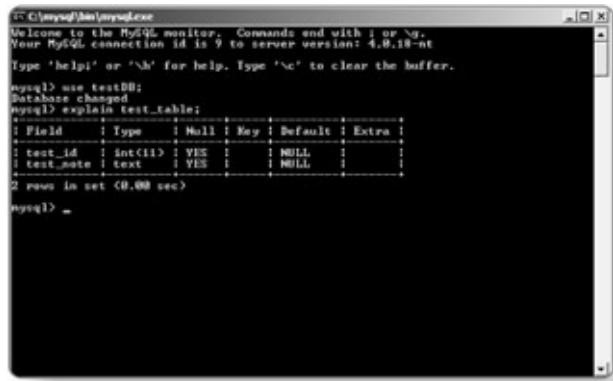
```
C:\Windows\System32\cmd.exe - mysql
C:\Windows\System32>mysql
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 3 to server version: 4.0.18-nt
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.
mysql> create database testDB;
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> use testDB;
Database changed
mysql> create table test_table (test_id int, test_note text);
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.14 sec)

mysql> show tables;
+ Tables_in_testdb +
| test_table |
+ 1 row in set (0.00 sec)
mysql>
```

The MySQL Monitor will respond with a list of all the tables in the current database.

5. To verify the field names and types in a specific table, use the `explain` command. In this case, type `explain test_table;` and press Enter.



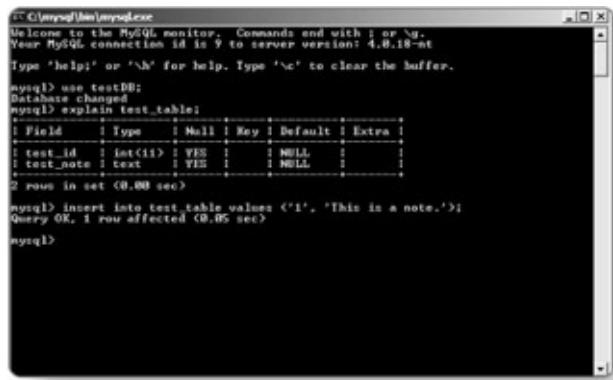
```
c:\mysql>use testDB;
Database changed
mysql>explain test_table;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field | Type  | Null | Key | Default | Extra |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| test_id | int(11) | YES | NO | NULL |          |
| test_note | text | YES | NO | NULL |          |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
2 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

The MySQL Monitor will respond with a list of all the fields and their types in the selected table. This is a very handy command to use to keep track of your table design.

It's time to insert a few rows of data into your table, because this is getting pretty boring. The first row will have an ID of 1, and the note will be "This is a note."

6. To insert this row, type `insert into test_table values ('1', 'This is a note.');` and press Enter.



```
c:\mysql>use testDB;
Database changed
mysql>explain test_table;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field | Type  | Null | Key | Default | Extra |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| test_id | int(11) | YES | NO | NULL |          |
| test_note | text | YES | NO | NULL |          |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
2 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>insert into test_table values ('1', 'This is a note.');
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.05 sec)

mysql>
```

The MySQL Monitor will respond with `Query OK`. It will also tell you how many rows were affected and how long it took to complete the task.

7. Insert another row by typing `insert into test_table values ('99', 'Look! Another note.');` and pressing Enter.

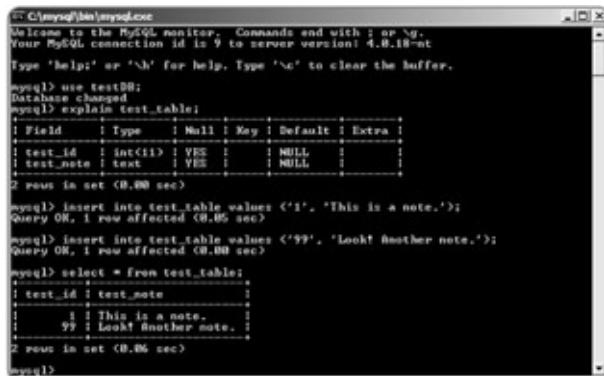
**Note** For more information about the specifics of inserting data into tables, see [Appendix D](#), "Database Normalization and SQL Reference."

Now that you have some data in your table, even if it is only two rows, it's time to get familiar with selecting data. Keep the MySQL Monitor open, because you'll be using it in the [next section](#) as well.

## Selecting Data From Your Test Table

The `SELECT` command is very powerful and will likely be the command you use most often when working with PHP and MySQL. You can find more information about the `SELECT` command in [Appendix D](#), "Database Normalization and SQL Reference," but for now, let's do some simple data selections.

1. At the prompt, type `select * from test_table;` and press Enter.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "C:\mysql\bin\mysql.exe". It displays the MySQL monitor interface. The user has run several commands:

```
Welcome to the MySQL monitor. Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 9 to server version: 4.0.18-nt
Type 'Help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> use testDB;
Database changed
mysql> explain test_table;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field | Type  | Null | Key | Default | Extra |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| test_id | int(11) | YES  |     | NULL    |       |
| test_note | text   | YES  |     | NULL    |       |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
2 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> insert into test_table values ('1', 'This is a note.');
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.06 sec)

mysql> insert into test_table values ('99', 'Look! Another note.');
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> select * from test_table;
+-----+-----+
| test_id | test_note |
+-----+-----+
| 1      | This is a note. |
| 99     | Look! Another note. |
+-----+-----+
2 rows in set (0.06 sec)

mysql>
```

This command simply selects all fields from all rows (that's what the `*` does) in the table called `test_table` and returns the data to the screen in a nicely formatted table. The MySQL Monitor tells you how many rows were returned and how long it took the query to run.

Impose a little order on the results. Try to order the results by ID number—largest number first.

- At the prompt, type `select * from test_table order by test_id desc;` and press Enter.

The screenshot shows a Windows command-line window titled "C:\mysql\bin\mysql.exe". It displays the following MySQL session:

```
mysql> create table test_table (test_id int(11) NOT NULL, test_note text);
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> insert into test_table values ('1', 'This is a note.');
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> insert into test_table values ('99', 'Look! Another note.');
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> select * from test_table;
+-----+-----+
| test_id | test_note |
+-----+-----+
|       1 | This is a note. |
|      99 | Look! Another note. |
+-----+-----+
2 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> select * from test_table order by test_id desc;
+-----+-----+
| test_id | test_note |
+-----+-----+
|      99 | Look! Another note. |
|       1 | This is a note. |
+-----+-----+
2 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

The result now shows the row with a `test_id` of 99 as the first row in the table. The `desc` in the command stands for descending. There is another option, `asc`, which stands for ascending. Ascending order is the default order.

The [next section](#) is for the installation of MySQL on Linux. If you don't have two machines, skip ahead to [Chapter 2](#), "Installing Apache," to install the Apache web server.

## Installing MySQL for Linux

This section takes you through the installation process of MySQL 4.0.x (standard) on Linux, using the distribution from MySQL AB. If you're using another flavor of Unix, download the appropriate files and follow the instructions included with the distribution.

The recommended installation method for MySQL is with RPMs. There are several RPMs that make up a full distribution, but for a minimal installation you need the following:

- `MySQL-server-VERSION.i386.rpm`—The MySQL server.
- `MySQL-client-VERSION.i386.rpm`—The standard MySQL client programs.

To download these files, visit the MySQL 4.0.x download page at <http://www.mysql.com/downloads/mysql-4.0.html> and find the Linux x86 RPM Downloads section (or IA64 or AMD64, depending on your architecture). When you click on the download link for one of the packages, you will be taken to a page of mirror sites. Select the mirror site closest to you, and download the files.

When the files are downloaded to your system, perform the minimal installation by typing the following at your prompt, replacing VERSION with the appropriate version number of your downloaded files:

```
#prompt> rpm -i MySQL-server-VERSION.i386.rpm MySQL-cl
```

If the RPM method doesn't work for you, you can also install MySQL from a binary distribution, which requires `gunzip` and `tar` to uncompress and unpack the distribution. It also requires the capability to create groups and users on the system.

In the first series of commands, you will add a group and a user, and then unpack the distribution, as follows:

1. At the prompt, type `groupadd mysql`.
2. At the prompt, type `useradd -g mysql mysql`.
3. At the prompt, type `cd /usr/local`.
4. At the prompt, type `gunzip < /path/to/mysql-standard-VERSION-OS.tar.gz | tar xvf -`.

**Note** You can install MySQL in any directory. If you do not use `/usr/local/` as in this example, be sure to modify subsequent commands appropriately.

5. To create a link with a shorter name, type `ln -s mysql-VERSION-OS mysql`.
6. Change directories by typing `cd mysql`.

Once the distribution is unpacked, the `README` and `INSTALL` files will

walk you through the remainder of the installation process for the version of MySQL you've chosen. In general, the next series of commands will be used:

1. Type `scripts/mysql_install_db` to run the MySQL install script.
2. Type `chown -R root /usr/local/mysql` to change ownership of the `mysql` directory.
3. Type `chown -R mysql /usr/local/mysql/data` to change ownership of the `mysql/data` directory.
4. Type `chgrp -R mysql /usr/local/mysql` to change the group of the `mysql` directory.
5. Type `chown -R root /usr/local/mysql/bin` to change ownership of the `mysql/bin` directory.

If you have any problems during the installation of MySQL, the first place you should look is the "Problems and Common Errors" chapter of the MySQL manual, which is located at

<http://www.mysql.com/doc/P/r/Problems.html>. Some common problems include:

- Incorrect permissions do not allow you to start the MySQL daemon. If this is the case, be sure you have changed owners and groups to match those indicated in the installation instructions.
- If you see the message `Access denied` when connecting to MySQL, be sure you are using the correct username and password.
- If you see the message `Can't connect to server`, make sure the MySQL daemon is running.

In the [next section](#), you learn how to start MySQL and perform a few actions to familiarize yourself with the system.

## Testing Your MySQL Installation

In this section, you work with the MySQL utilities via the command line in a console window. When using MySQL with PHP, you'll issue the same types of commands, only within the context of the PHP code. Use the information in this section to familiarize yourself with the types of commands and responses you'll be working with later in the book.

## Starting MySQL

The MySQL distribution comes with a start-up script, called `safe_mysqld`, found in the `bin` subdirectory of the MySQL installation directory. Follow these steps to start this script:

1. If you're not already there, enter the MySQL parent directory by typing `cd /usr/local/mysql` at the prompt and pressing Enter.
2. Start the MySQL process by typing `./bin/safe_mysqld &` and pressing Enter.

The MySQL process will now be running in the background, and you can connect to MySQL and create databases and tables.

## Creating a Test Database

Before going any further, you should know the following:

- A database is a collection of tables.
- A table contains a set of records, also referred to as rows.
- All records have the same number of fields.
- Each field categorizes a piece of a data.

In this section, you'll conquer the first element and create a database. The utility to use is the `mysqladmin` program, which allows you to administer MySQL from the command line.

At the prompt, type `./bin/mysqladmin create testDB` and press Enter. You will be returned to the prompt if the database called `testDB` has been successfully created. Next, you'll add a table to that database.

## Creating a Test Table

In this section, you'll create a table within the database you created in the preceding section. The utility to use is the `mysql` program, which allows you to work within the MySQL database system from the command line.

1. At the prompt, type `./bin/mysql` and press Enter.



The MySQL monitor will start. The MySQL Monitor provides its own prompt. At this prompt (`mysql>`), you will type commands used to create tables, explain tables, insert data, select data, and so on. Get used to ending your commands with a semicolon (;), because it's a common instruction terminator that is used in PHP as well.

Now that you've connected to the MySQL monitor, you need to tell it which database to use.

2. At the prompt, type `use testDB;` and press Enter.

The MySQL Monitor will respond with `Database changed` if the database exists and you have permission to access it.

It's time to create a test table. This table will have a column for an ID number and a column for some text.

3. At the prompt, type `create table test_table (test_id int, test_note text);` and press Enter. This statement creates a table called `test_table`. Within the table, it creates a column called `test_id` of type `int` (integer). It also creates a column called `test_note` of type `text`.

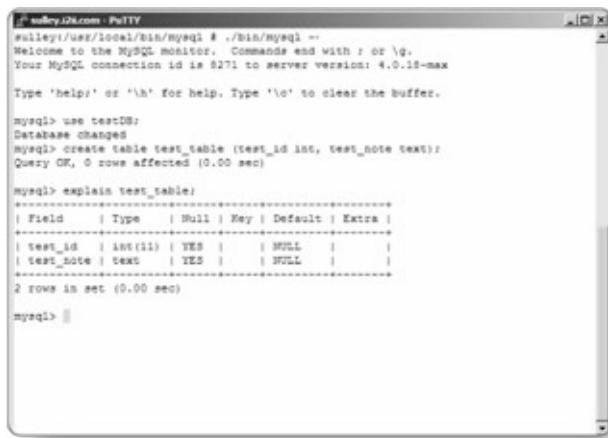
**Note** For more information about the specifics of creating tables, see [Appendix D](#), "Database Normalization and SQL Reference."

The MySQL Monitor will respond with `Query OK`. It will also tell you how many rows were affected and how long it took to complete the task.

4. Verify the table creation by typing `show tables;` and pressing Enter.

The MySQL Monitor will respond with a list of all tables in the current database.

5. To verify the field names and types in a specific table, use the `explain` command. In this case, type `explain test_table;` and press Enter.



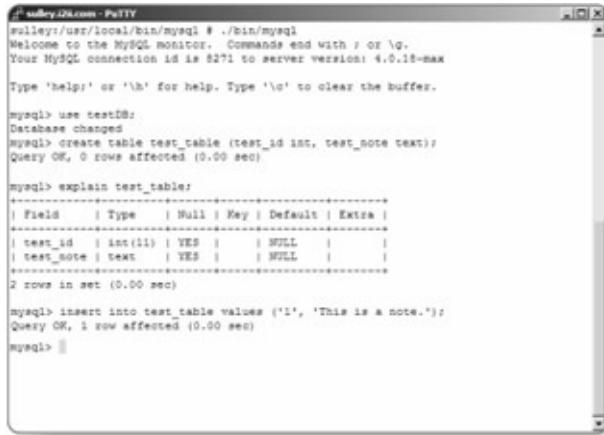
```
walley:/usr/local/bin/ mysql - ./bin/mysql --  
Welcome to the MySQL monitor. Commands end with ; or \g.  
Your MySQL connection id is 8271 to server version: 4.0.18-max  
  
Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.  
  
mysql> use testDB;  
Database changed  
mysql> create table test_table (test_id int, test_note text);  
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)  
  
mysql> explain test_table;  
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+  
| Field | Type  | Null | Key | Default | Extra |  
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+  
| test_id | INT(11) | YES |   | NULL    |       |  
| test_note | TEXT  | YES |   | NULL    |       |  
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+  
2 rows in set (0.00 sec)  
  
mysql> ||
```

The MySQL Monitor will respond with a list of all the fields and their types in the selected table. This is a very handy command to use to keep track of your table design.

It's time to insert a few rows of data in your table, because this is getting pretty boring. The first row will have an ID of 1, and the note will be "This is a note."

6. To insert this row, type `insert into test_table values('1', 'This is a note.');` and press Enter.

The MySQL Monitor will respond with `Query OK`. It will also tell you how many rows were affected and how long it took to complete the task.



A screenshot of a terminal window titled "xterm-128x64". The window displays a MySQL monitor session. The user has run several commands: creating a database named "testDB", creating a table "test\_table" with two columns ("test\_id" and "test\_note"), running an EXPLAIN query on the table, and finally inserting a single row with ID 1 and note "This is a note.". The terminal shows the results of each command, including the creation of the database and table, the EXPLAIN output with column details, and the successful insertion of the new row.

```
# su -l scilley -c /bin/mysql
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \q.
Your MySQL connection id is 5271 to server version: 4.0.18-max

Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> use testDB;
Database changed
mysql> create table test_table (test_id int, test_note text);
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> explain test_table;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Field | Type  | Null | Key | Default | Extra |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| test_id | int(11) | YES |   | NULL    |       |
| test_note | text   | YES |   | NULL    |       |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
2 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> insert into test_table values ('1', 'This is a note.');
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

7. Insert another row by typing `insert into test_table values('99', 'Look! Another note.');` and pressing Enter.

**Note** For more information about the specifics of inserting data into tables, see [Appendix D](#), "Database Normalization and SQL Reference."

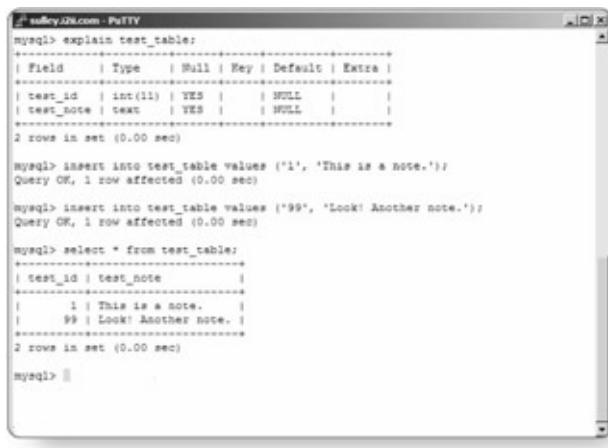
Now that you have some data in your table, even if it is only two rows, it's time to get familiar with selecting data. Keep the MySQL Monitor open, because you'll be using it in the [next section](#) as well.

## Selecting Data From Your Test Table

The `SELECT` command is very powerful and will likely be the command you use most often when working with PHP and MySQL. You can find more information about `SELECT` in [Appendix D](#), "Database Normalization and SQL Reference," but for now, let's do some simple data selections.

1. At the prompt, type `select * from test_table;` and press Enter.

This command simply selects all fields from all rows in the table called `test_table` and returns the data to the screen in a nicely formatted table. The MySQL Monitor tells you how many rows were returned and how long it took the query to run.



A screenshot of a terminal window titled "sally.0k.com - PuTTY". The window displays several MySQL commands and their results:

```
mysql> explain test_table;
+-----+
| Field | Type   | Null | Key | Default | Extra |
+-----+
| test_id | int(11) | YES  |     | NULL    |       |
| test_note | text   | YES  |     | NULL    |       |
+-----+
2 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> insert into test_table values ('1', 'This is a note.');
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> insert into test_table values ('99', 'Look! Another note.');
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)

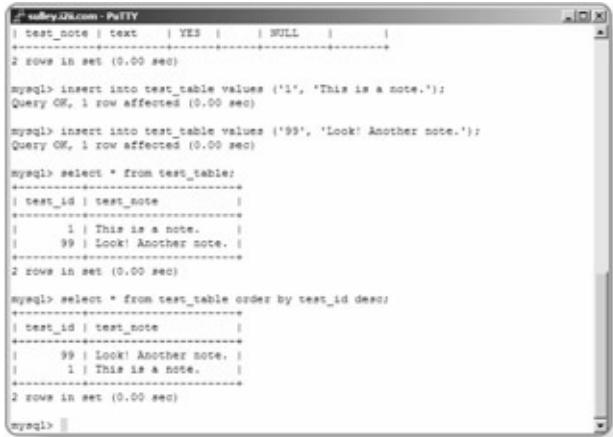
mysql> select * from test_table;
+-----+
| test_id | test_note |
+-----+
| 1 | This is a note.
| 99 | Look! Another note.
+-----+
2 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

Add a little order to the results. Try to order the results by ID number— largest number first.

2. At the prompt, type `select * from test_table order by test_id desc;` and press Enter.

The result now shows the row with a `test_id` of 99 as the first row in the table. The `desc` in the command stands for descending. There is another option, `asc`, which stands for ascending. Ascending order is the default order.



A screenshot of a PuTTY terminal window titled "valley.02.com - PuTTY". The window displays a MySQL session. The user inserts two rows into a table named "test\_table" with columns "test\_id" and "test\_note". The first row has test\_id 1 and test\_note "This is a note.". The second row has test\_id 99 and test\_note "Look! Another note.". Both insertions succeed with 1 row affected. Then, the user runs a select query to retrieve all rows from the table, showing the same two entries. Finally, the user runs another select query where the rows are ordered by test\_id desc, resulting in the rows being swapped.

```
+-----+-----+
| test_note | text    | YES   |   | NULL   |      |
+-----+-----+
2 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> insert into test_table values ('1', 'This is a note.');
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> insert into test_table values ('99', 'Look! Another note.');
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.00 sec)

mysql> select * from test_table;
+-----+-----+
| test_id | test_note          |
+-----+-----+
| 1       | This is a note.   |
| 99     | Look! Another note.|
+-----+-----+
2 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> select * from test_table order by test_id desc;
+-----+-----+
| test_id | test_note          |
+-----+-----+
| 99     | Look! Another note.|
| 1       | This is a note.   |
+-----+-----+
2 rows in set (0.00 sec)

mysql>
```

In the [next chapter](#), you'll install the Apache web server and be one step closer to developing dynamic, database-driven websites!

## **Chapter 2: Installing Apache**

## Overview

Because it's the most popular web server in use, you might think that Apache is a complicated piece of software, but it's not difficult at all. In this chapter, you learn how to:

- Install Apache on Windows or Linux
- Connect to your new web server

# Installing Apache for Windows

Installing Apache for Windows is a simple task, due in great part to the installation wizard distributed by the Apache Group. Whether you're using Windows 95, 98, Me, 2000, XP, or NT, the installation process of the precompiled binaries is definitely the way to go, and the same installation file is used for all flavors of Windows.

Being able to use Apache on consumer-oriented operating systems such as Windows 95/98/Me/XP doesn't mean that you should, at least not in a production environment. Simply put, running any web server on a Windows operating system is not as fast, stable, or secure as running a web server on a Linux/Unix machine. However, installing and configuring a development web server on a Windows-based operating system is perfectly acceptable, and is how most users get their start.

**Note** The Apache Group also distributes the source code for Apache on Windows, should you have a need to compile the code yourself. However, that process is well beyond the scope of this book!

To download the Apache distribution for Windows, start at the Apache Server website, <http://httpd.apache.org/>, and follow the Download link. Before going any further, be sure to follow the link in the sentence, "If you are downloading the Win32 distribution, please read these important notes." (The actual link depends on the mirror you are using.)

When you've determined your system is stable enough to continue, look for the bulleted item on the page for Win32 Binary (MSI Installer), followed by a link to the software.

Distribution files follow a naming convention, with apache followed by the version number, and then -win32-x86-no\_ssl.msi. As of this writing, the current version is 2.0.49, so the file used as an example throughout this section is apache\_2.0.49-win32-x86-no\_ssl.msi. Once you have downloaded the installation file to your hard drive, the following steps will take you through the installation wizard:

1. Double-click the file called `apache_2.0.49-win32-x86-no_ssl.msi`. The installer will start, and the installation wizard will begin. Click on Next to continue.



2. Read the licensing information on the screen, choose the I Accept radio button, and then click on Next.
3. Read the general Apache information on the screen, and then click on Next.
4. The next screen requires you to fill in some details about your server: the network domain, the server name, and the administrator's e-mail address.



**Note** If you do not know the network domain or server

name at this point, enter some dummy information so that the installation moves forward. You will learn how to edit this information post-installation, so no matter what you enter in this step, you will soon be able to fix it. If you do know your domain and server name, go ahead and enter it.

5. Choose the Run as Service for All Users radio button and click Next.
6. Choose the Typical set-up type, and click on Next.
7. Accept the default destination folder and then click on Next.

**Note** If you elect to change the destination folder for the Apache installation files, please adjust the instructions and paths accordingly throughout this book.

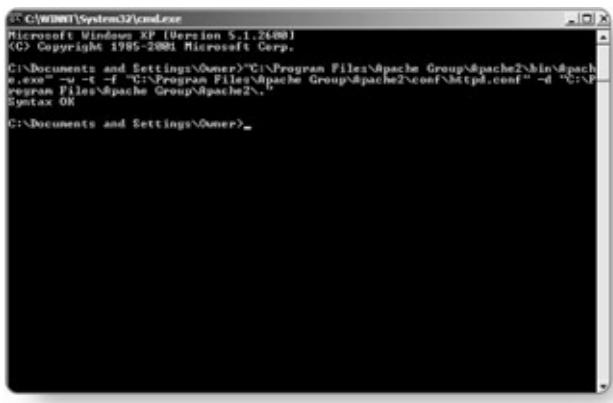
8. Choose Install on the next screen, and the final installation sequence will begin. When the sequence is finished, you will see the confirmation screen. Click on Finish to complete the installation and close the installer.



At this point, all of the necessary Apache files are installed, as well as a group of handy shortcuts in your Windows Start menu, called Apache HTTP Server 2.0.49. To run a basic test before moving forward to configuring your server, choose Program Files, Apache HTTP Server

2.0.49, Configure Apache Server, Test Configuration from the Windows Start menu. This will launch a console window showing a successful installation.

If you have any errors at this point, rerun the installation program. In the [next section](#), you make some minor changes to the Apache configuration file before you start Apache for the first time.



```
C:\Windows\System32\cmd.exe
Microsoft Windows XP [Version 5.1.2600]
(C) Copyright 1985-2001 Microsoft Corp.

C:\Documents and Settings\Owner>"C:\Program Files\Apache Group\Apache2\bin\httpd" -t -f "C:\Program Files\Apache Group\Apache2\conf\httpd.conf" -d "C:\Program Files\Apache Group\Apache2"
Syntax OK

C:\Documents and Settings\Owner>
```

## Configuring Apache on Windows

To run a basic installation of Apache, the only changes you need to make are to the server name, which you might already have done during the installation wizard. However, if you entered dummy information for the server name, or want to modify any other part of the basic configuration, now is the time to do so.

The master configuration file for Apache is called `httpd.conf`, and it lives in the `conf` directory, within the Apache installation directory. So if your installation directory is `C:\Program Files\Apache Group\Apache2\`, the `httpd.conf` file will be in `C:\Program Files\Apache Group\Apache2\conf\`.

Again with the handy shortcut, you can quickly access this file by selecting Program Files, Apache HTTP Server 2.0.49, Configure Apache Server, Edit the Apache `httpd.conf` Configuration File from the Windows Start menu. This shortcut is the same as opening a text editor and navigating to the file location. To modify the basic configuration,

primarily the server name, look for a heading called Section 2: 'Main' server configuration. You will find two important sections of text.

1. Change the value of `ServerAdmin` to your e-mail address, if it isn't already accurate.
2. Change the value of `ServerName` to something accurate, if it's isn't already.
3. Save the file.



A screenshot of a Windows Notepad window titled "httpd.conf - Notepad". The window displays the Apache httpd configuration file. It shows the "Section 2: 'Main' server configuration" section, which includes comments about the main server and virtual hosts. It then specifies the `ServerAdmin` directive as `ServerAdmin you@yourdomain.com`. Finally, it defines the `ServerName` directive as `ServerName 127.0.0.1:80`.

```
## Section 2: 'Main' server configuration
#
# The directives in this section set up the values used by the "main"
# server, which responds to any requests that aren't handled by a
# <virtualhost> definition. These values also provide defaults for
# any <virtualhost> containers you may define later in the file.
#
# All of these directives may appear inside <virtualhost> containers,
# in which case these default settings will be overridden for the
# virtual host being defined.
#
#
# ServerAdmin: Your address, where problems with the server should be
# e-mailed. This address appears on some server-generated pages, such
# as error documents, e.g. admin@your-domain.com
#
# ServerAdmin you@yourdomain.com
#
# ServerName gives the name and port that the server uses to identify itself.
# This can often be determined automatically, but we recommend you specify
# it explicitly to prevent problems during startup.
#
# If this is not set to a valid DNS name for your host, server-generated
# redirections will not work. See also the useCanonicalName directive.
#
# If your host doesn't have a registered DNS name, enter its IP address here.
# You will have to access it by its address anyway, and this will make
# redirections work in a sensible way.
#
# ServerName 127.0.0.1:80
#
```

The `ServerName` modification is the most important change you'll make to your Apache configuration file, because if the `ServerName` isn't correct, you won't be able to connect to Apache. As it states in the configuration file itself, "You cannot just invent host names and hope they work." If you do not know your full machine name, you can use an IP number. If you have a static IP number (that is, one that does not change), use it as your `ServerName`. If you have a dial-up connection that does not assign a static IP (that is, your IP number changes each time you connect to your Internet service provider), you will have to change the IP number in `httpd.conf` each time you dial up.

**Tip** The `ServerName` changes described here are relevant only if you want people from the outside world to be able to connect to your new web server. If you are the only person who will be accessing the server, you can use the IP number 127.0.0.1, which is recognized by machines as the local loop-back address,

also known as `localhost`. You can use either the word `localhost` or the IP number `127.0.0.1` as `ServerName` in `httpd.conf`. The IP number will probably work out better, because some Windows machines do not automatically know that `localhost` equals `127.0.0.1`.

Once the appropriate modifications are made to the `httpd.conf` file, Apache is ready to run on your machine. In the [next section](#), you start and connect to Apache.

## Starting and Connecting to Apache

To start the Apache server, select Program Files, Apache HTTP Server 2.0.49, Control Apache Server, Start from the Windows Start menu. This will launch a console window, which will then close. Apache will be running in the background.

With your web server running, you can connect to the server via your web browser of choice. The URL will be whatever you used as `ServerName`—an actual name or IP, `localhost`, or `127.0.0.1`.

**Note** Remember, only you can connect to your web server using `127.0.0.1` or the name `localhost`. This book assumes that you'll be using `127.0.0.1` as the `ServerName`, so if you are not, just substitute your machine name for `127.0.0.1` in the examples.

To finally test your installation, open your web browser, type <http://127.0.0.1/> in the location bar, and press Enter. You should see a default web page.



This default start page comes from the `htdocs` directory within your Apache installation directory. You can go into that directory and delete all the default files if you want to, or you can leave them. They're not hurting anything, but you'll eventually be filling the `htdocs` directory with your own files and subdirectories, so you might want to delete them now for the sake of good housekeeping.

Move ahead to the [next chapter](#), where you install PHP and make a few more minor changes to your Apache configuration files before you're ready for some action.

# Installing Apache for Linux/Unix

To download the Apache distribution for Linux, start at the Apache Server website, <http://httpd.apache.org/>, and follow the Download link. This is the proper place for Linux/Unix distribution files and announcements.

Distribution files follow a naming convention, with `httpd` followed by the version number, and then the compression type (`.tar.gz`, `.tar.Z`, and `.zip`). As of this writing, the current version is 2.0.49, and I prefer `*.tar.gz` files, so the file used as an example throughout this section is `httpd_2.0.49.tar.gz`.

**Note** The source code distribution should work for most flavors of Unix, but if you have any concerns, read through the Apache documentation at the Apache website to find a better set of files for your specific operating system.

Once you have downloaded the file of your choice to your hard drive, the following steps will help you build a basic version of Apache.

1. Type `cp httpd_2.0.49.tar.gz /usr/local/` and press Enter to copy the Apache installation file to the `/usr/local/src/` directory.

**Note** You can put Apache anywhere you want on your file system, such as `/usr/local/bin/` or `/opt/`. Just be sure to substitute your path for the path indicated in these directions.

2. Go to `/usr/local/src/` by typing `cd /usr/local/src/` and pressing Enter.
3. Unzip the Apache installation file by typing `gunzip httpd_2.0.49.tar.gz` and pressing Enter.
4. Extract the files by typing `tar -xvf httpd_2.0.49.tar` and pressing Enter. A directory structure will be created, and you'll be back at the prompt. The parent directory will be

/usr/local/src/httpd\_2.0.49/.

5. Enter the parent directory by typing `cd httpd_2.0.49` and pressing Enter.
6. Type the following and press Enter, to prepare to build Apache:  
`./configure --prefix=/usr/local/apache2 --enable-mod-wsgi-pm-cgi`

The configuration script will run through its process of checking your configuration and creating makefiles, and then will put you back at the prompt.

**Note** A *makefile* lists the files, dependencies, and rules required to build an executable application.

7. Type `make` and press Enter. This second step of the installation process will produce many lines of output on your screen. When it is finished, you will be back at the prompt.
8. Type `make install` and press Enter. This final step of the installation process will again produce many lines of output on your screen. When it is finished, you will be back at the prompt.

If your installation process produces any errors up to this point, go through the process again or check the Apache website for any system-specific notes. In the [next section](#), you make some minor changes to the Apache configuration file before you start Apache for the first time.

```

jolley@jolley-OptiPlex-5090: ~
make[3]: Leaving directory '/usr/local/bin/httpd-2.0.49/modules/ssl'
make[2]: Leaving directory '/usr/local/bin/httpd-2.0.49/modules/sasl'
Making install in http
make[2]: Entering directory '/usr/local/bin/httpd-2.0.49/modules/http'
make[3]: Entering directory '/usr/local/bin/httpd-2.0.49/modules/http'
make[3]: Leaving directory '/usr/local/bin/httpd-2.0.49/modules/http'
make[2]: Leaving directory '/usr/local/bin/httpd-2.0.49/modules/http'
Making install in generators
make[2]: Entering directory '/usr/local/bin/httpd-2.0.49/modules/generators'
make[3]: Entering directory '/usr/local/bin/httpd-2.0.49/modules/generators'
make[3]: Leaving directory '/usr/local/bin/httpd-2.0.49/modules/generators'
make[2]: Leaving directory '/usr/local/bin/httpd-2.0.49/modules/generators'
Making install in mappers
make[2]: Entering directory '/usr/local/bin/httpd-2.0.49/modules/mappers'
make[3]: Entering directory '/usr/local/bin/httpd-2.0.49/modules/mappers'
make[3]: Leaving directory '/usr/local/bin/httpd-2.0.49/modules/mappers'
make[2]: Leaving directory '/usr/local/bin/httpd-2.0.49/modules/mappers'
make[2]: Entering directory '/usr/local/bin/httpd-2.0.49/modules'
make[3]: Entering directory '/usr/local/bin/httpd-2.0.49/modules'
make[3]: Leaving directory '/usr/local/bin/httpd-2.0.49/modules'
make[2]: Leaving directory '/usr/local/bin/httpd-2.0.49/modules'
make[1]: Leaving directory '/usr/local/bin/httpd-2.0.49'
Installing configuration files
[PRESERVING EXISTING HTDOCS SUBDIR: /usr/local/apache2/htdocs]
[PRESERVING EXISTING ERROR SUBDIR: /usr/local/apache2/error]
Installing icons
mkdir /usr/local/apache2/icons
Installing CGI
mkdir /usr/local/apache2/cgi-bin
Installing header files
Installing man pages and online manual
mkdir /usr/local/apache2/manual
Installing build system files
make[1]: Leaving directory '/usr/local/bin/httpd-2.0.49'
jolley@jolley-OptiPlex-5090: ~

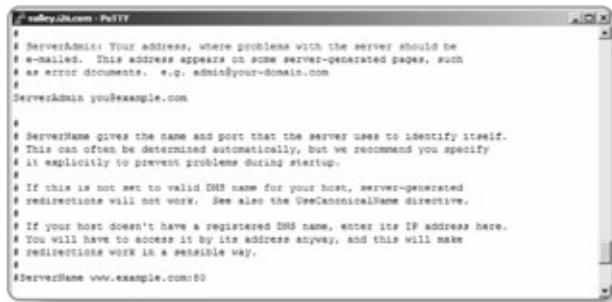
```

## Configuring Apache on Linux/Unix

To run a basic installation of Apache, the only changes you need to make are to the server name, which resides in the master configuration file called `httpd.conf`. This file lives in the `conf` directory, within the Apache installation directory. So if your installation directory is `/usr/local/apache2/`, the configuration files will be in `/usr/local/apache2/conf/`.

To modify the basic configuration, most importantly the server name, open the `httpd.conf` file with a text editor and look for a heading called Section 2: 'Main' server configuration. You will find two important sections of text.

1. Change the value of `ServerAdmin` to your e-mail address.
2. Change the value of `ServerName` to something accurate, and remove the preceding `#` so that the entry looks like this:  
`ServerName somehost. somedomain.com`. You do not want it to look like this: `#ServerName somehost. somedomain.com`.



```
# ServerAdmin: Your address, where problems with the server should be
# e-mailed. This address appears on some server-generated pages, such
# as error documents. e.g. admin@your-domain.com
#
# ServerAdmin you@example.com
#
# ServerName gives the name and port that the server uses to identify itself.
# This can often be determined automatically, but we recommend you specify
# it explicitly to prevent problems during startup.
#
# If this is not set to valid DNS name for your host, server-generated
# redirections will not work. See also the UseCanonicalName directive.
#
# If your host doesn't have a registered DNS name, enter its IP address here.
# You will have to access it by its address anyway, and this will make
# redirections work in a sensible way.
#
#ServerName www.example.com:80
```

### 3. Save the file.

The `ServerName` modification is the most important change you'll make to your Apache configuration file, because if the `ServerName` isn't accurate, you won't be able to connect to Apache on your machine. As it states in the configuration file itself, "You cannot just invent host names and hope they work." If you do not know your full machine name, you can use an IP number. If you have a static IP number (that is, one that does not change), use it as your `ServerName`. If you have a dial-up connection that does not assign a static IP (that is, your IP number changes each time you connect to your Internet service provider), you will have to change the IP number in `httpd.conf` each time you dial up.

**Note** The `ServerName` changes described here are relevant only if you want people from the outside world to be able to connect to your new web server. If you are the only person who will be accessing the server, you can use the IP number 127.0.0.1, which is recognized by machines as the local loop-back address, also known as `localhost`. You can use either the word `localhost` or the IP number 127.0.0.1 as `ServerName` in `httpd.conf`.

Once the appropriate modifications are made to the `httpd.conf` file, Apache is ready to run on your machine. In the [next section](#), you start and connect to Apache.

## Starting and Connecting to Apache

There's a handy utility in the `bin` directory within your Apache installation

directory called `apachectl`. It allows you to issue `start`, `stop`, and `restart` commands. Use this utility to start Apache for the first time.

1. To get to the Apache installation directory, type `cd /usr/local/apache2` and press Enter.
2. Type `./bin/apachectl start` and press Enter.

You should see a message: `httpd started`. If you do not see this message, you have an error somewhere in your configuration file, and the error message will tell you where to look.

To stop Apache, you can type `./bin/apachectl stop` and press Enter. For now, keep it running, as the next step is to connect to the server via a web browser, and this would not be a good time to shut it down.

With Apache running, you can connect to the server via your web browser of choice. The URL will be whatever you used as `ServerName` —an actual name or IP, or the `localhost` name or IP.

**Note** Remember, only you can connect to your web server using `127.0.0.1` or the name `localhost`. This book assumes that you'll be using `127.0.0.1` as the `ServerName`, so if you are not, just substitute your machine name for `127.0.0.1` in the examples.

To finally test your installation, open your web browser, type `http://127.0.0.1/` in the location bar, and press Enter. You should see a default web page.



This default start page comes from the `htdocs` directory within your Apache installation directory. You can go into that directory and delete all the default files if you want to, or you can leave them. They're not hurting anything, but you'll eventually be filling the `htdocs` directory with your own files and subdirectories, so you might want to delete them for the sake of good housekeeping.

Move ahead to the [next chapter](#), where you install PHP and make a few more minor changes to your Apache configuration files before you're ready for some action.

## **Chapter 3: Installing PHP**

## Overview

This is it—the final piece of the puzzle that will get you started in the world of creating dynamic, database-driven websites. In this chapter, you learn how to:

- Install PHP on Windows or Linux
- Make final modifications to Apache
- Use the `phpinfo()` function to retrieve system information

# Installing PHP for Windows

Installing PHP for Windows doesn't occur through a wizard interface. Basically, you just unzip some files and move them around. No big deal. Just follow along very closely, because this is the area where most people miss an instruction, and if you do that, it won't work.

**Note** Okay, so there is a Windows installer for PHP, if you're going to use PHP with Microsoft IIS, Microsoft PWS, or the Xitami web server. This book is based on a recommendation of using Apache as the web server, and to perform the manual installation of PHP. If you choose to install PHP with a different web server or are using a different method, please read the installation instructions contained within the software you choose.

To download the PHP binary distribution for Windows, visit the Downloads page at the PHP website: <http://www.php.net/downloads.php>.

1. From the Windows binaries section, follow the link for PHP 5.x.x zip package, where x.x refers to the version. Currently, the version for Windows is 5.0.0RC1, and all subsequent installation instructions will be based on this version. Future versions will follow the same installation procedure; substitute the new version name as appropriate.
2. Once downloaded to your system, double-click on the file called `php-5.0.0RC1-Win32.zip`. Your zipping program of choice, such as WinZip or PKZip, will open this file.
3. Extract the files to the top level of your hard drive, into a directory called `php`.

You now have all the basic PHP distribution files; you just need to move a few of them around.

**Note** If you change the installation directory name, be sure to substitute your new directory name in the remaining instructions in this chapter.

1. Using Windows Explorer (or whatever method you prefer for moving through your file system), go to the C:\php directory.
2. Rename the php.ini-dist file to php.ini and move this file to C:\WINDOWS\, or C:\WINNT\, or wherever you usually put your \*.ini files.
3. Move php5ts.dll to C:\WINDOWS\SYSTEM\, or C:\WINDOWS\SYSTEM\, or wherever you usually put your \*.dll files.

To get a basic version of PHP working with Apache, you'll need to make a few minor modifications to the Apache configuration file.

## Configuring Apache to Use PHP

You can install PHP as a CGI binary or as an Apache module. The current recommendation by the PHP Group (and me) is to use the module version, because it offers greater performance and some additional functionality. However, you might encounter some conflicts with advanced functionality when using the module, depending on your particular operating system. Additionally, using the CGI version instead of the module version will allow you to create virtual hosts, each with its own PHP CGI executable, therefore allowing PHP to run as a named user instead of the default Apache process owner.

If you would like to install the CGI version, please read the installation information in the PHP manual at <http://www.php.net/manual/>. In the next section, you learn to install the module version of PHP for the Apache 2 server.

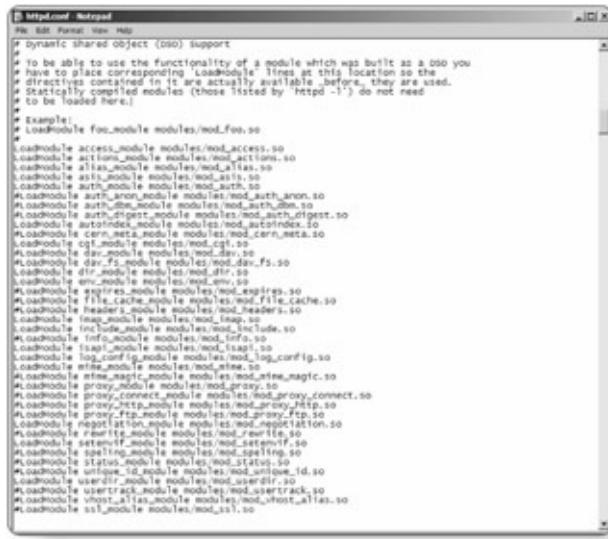
## The Apache Module Version of PHP

To configure Apache to use the module version, you have to move one piece of PHP and also make a few modifications to the Apache configuration file, the httpd.conf file, located in the conf directory within the Apache installation directory.

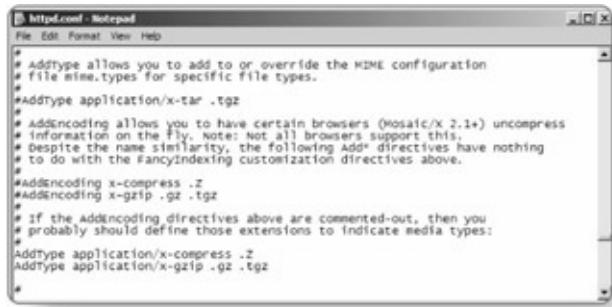
1. Choose Program Files, Apache HTTP Server 2.0.49, Configure Apache Server, Edit the Apache httpd.conf Configuration File from the Windows Start menu
2. Look for a section of text like the one shown in the figure.
3. Add the following code to the end of that section:

```
LoadModule php5_module
c:/php// php5apache2.dll
```

Next, you have to add a directive to the `httpd.conf` file to define the file extensions used by PHP files. Common extensions are `.php` and `.phtml`, but you can use whatever you want.



4. Look for a section of text like the one shown in the figure.
  5. Add the following line:
- ```
AddType application/x-
httpd-php .phtml .php
```
6. Save and close the `httpd.conf` file.



```
# AddType allows you to add to or override the MIME configuration
# file mime.types for specific file types.
#
#AddType application/x-tar .tgz
#
#AddEncoding allows you to have certain browsers (Mosaic/X 2.1+) uncompress
# information on the fly. Note: Not all browsers support this.
# Despite the name similarity, the following Add* directives have nothing
# to do with the FancyIndexing customization directives above.
#
#AddEncoding x-compress .Z
#AddEncoding x-gzip .gz .tgz
#
# If the AddEncoding directives above are commented-out, then you
# probably should define those extensions to indicate media types:
#
AddType application/x-compress .Z
AddType application/x-gzip .gz .tgz
```

This final modification tells Apache that any time a file with an extension of `.php` or `.phtml` is requested, Apache should utilize the module version of the PHP parser before sending any output to the web browser.

## Testing the PHP Installation

Now that all of your modifications have been made to the `httpd.conf` file—no matter the configuration method—you can restart Apache using the method you learned in [Chapter 2](#), "Installing Apache." To test that Apache and PHP are playing nice together, you'll next create a simple PHP script to test your installation. PHP scripts and other files (HTML, images, and so on) should be placed in the document root of your web server. For Apache, the document root is the `htdocs` directory within your Apache installation directory.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and type the following:  
`<? phpinfo(); ?>`
2. Save the file with the name `phpinfo.php` and place this file in the document root of your web server.

**Note** Be absolutely sure your file extension is `.php` or `.phtml` (or another extension you configured for PHP). It is very common for Windows-based text editors to add a hidden file extension of `.txt` to the end of the filename. If that happens to you, your script will not parse as PHP, only text. So keep an eye on your extension!

3. Open your web browser and type

<http://127.0.0.1/phpinfo.php>.

**Note** If you used a different server name when you installed Apache, substitute it here and throughout the book.

The output of the `phpinfo.php` script should be a long page full of system and environment information. This information is very helpful when you're trying to figure out what's available to you. If you browse through the results, you'll see that the following extensions are preinstalled (along with many others):



- Perl-compatible regular expression support
- ODBC support
- Session support
- XML support
- MySQL support

Having these items preinstalled means that no additional `.dll` files are

necessary for these functions to be available to you. For more information on obtaining .dll files for additional PHP functionality, see [Appendix A](#), "Additional Configuration Options."

You're now ready to move on to [Part II](#), "The Absolute Basics of Coding in PHP," and learn the fundamentals of the PHP language.

# Installing PHP for Linux/Unix

This section shows you how to install PHP on Linux/Unix as a dynamic module for Apache. By building a dynamic rather than a static module, you can upgrade or recompile PHP without having to recompile Apache as well. For example, all you'll be doing in this section is configuring PHP for MySQL support. If you decide you want additional options later in the game, such as image-creation functions or additional encryption functions, you'll only have to change the configuration command for PHP, recompile the module, and restart Apache. No additional changes will be needed for the Apache installation, because one PHP module file just replaces another.

To download the PHP source distribution, visit the Downloads page at the PHP website: <http://www.php.net/downloads.php>.

1. From the Complete Source Code section, follow the link for PHP 5.x.x where x.x refers to the version. The current source code version is 5.0.0RC1, and that version number will be used in the following steps. Although your version number (and therefore filename) might vary in the future, the procedure will remain the same, substituting the new name as appropriate.
2. Once it's downloaded to your system, type `cp php-5.0.0RC1.tar.gz /usr/local/src/` and press Enter to copy the PHP source distribution to the `/usr/local/src/` directory.

**Note** You can put PHP anywhere you want on your file system, such as `/usr/local/bin/` or `/opt/` or wherever you want to put the file. Just be sure to substitute your path for the path indicated in these directions.

3. Go to `/usr/local/src/` by typing `cd /usr/local/src/` and pressing Enter.
4. Unzip the source file by typing `gunzip php-`

**5.0.0RC.tar.gz** and pressing Enter.

5. Extract the files by typing `tar -xvf php-5.0.RC1.tar` and pressing Enter. This will create a directory structure, and then put you back at the prompt. The parent directory will be `/usr/local/src/php-5.0.0b4/`.

6. Enter the parent directory by typing `cd php-5.0.RC1` and pressing Enter.

7. Type the following and press Enter to prepare to build PHP:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr/local/php5 --with-mysqldir=/usr/local/mysql  
--with-apxs2=/usr/local/apache2/bin/apxs
```

**Note** In configuration directives, use your own paths to the MySQL and Apache directories, should they reside elsewhere on your file system.

The configuration script will run through its process of checking your configuration and creating makefiles, and then will put you back at the prompt.

8. Type `make` and press Enter. This second step of the installation process will produce many lines of output on your screen. When it is finished, you will be back at the prompt.
9. Type `make install` and press Enter. This final step of the installation process will produce many lines of output on your screen. When it is finished, you will be back at the prompt.

Now, to get a basic version of PHP working with Apache, all you need to do is make a few modifications to the `httpd.conf` file.

## Configuring Apache to Use PHP

The installation process will have placed a module in the proper place within the Apache directory structure. Now you must make some

modifications to the `httpd.conf` file before starting up Apache with PHP enabled.

1. Open the `httpd.conf` file in your text editor of choice.
2. Look for the following line, which will have been inserted into the file by the installation process:

```
LoadModule php5_module      modules/libphp5.so
```

You want this line to be uncommented, so ensure that it is (as shown).

3. Look for the following lines:

```
# AddType allows you to add to or override the !
# file mime.types for specific file types.
#AddType application/x-tar .tgz
```

4. Add to these lines the following:

```
AddType application/x-httpd-php .phtml .php
```

5. Save and close the `httpd.conf` file.

This modification tells Apache that anytime a file with an extension of `.php` or `.phtml` is requested, Apache should first run that file through the PHP parser before sending any output to the web browser.

Once these changes have been made to `httpd.conf`, you're ready to start Apache and test your PHP installation.

## Testing the PHP Installation

Now that all of your modifications have been made to the `httpd.conf` file, you can restart Apache using the method you learned in [Chapter 2](#), "Installing Apache." To test that Apache and PHP are playing nice together, you'll next create a simple PHP script to test your installation. PHP scripts and other files (HTML, images, and so on) should be located in the document root of your web server. For Apache, the document root is the `htdocs` directory within your Apache installation directory.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and type the following:

```
<? phpinfo(); ?>
```

2. Save the file with the name `phpinfo.php`.
3. Place this file in the document root of your web server.
4. Open your web browser, type  
<http://127.0.0.1/phpinfo.php>, and then press Enter.

The output of the `phpinfo.php` script should be a long page full of system and environment information. This information is very helpful when you're trying to figure out what's available to you.

For more information on configuring and building additional functionality into your PHP installation, see [Appendix A](#), "Additional Configuration Options."



You're now ready to move on to [Part II](#), "The Absolute Basics of Coding in PHP," and learn the fundamentals of the PHP language.

## **Part II: The Absolute Basics of Coding in PHP**

## **Chapter List**

[Chapter 4:](#) Mixing PHP and HTML

[Chapter 5:](#) Introducing Variables and Operators

[Chapter 6:](#) Using PHP Variables

## **Chapter 4: Mixing PHP and HTML**

## Overview

Now that you have a working development environment, with PHP, Apache, and MySQL happily running on your machine, it's time to delve into the PHP language. In this chapter, you'll learn how to do the following:

- Recognize and use the different kinds of PHP start and end tags
- Mingle PHP and HTML within your source code
- Escape special characters in your scripts to produce valid output

## How PHP is Parsed

So you have a file, and in that file you have some HTML and some PHP code. This is how it all works, assuming a PHP document with an extension of `.php`.

**Note** The file extension does not have to be `.php`, but it does have to be an extension that Apache understands should be parsed as PHP, which you learned in [Chapter 2](#), "Installing Apache."

1. The web browser requests a document with a `.php` extension.
2. The web server says, "Hey! Someone wants a PHP file, which means this is a file that needs to be parsed," and sends the request on to the PHP parser.
3. The PHP parser finds the requested file and scans it for PHP code.
4. When the PHP parser finds PHP code, it executes that code and places the resulting output (if any) into the place in the file formerly occupied by the code.
5. This new output file is sent back to the web server.
6. The web server sends it along to the web browser.
7. The web browser displays the output.

Because the PHP code is parsed on the server, this method of code execution is called *server-side code*. When code is executed in a browser, such as JavaScript, it is called *client-side code*.

To combine PHP code with HTML, the PHP code must be set apart from the HTML. In the [next section](#), you'll learn how this is done, using PHP start and end tags.

## PHP Start and End Tags

The PHP parser recognizes a few types of PHP start and end tags. It will attempt to execute anything between these tags, so it had better be valid code!

Study [Table 4.1](#) to learn the three main sets of start and end tags recognized by the PHP parser.

**Table 4.1: Basic PHP Start and End Tags**

| Opening Tag             | Closing Tag |
|-------------------------|-------------|
| <?php                   | ?>          |
| <?                      | ?>          |
| <script language="php"> | </script>   |

Next, you'll use all three sets of tags in a script, which I promise will execute without errors.

1. Open a new file in your text editor.

2. Type the following code, which uses the first tag type:

```
<?php  
echo "<P>This is a test using the first tag typ  
?>
```

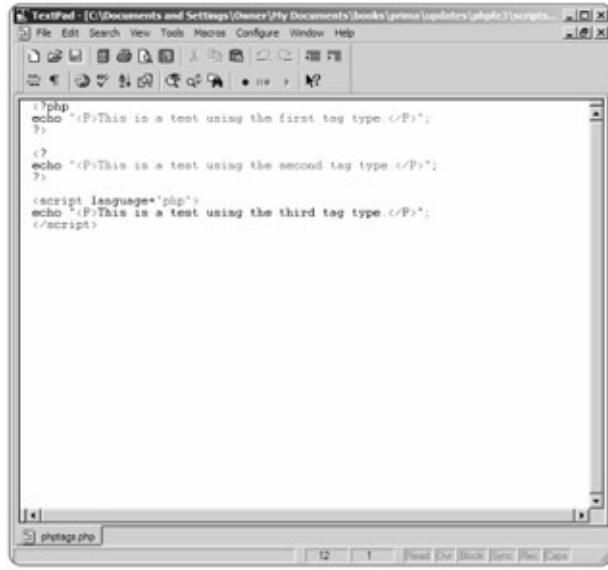
3. Type the following code, which uses the second tag type:

```
<?  
echo "<P>This is a test using the second tag ty  
?>
```

4. Type the following code, which uses the third tag type:

```
<script language="php">  
echo "<P>This is a test using the third tag typ  
</script>
```

5. Save the file with the name `phptags.php`.
  6. Place this file in the document root of your web server.
  7. Open your web browser and type  
<http://127.0.0.1/phptags.php>.



**Note** While executing the examples in this book, if you are using PHP on an external web server, substitute that server's domain name for the 127.0.0.1 address in the URL.

In your web browser, you should see the results of your script.

In the [next section](#), you'll learn that putting PHP blocks inside HTML is not a scary thing.



## Code Cohabitation

In the [previous section](#), your file consisted of three chunks of PHP code, each of which printed some HTML text. In this section, you'll create a script that has PHP code stuck in the middle of your HTML, and you'll learn how these two types of code can peacefully coexist.

1. Open a new file in your text editor.

2. Type the following HTML:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>My First PHP Script</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
```

3. Type the following PHP code:

```
<?
echo "<P><em>Hello World! I'm using PHP!</em></
?>
```

4. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

5. Save the file with the name `firstscript.php`.

6. Place this file in the document root of your web server.

7. Open your web browser and type

<http://127.0.0.1/firstscript.php>. In your web browser, you should see the results of your script.

8. In your web browser, view the source of this document.



Notice that the HTML source contains only HTML code, which is correct because this block of PHP was executed:

```
<?
echo "<P><em>Hello World! I 'm
using PHP!</em></P>";
?>
```



This block contains three elements: the command (`echo`), the string (`<P><em>Hello World! I 'm using PHP!</em></P>`), and the

instruction terminator ( ; ).

Familiarize yourself now with `echo`, because it will likely be your most often-used command. The `echo` statement is used to output information —in this case, to print this HTML output:

```
<P><em>Hello World! I'm using PHP!</em></P>
```

The [next section](#) discusses a common error, with the hope that you'll be able to avoid it.

## The Importance of the Instruction Terminator

The instruction terminator, also known as the semicolon ( ; ), is absolutely required at the end of commands. The instruction terminator tells the PHP parser, "I'm done with this command, try the next one."

If you do not end commands with a semicolon, the PHP parser will become confused, and your code will display errors. These next steps show you how these errors come about and, more importantly, how to fix them.

1. Open a new file in your text editor.
2. Type the following HTML:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Making an Error</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
```

3. Type the following PHP code:

```
<?
echo "<P>I am trying to produce an error</P>";
echo "<P>Was I successful?</P>";
?>
```

4. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>  
</HTML>
```

5. Save the file with the name `errorscript.php`.
6. Place this file in the document root of your web server.
7. Open your web browser and type  
**<http://127.0.0.1/errorscript.php>**.

What a nasty error! The error message says that the error is on line 8. Take a look at lines 7 and 8 of the script:

```
echo "<P>I am trying to  
produce an error</P>"  
echo "<P>Was I  
successful?</P>;
```

Line 7 does not have an instruction terminator, and line 8 starts a new command. The PHP parser doesn't like this, and it tells you so by producing the parse error.



This error is easy enough to fix:

1. Open the `errorscript.php` file.

2. On line 7, add the instruction terminator ( ; ) to the end of the line:

```
echo "<P>I am trying to produce an error</P>";
```

3. Save the file.
4. Place this file in the document root of your web server.
5. Open your web browser and type

**<http://127.0.0.1//errorscript.php>.**



After you fix line 7, the PHP parser can deal with the file, and the rest of the output is successful. Avoid this and other errors by paying close attention to things such as semicolons and, as you'll learn in the [next section](#), quotation marks!



# Escaping Your Code

Right up there with remembering to terminate your commands with semicolons is remembering to escape characters such as quotation marks. When you use quotation marks inside other quotation marks, the inner pairs must be delineated from the outside pair using the escape (\) character (also known as a backslash).

The following steps show you what happens when your code isn't escaped, and how to fix it.

1. Open a new file in your text editor.

2. Type the following HTML:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Trying For Another Error</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
```

3. Type the following PHP code:

```
<?
echo "<P>I think this is really \"cool\"!</P>";
?>
```

4. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

5. Save the file with the name `errorscript2.php`.

6. Place this file in the document root of your web server.

7. Open your web browser and type

<http://127.0.0.1/errorscript2.php>.

Another parse error! Take a look at the PHP code:

```
echo "<P>I think this is
```

```
really "cool"!</P>";
```

Because you have a set of quotation marks within another set of quotation marks, that inner set has to be escaped.

This error also has a simple fix:

1. Open the `errorscript2.php` file.
2. On line 9, escape the inner quotation marks by placing a backslash before each one:  
`echo "<P>I think this is  
really \"cool\"!</P>";`



3. Save the file.
4. Place this file in the document root of your web server.
5. Open your web browser and type  
**<http://127.0.0.1/errorscript2.php>**.

Now that the inner quotation marks are escaped, the PHP parser will skip right over them, knowing that these characters should just be printed and have no other meaning. In the [next section](#), you'll learn a good

programming practice: commenting your code so other people know what the heck is going on in it, should they have to edit it.



## Commenting Your Code

Commenting your code is a good habit to have. Entering comments in HTML documents helps you (and others who might have to edit your document later) keep track of what's going on in large documents. Comments also allow you to write notes to yourself during the development process, or to comment out parts of code when you are testing your scripts, so the code is not executed.

HTML comments are ignored by the browser and are contained within <!-- and --> tags. For example, the following comment reminds you that the next bit of HTML code contains a logo graphic:

```
<!-- logo graphic goes here -->
```

PHP uses comments too, which are ignored by the PHP parser. PHP comments are usually preceded by double slashes, like this:

```
// this is a comment in PHP code
```

But you can use other types of comments, such as

```
# This is shell-style style comment
```

and

```
/* This begins a C-style comment that runs
onto two lines */
```

Create a script full of comments so that you can see how they're ignored. Yes, I'm telling you to write a script that does absolutely nothing!

1. Open a new file in your text editor.
2. Type the following HTML:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Code Comments</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
```

```
<!-- This is an HTML comment. -->
```

3. Type the following PHP code:

```
<?  
 // This is a simple PHP comment.  
 /* This is a C-style, multiline comment. You can  
 long as you'd like. */  
 # Used to shells? Use this kind of comment.  
 ?>
```

4. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>  
</HTML>
```

5. Save the file with the name `comments.php`.

6. Place this file in the document root of your web server.

7. Open your web browser and type

<http://127.0.0.1/comments.php>.

You should see absolutely nothing in your web browser, because all you did was print an HTML comment (which is ignored by the browser). Because the PHP parser ignores comments and the PHP block didn't contain any actual commands, there was no other output to display. If you view the source of this document in your web browser, you will notice that only the HTML comment is visible. Although the PHP code was all comments, it was still parsed and therefore is not visible to the users.



HTML and PHP comments are used extensively throughout this book to explain blocks of code. Get used to reading comments, and try to pick up the habit of using them. Writing clean, bug-free code that also contains comments and plenty of white space for easy reading will make you popular among your developer peers, because they won't have to work extra hard to figure out what your code is trying to do. In the [next chapter](#), you'll learn all about variables, or, as I like to call them, "those things with the dollar signs."

## **Chapter 5: Introducing Variables and Operators**

## Overview

In the last chapter, you were introduced to the process of parsing PHP code and how the code output is displayed in your web browser. In the next few chapters, you'll learn a bit about the inner workings of the PHP language—all the bits and pieces that, when you put them together, actually produce a working script! In this chapter, you learn how to:

- Recognize and use variables
- Recognize and use operators

# What's a Variable?

A variable is a representation of a particular value, such as `blue` or `19349377`. By assigning a value to a variable, you can reference the variable in other places in your script, and that value will always remain the same (unless you change it, which you'll learn about later).

To create a variable, do the following (in your head):

1. Think of a good name! For instance, if I want to create a variable to hold a username, I name my variable:

`username`

2. Put a dollar sign (\$) in front of that name:

`$username`

3. Use the equals sign after the name (=) to assign a literal value to that variable. Put the value in quotation marks:

`$username = "joe"`

4. Assigning a value to a variable is an instruction, and as such it should be terminated with a semicolon:

`$username = "joe";`

There you have it—a variable called `username` with a value of `joe`. Later in this chapter, you'll do some exciting things (such as math) with your variables.

## Naming Your Variables

As you've seen, variables begin with a dollar sign (\$) and are followed by a meaningful name. The variable name cannot begin with a numeric character, but it can contain numbers and the underscore character (\_). Additionally, variable names are case-sensitive, meaning that `$YOURVAR` and `$yourvar` are two different variables.

Creating meaningful variable names is another way to lessen headaches

while coding. For example, if your script deals with name and password values, don't create a variable called `$n` for the name and `$p` for the password—those are not meaningful names. If you pick up that script weeks later, you might think that `$n` is the variable for "number" rather than "name" and that `$p` stands for "page" rather than "password."

# PHP Variable and Value Types

You will create two main types of variables in your PHP code: *scalar* and *array*. Scalar variables contain only one value at a time, and arrays contain a list of values, or even another array.

The example at the beginning of this chapter created a scalar variable, and the code in this book deals primarily with scalar variables. You can find information on arrays in [Appendix B](#), "Basic PHP Language Reference."

When you assign a value to a variable, you usually assign a value of one of the following types:

- **Integers.** Whole numbers (numbers without decimals). Examples are 1, 345, and 9922786. You can also use octal and hexadecimal notation: the octal 0123 is decimal 83 and the hexadecimal 0x12 is decimal 18.
- **Floating-point numbers ("floats" or "doubles").** Numbers with decimals. Examples are 1.5, 87.3446, and 0.88889992.
- **Strings.** Text and/or numeric information, specified within double quotes (" ") or single quotes (' ').

As you begin your PHP script, plan your variables and variable names carefully, and use comments in your code to remind yourself of the assignments you have made.

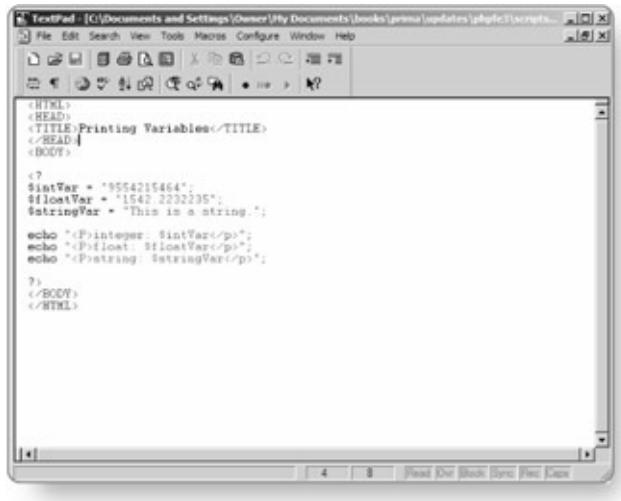
Create a simple script that assigns values to different variables and then simply prints the values to the screen.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and type the following HTML:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Printing
Variables</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
```

2. Add a PHP block and create a variable that holds an integer:

```
<?
$intVar =
"9554215464";
```



3. Create a variable that holds a floating-point number:

```
$floatVar = "1542.2232235";
```

4. Create a variable that holds a string:

```
$stringVar = "This is a string.>";
```

5. Add an echo statement for each variable:

```
echo "<P>integer: $intVar</P>";
echo "<P>float: $floatVar</P>";
echo "<P>string: $stringVar</P>";
```

6. Close your PHP block and add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
?>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

7. Save the file with the name `printvars.php` and place this file in the document root of your web server.

8. Open your web browser and type

<http://127.0.0.1/printvars.php>.



You can see by this output that the values you assigned to the variables `$intVar`, `$floatVar`, and `$stringVar` were the values printed to the screen. In the [next section](#), you'll learn how to use operators to change the values of your variables.

## Local and Global Variables

Variables can be *local* or *global*, the difference having to do with their definition and use by the programmer, and where they appear in the context of the scripts you are creating. The variables described in the [previous section](#), and for the majority of this book, are local variables.

When you write PHP scripts that use variables, those variables can be used only by the script in which they live. Scripts cannot magically reach inside other scripts and use the variables created and defined there—unless you say they can and you purposely link them together. When you do just that, such as when you create your own functions (blocks of reusable code that perform a particular task), you will define the shared variables as global. That is, you will define them as able to be accessed by other scripts and functions, as needed.

You can learn about creating your own functions, and using global as well as local variables, in [Appendix C](#), "Writing Your Own Functions and Objects." For now, just understand that there are two variable scopes—local and global—that come into play as you write more advanced scripts.

## Pre-Defined Variables

In all PHP scripts, a set of pre-defined variables is available to you. You might have seen some of these variables in the output of the `phpinfo()` function, if you scrolled and read through the entire results page. Some of these pre-defined variables are called *superglobals*, meaning that they are always present and available to all of your scripts, without any intervention by you, the programmer.

Please study the following list of superglobals, because they will be used exclusively throughout this book. Each of these superglobals is actually an array of other variables. Don't worry about fully understanding this concept now, because it will be explained as you move through the book.

- `$_GET` contains any variables provided to a script through the `GET` method.
- `$_POST` contains any variables provided to a script through the `POST` method.
- `$_COOKIE` contains any variables provided to a script through a cookie.
- `$_FILES` contains any variables provided to a script through file uploads.
- `$_ENV` contains any variables provided to a script as part of the server environment.
- `$_SESSION` contains any variables that are registered in a session.

## Using Constants

A *constant* is an identifier for a value that cannot change during the course of a script. Once a constant has a value, it remains through the constant's execution lifetime. Constants can be user-defined, or you can use some of the predefined constants that PHP always has available. Unlike simple variables, constants do not have a dollar sign before their names, and they are usually uppercase to show their difference from scalar variables. Next, you'll test the user-defined type.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and open a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. The function used to define a constant is called `define()`, and it requires the name of the constant and the value you want to give it. Here you define a constant called `MYCONSTANT` with a value of "This is a test of defining constants.".

```
define("MYCONSTANT", "This is a test of defining constants");
```

3. Print the value of the constant, and then close the PHP block:

```
echo MYCONSTANT;
```

4. Save the file with the name `constants.php` and place this file in the document root of your web server.

5. Open your web browser and type

<http://127.0.0.1/constants.php>.



Some predefined constants include:

- **\_\_FILE\_\_** The name of the script file being parsed.
- **\_\_LINE\_\_** The number of the line in the script being parsed.
- **PHP\_VERSION** The version of PHP in use.
- **PHP\_OS** The operating system using PHP.

Let's test these constants:

1. Open a new file in your text editor and open a PHP block:  
<?>
2. Use the `echo` statement to display an introductory string, and concatenate the **\_\_FILE\_\_** constant to the end of it:  
`echo "<br>This file is ".__FILE__;`

**Note** *Concatenate* means to add one string to the end of another, making a new string.

3. Use the `echo` statement to display an introductory string, and

concatenate the `__LINE__` constant to the end of it:

```
echo "<br>This is line number ".__LINE__;
```

4. Use the `echo` statement to display an introductory string, and concatenate the `PHP_VERSION` constant to the end of it:

```
echo "<br>I am using ".PHP_VERSION;
```

5. Use the `echo` statement to display an introductory string, and concatenate the `PHP_OS` constant to the end of it. Also close up the PHP block:

```
echo "<br>This test is being run on ".PHP_OS;  
?>
```

6. Save the file with the name `constants2.php` and place this file in the document root of your web server.

7. Open your web browser and type

**<http://127.0.0.1/constants2.php>**.



You should see the strings you typed, plus the values of the constants. Your values will likely differ from those you see here.

# What's an Operator?

In the [previous section](#), you used an assignment operator (=) to assign values to your variables. There are other types of assignment operators, as well as other types of operators in general. The basic function of an operator is to do something with the value of a variable. That "something" can be assigning a value, changing a value, or comparing two or more values.

Here are the main types of PHP operators:

- **Assignment operators.** Assign values to variables. Can also add to or subtract from a variable's current value.
- **Arithmetic operators.** Addition, subtraction, division, and multiplication occur when these operators are used.
- **Comparison operators.** Compare two values and return either true or false. You can then perform actions based on the returned value.
- **Logical operators.** Determine the status of conditions.

The rest of this chapter is devoted to discussing some of the main operators used in PHP. You'll be writing example scripts for each, so hang on to your hat!

## Assignment Operators

You've already seen an assignment operator at work: the equals sign is the basic assignment operator. Burn this into your brain: = does *not* mean "equal to"! Instead, == (two equals signs) means "equal to," and the single = means "is assigned to." In fact, you've also seen the concatenation operator in this chapter, as it is used to put strings together.

Take a look at the assignment operators in [Table 5.1](#) and prepare to write a new script.

**Table 5.1: Assignment Operators**

Operator	Example	Action
<code>+=</code>	<code>\$a += 3;</code>	Changes the value of a variable to the current value plus the value on the right side.
<code>-=</code>	<code>\$a -= 3;</code>	Changes the value of a variable to the current value minus the value on the right side.
<code>.=</code>	<code>\$a .= "string";</code>	Concatenates (adds on to) the value on the right side with the current value.

Create a simple script to show how all of these assignment operators work. This script will assign an original value to one variable and then change that value as the script executes, all the while printing the result to the screen.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and type the following HTML:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Using Assignment Operators</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
```

2. Start a PHP block. Create a variable with a value of 100 and then print it:

```
<?
$origVar = 100;
echo "<P>Original value is $origVar</P>";
```

3. Add to that value and then print it:

```
$origVar += 25;
echo "<P>Added a value, now it's $origVar</P>";
```

4. Subtract from that value and then print it:

```
$origVar -= 12;  
echo "<P>Subtracted a value, now it's $origVar<
```

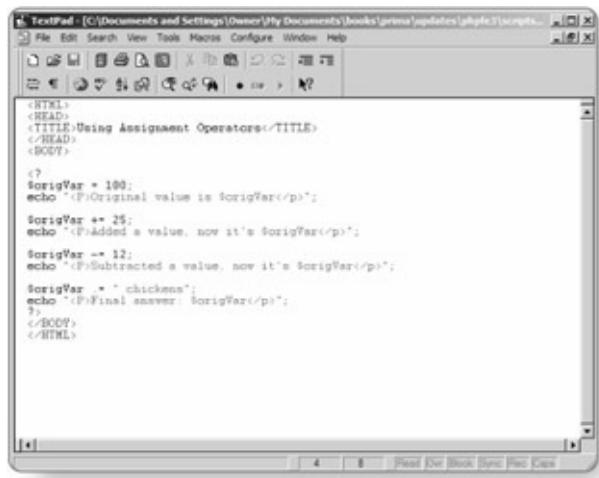
5. Concatenate a string and then print it:

```
$origVar .= " chickens";  
echo "<P>Final answer: $origVar</P>";
```

6. Close your PHP block and add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
?>  
</BODY>  
</HTML>
```

7. Save the file with the name `assignscript.php` and place this file in the document root of your web server.



8. Open your web browser and type

<http://127.0.0.1/assignscript.php>.



The results of your calculations will be printed to the screen. The [next section](#) moves to arithmetic operators, none of which should be strange to you as long as you made it through your first few years of school.

## Arithmetic Operators

Arithmetic operators simply perform basic mathematical tasks. Take a look at [Table 5.2](#), be sure you remember your basic math, and start creating the test script for this section.

**Table 5.2: Arithmetic Operators**

Operator	Example	Action
+	<code>\$b = \$a + 3;</code>	Adds values
-	<code>\$b = \$a - 3;</code>	Subtracts values
*	<code>\$b = \$a * 3;</code>	Multiplies values
/	<code>\$b = \$a / 3;</code>	Divides values

`%`

`$b = $a %  
3;`

Returns the modulus, or  
remainder

Create a simple script to show how all of these arithmetic operators work. This script assigns original values to two variables, performs mathematical operations, and prints the results to the screen.



The screenshot shows a window titled "TextPad - [C:\Documents and Settings\Owner\My Documents\books\prima\updates\phpfc] scripts..." containing a PHP script. The script starts with an HTML header and then begins a PHP block. It defines variables \$a and \$b, both set to 85 and 24 respectively. It then performs several operations: addition (\$c = \$a + \$b), subtraction (\$c = \$a - \$b), multiplication (\$c = \$a \* \$b), division (\$c = \$a / \$b), and modulus (\$c = \$a % \$b). Finally, it prints the results of each operation using echo statements.

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Using Arithmetic Operators</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<?php
$a = 85;
$b = 24;
echo "<P>Original value of \$a is $a and \$b is $b</p>";
$c = $a + $b;
echo "<P>Added \$a and \$b and got $c</p>";
$c = $a - $b;
echo "<P>Subtracted \$b from \$a and got $c</p>";
$c = $a * $b;
echo "<P>Multiplied \$a and \$b and got $c</p>";
$c = $a / $b;
echo "<P>Divided \$a by \$b and got $c</p>";
$c = $a % $b;
echo "<P>The modulus of \$a and \$b is $c</p>";
?>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

1. Open a new file in your text editor and type the following HTML:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Using
Arithmetic
Operators</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
```

2. Start a PHP block, create two variables with values, and print the values:

```
<?
$a = 85;
$b = 24;
echo "<P>Original value of
\$a is $a and \$b is
```

```
$b</P>" ;
```

**Note** If you escape the dollar sign (\\$), it will print literally instead of being interpreted as a variable.

3. Add the two values and print the result:

```
$c = $a + $b;  
echo "<P>Added \$a and \$b and got $c</P>" ;
```

4. Subtract the two values and print the result:

```
$c = $a - $b;  
echo "<P>Subtracted \$b from \$a and got $c</P>" ;
```

5. Multiply the two values and print the result:

```
$c = $a * $b;  
echo "<P>Multiplied \$a and \$b and got $c</P>" ;
```

6. Divide the two values and print the result:

```
$c = $a / $b;  
echo "<P>Divided \$a by \$b and got $c</P>" ;
```

7. Check the modulus of the two values and print the result:

```
$c = $a % $b;  
echo "<P>The modulus of \$a and \$b is $c</P>" ;
```

8. Close your PHP block and add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
?>  
</BODY>  
</HTML>
```

9. Save the file with the name arithmeticscript.php and place this file in the document root of your web server.

10. Open your web browser and type

<http://127.0.0.1/arithmeticscript.php>.



Your original values, as well as the results of the various calculations, are printed to the screen.

Next you move to comparison operators, which are crucial in coding, but not nearly as much fun as arithmetic operators.

## Comparison Operators

It should come as no surprise to you that comparison operators compare two values. As with the arithmetic operators, you have probably already seen most of the comparison operators, but might not know what they are called. Take a look at [Table 5.3](#), and then you can start creating the test script for this section.

**Table 5.3: Comparison Operators**

Operator	Definition
<code>==</code>	Equal to
<code>!=</code>	Not equal to

>	Greater than
<	Less than
>=	Greater than or equal to
<=	Less than or equal to

The result of any of these comparisons is either true or false. This isn't much fun, but you can act on the result using control statements such as `if...else` and `while` to perform a specific task.

Create a simple script to show the result of some comparisons, using the `if...else` control statements to print a result to the screen.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and type the following HTML:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Using Comparison Operators</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
```

2. Start a PHP block, create two variables with values, and print the values:

```
<?
$a = 21;
$b = 15;
echo "<P>Original value of \$a is $a and \$b is
```

3. Within an `if...else` statement, test whether `$a` is equal to `$b`. Depending on the answer (true or false), one of the `echo` statements will print:

```
if ($a == $b) {
    echo "<P>TEST 1: \$a equals \$b</P>";
} else {
    echo "<P>TEST 1: \$a is not equal to \$b</P>";
}
```

**Note** Conditional expressions are enclosed in parentheses, such as this:

```
if ($a == $b)
```

and not this:

```
if $a == $b
```

4. Within an `if...else` statement, test whether `$a` is not equal to `$b`. Depending on the answer (true or false), one of the `echo` statements will print:

```
if ($a != $b) {  
    echo "<P>TEST 2: \$a is not equal to \$b</P>";  
} else {  
    echo "<P>TEST 2: \$a is equal to \$b</P>";  
}
```

**Note** The curly braces `{` and `}` separate the blocks of statements within a control structure.

5. Within an `if...else` statement, test whether `$a` is greater than `$b`. Depending on the answer (true or false), one of the `echo` statements will print:

```
if ($a > $b) {  
    echo "<P>TEST 3: \$a is greater than \$b</P>";  
} else {  
    echo "<P>TEST 3: \$a is not greater than \$b</P>";  
}
```

6. Within an `if...else` statement, test whether `$a` is less than `$b`. Depending on the answer (true or false), one of the `echo` statements will print:

```
if ($a < $b) {  
    echo "<P>TEST 4: \$a is less than \$b</P>";  
} else {  
    echo "<P>TEST 4: \$a is not less than \$b</P>";  
}
```

```
}
```

7. Within an if...else statement, test whether \$a is greater than or equal to \$b. Depending on the answer (true or false), one of the echo statements will print:

```
if ($a >= $b) {  
    echo "<P>TEST 5: \$a is greater than or equ  
} else {  
    echo "<P>TEST 5: \$a is not greater than or  
}
```

8. Within an if...else statement, test whether \$a is less than or equal to \$b. Depending on the answer (true or false), one of the echo statements will print:

```
if ($a <= $b) {  
    echo "<P>TEST 6: \$a is less than or equal  
} else {  
    echo "<P>TEST 6: \$a is not less than or eq  
}
```

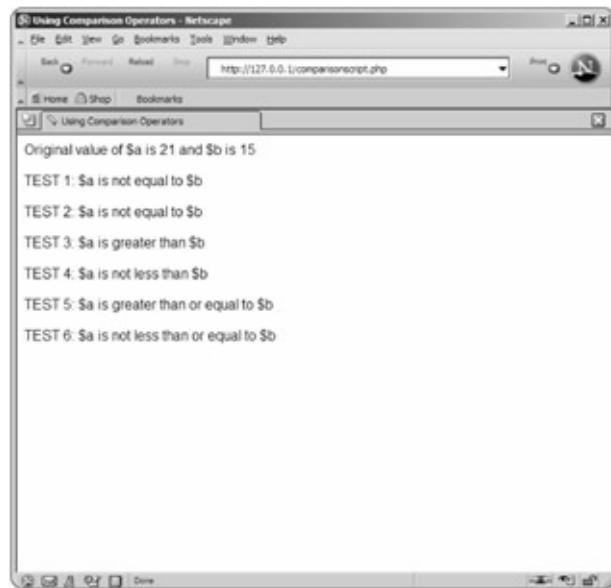
9. Close your PHP block and add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
?>  
</BODY>  
</HTML>
```

10. Save the file with the name comparisonscript.php, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

11. Open your web browser and type

<http://127.0.0.1/comparisonscript.php>.



The original values, as well as the results of the various comparisons, are printed to the screen. The last group of operators you'll tackle are logical operators, which are also used frequently inside blocks of code.

## Logical Operators

Logical operators allow your script to determine the status of conditions (such as the comparisons in the preceding section). In the context of `if...else` or `while` statements, logical operators execute certain code based on which conditions are true and which are false.

For now, focus on the `&&` (and) and `||` (or) operators to determine the validity of a few comparisons.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and type the following HTML:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Using Logical Operators</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
```

2. Start a PHP block and create two variables with values. The comparisons in this script are based on these two variables:

```
<?
$degrees = "95";
$hot = "yes";
```

3. Within an `if...else` statement, test whether `$degrees` is greater than 100 or if the value of `$hot` is "yes." Depending on the result of the two comparisons, one of the `echo` statements will print:

```
if (($degrees > 100) || ($hot == "yes")) {
    echo "<P>TEST 1: It's <strong>really</strong> hot!";
} else {
    echo "<P>TEST 1: It's bearable.</P>";
}
```

**Note** Because this conditional expression is actually made up of two smaller conditional expressions, an extra set of parentheses surrounds it.

4. Repeat the same `if...else` statement as in step 3, but change the operator from the `||` operator to the `&&` operator:

```
if (($degrees > 100) && ($hot == "yes")) {
    echo "<P>TEST 2: It's <strong>really</strong> hot!";
} else {
    echo "<P> TEST 2: It's bearable.</P>";
}
```

5. Close your PHP block and add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
?>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

6. Save the file with the name `logicalscript.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.
7. Open your web browser and type

<http://127.0.0.1/logicalscript.php>.



The text message associated with each comparison result is printed to the screen. In the first test, only one expression has to be true, and that is satisfied by `$hot` having a value of "yes." In the second test, both expressions have to be true, and they are not; `$degrees` has a value of 95, which is not greater than 100, even though `$hot` has a value of "yes." In this case, the second message is displayed.

Numerous other types of operators are used in PHP. They are explained as they appear throughout the book. The operators listed in this chapter give you a solid foundation in the basics of using variables and operators. In the [next chapter](#), you'll use your newly acquired knowledge of variables and operators to build scripts that perform more intriguing actions than those explained so far.

## **Chapter 6: Using PHP Variables**

## Overview

Now that you know a little bit about variables in general, it's time to take that knowledge one step further and do more interesting things with variables. In this chapter, you learn how to:

- Use HTML forms to send variables to your scripts
- Use environment variables

# Getting Variables From Forms

HTML forms contain at least the following elements:

- A method
- An action
- A submit button

In your HTML code, the first line of a form looks something like this:

```
<FORM METHOD="post" ACTION="yourscript.php">
```

When you click on a submit button in an HTML form, variables are sent to the script specified by the ACTION via the specified METHOD. The method can be either POST or GET. Variables passed from a form to a PHP script are placed in the superglobal called `$_POST` or `$_GET`, depending on the form method. In the [next section](#), you see how this works, by creating an HTML form and accompanying PHP script that performs calculations depending on the form input.

## Creating a Calculation Form

In this section, you'll create the front end to a calculation script. This form will contain two input fields and a radio button to select the calculation type.

1. Open a new file in your text editor.
2. Type the following HTML:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Calculation Form</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
```

3. Begin your form. Assume that the method is POST and the action is a script called calculate.php:

```
<FORM METHOD="post" ACTION="calculate.php">
```

4. Create an input field for the first value, with a text label:

```
<P>Value 1: <INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="val1" SIZE=10>
```

5. Create an input field for the second value, with a text label:

```
<P>Value 2: <INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="val2" SIZE=10>
```

6. Add a submit button:

```
<P><INPUT TYPE="submit" NAME="submit" VALUE="Calculate">
```

7. Close your form and add more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</FORM>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

8. Save the file with the name `calculate_form.html`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

9. Open your web browser and type

**[http://127.0.0.1/calculate\\_form.html](http://127.0.0.1/calculate_form.html)**



You will see a form containing the Value 1 and Value 2 fields, along with a Calculate button. Take a moment to examine the HTML form, to understand just how variables will get their names.

When submitted, this form will send two variables to your script, `$_POST[val1]` and `$_POST[val2]`, because those are the NAMES used in each text field. The values for those variables are the values typed in the form fields by the user.

There's one more item to add: a series of radio buttons to determine the type of calculation to perform on the two values.

1. Open `calculate_form.html` in your text editor.

2. Add this block before the submit button:

```
<P>Calculation:<br>
<INPUT TYPE="radio" NAME="calc" VALUE="add"> add
<INPUT TYPE="radio" NAME="calc" VALUE="subtract"> subtract
<INPUT TYPE="radio" NAME="calc" VALUE="multiply"> multiply
<INPUT TYPE="radio" NAME="calc" VALUE="divide"> divide
```

3. Save the file and place it in the document root of your web server.

4. Open your web browser and type  
[http://127.0.0.1/calculate\\_form.html](http://127.0.0.1/calculate_form.html).



Your form will now contain the Value 1 and Value 2 fields, a set of radio buttons, and a Calculate button. Now, in addition to the two values (`$_POST[val1]` and `$_POST[val2]`), a variable called `$_POST[calc]` will be sent to your script. Move on to the [next section](#) and create the calculation script.

## Creating the Calculation Script

According to the form action in `calculate_form.html`, you need a script called `calculate.php`. The goal of this script is to accept the two values (`$_POST[val1]` and `$_POST[val2]`) and perform a calculation depending on the value of `$_POST[calc]`.

1. Open a new file in your text editor.
2. Start a PHP block and prepare an `if` statement that checks for the presence of the three values:

```
<?
if (($_POST[val1] == "") || ($_POST[val2] == "")
```

```
// more code goes here  
}
```

This statement says, "If any of these three variables do not have a value, do something else."

3. Replace the "more code goes here" with the following two lines:

```
header("Location: calculate_form.html");  
exit;
```



The first of these two lines outputs a header statement—in this case, one that sends the browser back to the calculation form. The second line causes the script to exit. So, if any of the three required variables do not have a value, this action will occur.

**Note** Be sure that there are no line breaks, spaces, or any other text before your PHP block starts. You cannot use the `header()` function if output has already been sent to the browser.

4. Begin an `if...else` statement to perform the correct calculation, based on the value of `$_POST[calc]`, starting with a value of "add":

```
if  ($_POST[calc] == "add")  {
```

```
$result = $_POST[val1] + $_POST[val2];
```

5. Continue the statement for the remaining three calculation types, and then close your PHP block:

```
} else if ($_POST[calc] == "subtract") {  
    $result = $_POST[val1] - $_POST[val2];  
} else if ($_POST[calc] == "multiply") {  
    $result = $_POST[val1] * $_POST[val2];  
} else if ($_POST[calc] == "divide") {  
    $result = $_POST[val1] / $_POST[val2];  
}  
?>
```

6. Start the HTML output:

```
<HTML>  
<HEAD>  
<TITLE>Calculation Result</TITLE>  
</HEAD>  
<BODY>
```

7. Using HTML mingled with PHP code, display the value of \$result:

```
<P>The result of the calculation is: <? echo "$
```

8. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>  
</HTML>
```

9. Save the file with the name calculate.php, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

In the [next section](#), you submit the form and even try to break it, which is just a bit of good, healthy debugging.

## Submitting Your Form and Getting Results

Now that you've created both the front end (form) and the back end (script), it's time to hold your breath and test it.

1. To access the calculation form, open your web browser and type [http://127.0.0.1/calculate\\_form.html](http://127.0.0.1/calculate_form.html).
2. Click on the Calculate button without typing anything in the form fields. Your web browser will reload the page because you didn't enter any values for the three required fields.
3. Enter a value for Value 1, but not for Value 2, and do not select a calculation option. After you click on Calculate, the page should reload.
4. Enter a value for Value 2, but not for Value 1, and do not select a calculation option. After you click on Calculate, the page should reload.
5. Enter a value for Value 1 and for Value 2, but do not select a calculation option. After you click on Calculate, the page should reload.
6. Select a calculation option, but do not enter any values for Value 1 or Value 2. After you click on Calculate, the page should reload.

Now that you've debugged the script by attempting to bypass your validation routine, try some calculations, such as the following:

1. Enter 9732 for Value 1 and 27 for Value 2.
2. Select add, and click on the Calculate button.



The result of the addition calculation is printed to the screen.

Knock yourself out by trying all sorts of number calculations to prove that it works.

# HTTP Environment Variables

When a web browser makes a request of a web server, it sends along with the request a list of extra variables. These are called *environment variables*, and they can be very useful for displaying dynamic content or authorizing users.

The `phpinfo()` function displays a wealth of information about your web server software and the version of PHP you are running, in addition to the basic HTTP environment. Let's see what you have.

1. Open a new file in your text editor.
2. Type the following line of PHP code:  
`<? phpinfo(); ?>`
3. Save the file with the name `phpinfo.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.
4. Open your web browser and type  
<http://127.0.0.1/phpinfo.php>.



You should see a very long page full of interesting information.

**Note** This information will differ, not only from machine to machine, but also from platform to platform and version to version. Your results will vary, but the overall template is the same.

As you scroll down, look for a section titled Apache Environment. In the next sections, you'll learn how to use two environment variables found here: `REMOTE_ADDR` and `HTTP_USER_AGENT`. For an explanation of some of the other HTTP environment variables shown in the `phpinfo()` output, visit <http://hoohoo.ncsa.uiuc.edu/cgi/env.html>.

## Retrieving and using `REMOTE_ADDR`

By default, environment variables are available to PHP scripts as `$VAR_NAME`. For example, the `REMOTE_ADDR` environment variable is already contained as `$REMOTE_ADDR`. However, to be absolutely sure that you're reading the correct value, you can use the `getenv()` function to assign a value to a variable of your choice.

The `REMOTE_ADDR` environment variable contains the IP address of the machine making the request. Let's get the value of your `REMOTE_ADDR`.

1. Open a new file in your text editor.
2. Open a PHP block, and then use `getenv()` to place the value of `REMOTE_ADDR` in a variable called `$address`:

```
<?
$address = getenv("REMOTE_ADDR");
```

3. Print the value of `$address` to the screen, and close your PHP block:

```
echo "Your IP address is $address.";
?>
```

4. Save the file with the name `remoteaddress.php`, and then place this file in the document root of your web server.

5. Open your web browser and type  
<http://127.0.0.1/remoteaddress.php>.



Your current IP address is printed to the screen.

**Note** Your IP address will differ from that shown here, which is my own IP at the moment I ran this script.

In the [next section](#), you'll get the value of another handy environment variable, `HTTP_USER_AGENT`, which is the environment variable that holds the identifying string of the web browser being used.

## Retrieving and using `HTTP_USER_AGENT`

The `HTTP_USER_AGENT` variable contains the browser type, browser version, language encoding, and platform. For example, the following value string refers to the Netscape browser, version 7.1, in English, on the Windows platform:

Mozilla/5.0 (Windows; U; Windows NT 5.1; en-US; rv:1.4  
Gecko/20030624 Netscape/7.1 (ax) .

Here is another common `HTTP_USER_AGENT` value:

Mozilla/4.0 (compatible; MSIE 6.0; Windows NT 5.1)

This value refers to Microsoft Internet Explorer (MSIE) version 6.0 on Windows. Sometimes you will see MSIE return an `HTTP_USER_AGENT` value that looks like a Netscape value, such as this one, which begins with `Mozilla`, until you notice that the value says it's `compatible` and is actually `MSIE 6.0`.

Finally, don't count out the text-only browsers! A Lynx `HTTP_USER_AGENT` value looks something like this:

`Lynx/2.8rel.3 libwww-FM/2.14`

Let's find your `HTTP_USER_AGENT`.

1. Open a new file in your text editor.
2. Open a PHP block, and then use `getenv()` to place the value of `HTTP_USER_AGENT` in a variable called `$agent`:

```
<?
$agent = getenv("HTTP_USER_AGENT");
```

3. Print the value of `$agent` to the screen, and then close your PHP block:

```
echo " You are using $agent.";
```

```
?>
```

4. Save the file with the name `useragent.php`, and then place this file in the document root of your web server.
5. Open your web browser and type  
<http://127.0.0.1/useragent.php>.



Your current `HTTP_USER_AGENT` value is printed to the screen.

**Note** Your user agent string might be different than the one shown, because each browser, version, and platform creates its own identification string.

In this chapter you've used several types of variables, including variables from forms. Variables are absolutely essential bits of your scripts, so becoming intimately familiar with them is a good thing. In the [next chapter](#), you'll learn many of the basic tasks for web developers, including displaying dynamic content, sending e-mail, and working with your file system—all of which build on the use of variables.

## **Part III: Start with the Simple Stuff**

## **Chapter List**

[Chapter 7:](#) Displaying Dynamic Content

[Chapter 8:](#) Sending E-Mail

[Chapter 9:](#) Using Your File System

[Chapter 10:](#) Uploading Files to Your Website

## **Chapter 7: Displaying Dynamic Content**

## Overview

The web is a dynamic environment, so why not use your programming skills to display dynamic content? Dynamic content can be as simple or as complex as you want it to be. In this chapter, you learn how to:

- Display browser-specific HTML
- Display platform-specific HTML
- Use PHP string functions on HTML form input
- Create a redirection menu using an HTML form and the `header()` function

# Displaying Browser-Specific HTML

In the [previous chapter](#), you learned to retrieve and print the `HTTP_USER_AGENT` environment variable to the screen. In this chapter, you do something a bit more interesting with the value of `HTTP_USER_AGENT`, and that's printing browser-specific HTML.

However, having seen some of the possible values of `HTTP_USER_AGENT` in the last chapter, you can imagine that there are hundreds of slightly different values. So it's time to learn some basic pattern matching.

You'll use the `preg_match()` function to perform this task. This function needs two arguments: what you're looking for, and where you're looking: `preg_match("/[what you're looking for]/", "[where you'`

This function returns a value of true or false, which you can use in an `if...else` block to do whatever you want. The goal of the first script is to determine whether a web browser is Microsoft Internet Explorer, Netscape, or something else.

Within the value of `HTTP_USER_AGENT`, Netscape always uses the string `Mozilla` to identify itself. Unfortunately, the value of `HTTP_USER_AGENT` for Microsoft Internet Explorer also uses `Mozilla` to show that it's compatible. Luckily, it also uses the string `MSIE`, so you can search for that. If the value of `HTTP_USER_AGENT` doesn't contain either `Mozilla` or `MSIE`, chances are very good that it's not one of those web browsers.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block, and then use `getenv()` to place the value of `HTTP_USER_AGENT` in a variable called `$agent`:

```
<?
$agent = getenv("HTTP_USER_AGENT");
```

2. Start an `if...else` statement to find which of the `preg_match()` functions is true, starting with the search for

MSIE:

```
if (preg_match("/MSIE/i", "$agent")) {  
    $result = "You are using Microsoft Internet  
}
```

3. Continue the statement, testing for "Mozilla":

```
else if (preg_match("/Mozilla/i", "$agent")) {  
    $result = "You are using Netscape.";  
}
```

**NOTE**

The *i* in the `preg_match()` function performs a case-insensitive search.

4. Finish the statement by defining a default:

```
else {  
    $result = "You are using $agent";  
}
```

5. Close your PHP block and add some HTML to begin the display:

```
?>  
<HTML>  
<HEAD>  
<TITLE>Browser Match Results</TITLE>  
</HEAD>  
<BODY>
```

6. Type the following PHP code to print the result of the `if...else` statement:

```
<? echo "<P>$result</P>"; ?>
```

7. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>  
</HTML>
```

8. Save the file with the name `browsermatch.php`, and place

this file in the document root of your web server.

9. Open your web browser and type  
<http://127.0.0.1/browsermatch.php>.

Depending on the web browser you use, you might see a result such as shown in the following two figures.



If you're using neither Netscape nor Microsoft Internet Explorer, the actual value of `HTTP_USER_AGENT` will be printed.

Various flavors of Microsoft Internet Explorer (MSIE) account for approximately 78% of web browsers in use, whereas versions of Netscape (NS) take up about 15%. Throw in the die-hard Lynx, Opera, Konquerer, and other users to reach 100%.



Although a 80/20 split might seem like a majority, if 500 million people have access to the Internet, 100 million non-MSIE users is a huge number to consider when developing a good website. HotWired maintains a browser reference at [http://hotwired.lycos.com/webmonkey/reference/browser\\_chart/](http://hotwired.lycos.com/webmonkey/reference/browser_chart/), which shows you some of the differences between the major browsers. In the [next section](#), you'll take into consideration how not all platforms are created equal, and in fact might not display HTML similarly, either.

## Displaying Platform-Specific HTML

There are differences not only between browsers, but also between platforms. This difference is most clear with regard to fonts and font sizes. In the Windows world, you have fonts such as Times New Roman and Courier New. Slight variations of these fonts appear on the Macintosh and Linux/UNIX platforms; they are called Times and Courier. It doesn't end there—the font sizes all are displayed differently. A 10-point font on Macintosh or Linux is sometimes barely legible, but if you bump it up to 11 or 12 point, you're in business. If that same 12-point font is viewed on Windows, however, it might look like your text is trying to take over the world.

So what to do? Use your new pattern-matching skills to extract the platform from the `HTTP_USER_AGENT` string, and then display platform-specific HTML. As with matching on a keyword to nail down the platform—which you did in the [previous section](#)—you also need to know what you're looking for. In the next script, you'll check for the keywords "Win" and "Linux" and print an appropriate style sheet block in your HTML result page.

1. Open a new file in your text editor, start a PHP block, and use `getenv()` to place the value of `HTTP_USER_AGENT` in a variable called `$agent`:

```
<?
$agent = getenv("HTTP_USER_AGENT");
```

2. Start an `if...else` statement to find which of the `preg_match()` functions is true, starting with the search for "Win":

```
if (preg_match("/Win/i", "$agent")) {
    $style = "win";
}
```

3. Continue the statement, testing for "Linux":

```
else if (preg_match("/Linux/i", "$agent")) {
```

```
    $style = "linux";
}
```

4. Create a basic style sheet block for Windows users:

```
$win_style = "<style type=\"text/css\">p, ul, ol
    {font-family:Arial;font-size:10pt;font-weight:bold;
     h1      {font-family:Arial;font-size:16pt;font-weight:bold;
     h2      {font-family:Arial;font-size:14pt;font-weight:bold;
     strong  {font-family:Arial;font-size:10pt;font-weight:bold;
     em      {font-family:Arial;font-size:10pt;font-weight:bold;
    </style>";
```

**Note** When you use quotation marks inside other quotation marks, the inner pair must be delineated from the outside pair using the escape (\) character (also known as a backslash).

5. Create a basic style sheet block for Linux users:

```
$linux_style = "<style type=\"text/css\">
p, ul, ol, li      {font-family:Times;font-size:10pt;font-weight:bold;
     h1      {font-family:Times;font-size:18pt;font-weight:bold;
     h2      {font-family:Times;font-size:16pt;font-weight:bold;
     strong  {font-family:Times;font-size:12pt;font-weight:bold;
     em      {font-family:Times;font-size:12pt;font-weight:bold;
    </style>";
```

6. Close your PHP block and add the following HTML:

```
?>
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Platform Matching</TITLE>
```

7. Type the following PHP code, creating an if...else statement used to print the correct style sheet block:

```
<?
```

```
if ($style == "win") {  
    echo "$win_style";  
} else if ($style == "linux") {  
    echo "$linux_style";  
}  
?>
```

8. Close the top section of your HTML and start the body:

```
</HEAD>  
<BODY>
```

9. Type the following HTML to show the use of your style sheet:

```
<h1 align=center>This is a level 1 heading</h1>  
<h2 align=center>Look! A level 2 heading</h2>  
<P align=center>This is a simple paragraph with  
<strong>bold</strong> and <em>emphasized</em> t
```

10. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>  
</HTML>
```

11. Save the file with the name `platformmatch.php`, and place it in the document root of your web server.

12. Open your web browser and type

<http://127.0.0.1/platformmatch.php>.

Depending on the web browser you use, you might see a result such as shown in the following two figures.



You can see that the proper style sheet block was printed, based on the result of the platform match. In the [next section](#), you'll move away from pattern matching and work with some of the string functions in PHP to modify form input before displaying it back to the browser.



# Working with String Functions

Numerous string functions are built into PHP, all of which are designed to make your life easier. Suppose you have to normalize strings for news headlines or product ID numbers, or calculate the length of a string before trying to stuff it into a database field. Those are just a few of the string functions you'll learn about in the [next section](#). For more string functions, take a look at the PHP manual at <http://www.php.net/strings>. The function list grows daily as more people contribute to the language.

## Creating an Input Form

In this section, you'll create the front end to a string modification script. This form will contain one text area and several radio buttons. The radio buttons will determine the string function to use.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and type the following HTML:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Generic Input Form</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
```

2. Begin your form. Assume that the method is POST and the action is a script called `display_input.php`:

```
<FORM METHOD="post" ACTION="display_input.php">
```

3. Create a text area with a text label:

```
<P><strong>Text Field:</strong><br>
<TEXTAREA NAME="text1" COLS=45 ROWS=5 WRAP=virtual>
```

4. Add this block of radio buttons:

```
<P><strong>String Function:</strong><br>
<INPUT TYPE="radio" NAME="func" VALUE="md5"> get_md5()
<INPUT TYPE="radio" NAME="func" VALUE="strlen"> strlen()
<INPUT TYPE="radio" NAME="func" VALUE="strrev"> strrev()
<INPUT TYPE="radio" NAME="func" VALUE="strtoupper"> strtoupper()
```

```
<INPUT TYPE="radio" NAME="func" VALUE="strtolower"
<INPUT TYPE="radio" NAME="func" VALUE="ucwords"
```

**Note** The value for each radio button is its exact PHP function name. This will make the back-end script very simple to create, as you'll see in the [next section](#).

5. Add a submit button:

```
<P><INPUT TYPE="submit" NAME="submit" VALUE="Do
String"></P>
```

6. Close your form and add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</FORM>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

7. Save the file with the name `generic_form.html`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.
8. Open your web browser and type  
[http://127.0.0.1/generic\\_form.html](http://127.0.0.1/generic_form.html).



You'll see a form with a text area and several radio buttons, along with a Do Something With the String form submission button. In the [next section](#), you'll create the back-end script. That script will expect two variables: `$_POST[text1]` and `$_POST[func]`.

## Creating a Script to Display Form Values

According to the form action in `generic_form.html`, you need a script called `display_input.php`. The goal of this script is to accept the text in `$_POST[text1]` and use a particular string function (the value of `$_POST[func]`) to get a new result (`$result`).

1. Open a new file in your text editor and type the following PHP code. This will ensure that the user is sent back to the form if no value is entered in the text area and no function is selected from the list of radio buttons:

```
<?
if (($_POST[text1] == "") || ($_POST[func] == ""))
    header("Location: generic_form.html");
    exit;
}
```

2. Type the next bit of PHP, which assigns the value of the function output to a variable called `$result`, and then close the PHP

**block:**

```
$result = $_POST[func]($_POST[text1]);  
?>
```

**3. Start the HTML output:**

```
<HTML>  
<HEAD>  
<TITLE>Generic Input Results</TITLE>  
</HEAD>  
<BODY>
```

**4. Display the value of \$result:**

```
<? echo "$result"; ?>
```

**5. Add a link back to the form:**

```
<P><a href="generic_form.html">Go again!</a></P>
```

**6. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:**

```
</BODY>  
</HTML>
```

**7. Save the file with the name `display_input.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.**

Your code should look something like this:

```
<?  
if (($_POST[func] == "") || ($_POST[text1] == "")  
header("Location: generic_form.html");  
exit;  
}  
$result = $_POST[func]($_POST[text1]);  
?>  
<HTML>  
<HEAD>
```

```
<TITLE>Generic Input Results</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<? echo "$result"; ?>
<p><a href="generic_form.html">Go again!</a></p>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

In the [next section](#), you'll submit the form and see all these different types of string functions at work.

## Submitting Your Form and Getting Results

Now that you've created both a front-end form and a back-end script, it's time to try them out.

1. Open your web browser and type  
[http://127.0.0.1/generic\\_form.html](http://127.0.0.1/generic_form.html).
2. Type the following text in the text area:  
I think PHP is just the coolest server-side scr.  
Who knew it would be this simple?

**Note** You might want to copy that chunk of text to the clipboard, because it will be used in all of the following examples.

3. Select the get md5 radio button, and click on the Do Something With the String button.



**Note** The `md5()` function gets a *hash* of the string. A hash is like a digital summary of the string. It can be used to compare versions of strings (or files) to determine whether the versions differ.

You should see a hash of the string, along with a link back to the form. Return to the form and enter the same text, only this time select the button that will use the `strlen()` function to find the length of the string, including white space and all characters.



Continue testing each of the remaining functions. When you select the button to use the `strrev()` function, you will see that your original string has been completely reversed. The `strtoupper()` function returns the string with all letters in uppercase, whereas the `strtolower()` function returns the string with all letters in lowercase. Finally, use the `ucwords()` function to return the string with the first letter of each word in uppercase.



# Redirecting to a New Location

Redirecting a user to a new location means that your script has sent an HTTP header to the browser, indicating a new location. HTTP headers of any kind (authentication, redirection, cookies, and so on) must be sent to the browser before anything else, including white space, line breaks, and any characters.

Although you've already used the `header()` function to redirect the user in the case of an incomplete form, in the [next section](#) you create a specific redirection menu. The goal is to have the users select a new location from a drop-down menu and then have the script automatically send them there.

## Creating a Redirection Form

In this section, you'll create the front end to a redirection script. This form will contain a drop-down list of the names of various websites. The value for each option is the website's URL.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and type the following HTML:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE> Redirection Menu</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
```

2. Begin your form. Assume that the method is `POST` and the action is a script called `do_redirect.php`:

```
<FORM METHOD="post" ACTION="do_redirect.php">
```

3. Add this drop-down list:

```
<P>Send me to:
<SELECT name="location">
    <OPTION value="">-- Select One --</OPTION>
    <OPTION value="http://www.thickbook.com/">
    <OPTION value="http://www.i2ii.com/">i2i I:
```

```
<OPTION value="http://www.php.net/">PHP.net  
<OPTION value="http://www zend.com/">Zend  
</SELECT>
```

4. Add a submit button:

```
<P><INPUT TYPE="submit" NAME="submit" VALUE="Go"
```

5. Close your form, and add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</FORM>  
</BODY>  
</HTML>
```

6. Save the file with the name `redirect_form.html`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

7. Open your web browser and type

[http://127.0.0.1/redirect\\_form.html](http://127.0.0.1/redirect_form.html).

In the [next section](#), you create the back-end script. That script will expect one variable: `$_POST[location]`.



## Creating the Redirection Script and Testing It

According to the form action in `redirect_form.html`, you need a script called `do_redirect.php`. The goal of this script is to accept the value of `$_POST[location]` and print that value within the `header()` function so that the user is redirected to the chosen location.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and type the following PHP to create the proper redirection header, including a check to ensure that something was selected:

```
<?
if  ($_POST[location]  == "") {
    header("Location: redirect_form.html");
    exit;
} else {
    header("Location: $_POST[location]");
    exit;
}
?>
```

2. Save the file with the name `do_redirect.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.
3. Open your web browser and type  
[http://127.0.0.1/redirect\\_form.html](http://127.0.0.1/redirect_form.html).
4. Select PHP.net from the drop-down list, and click on the Go! button.

Users are now redirected to the PHP website. Try some of the other selections, or add your own for practice.

In this chapter, you learned some of the different types of dynamic content that can be used in a website, and some other things you can do, such as redirecting users based on a drop-down menu. In the [next chapter](#), you learn how to utilize of the more popular web tools—sending e-mail.



## **Chapter 8: Sending E-Mail**

## Overview

Using PHP to send the contents of a form to a specified e-mail address is so easy that you'll wonder why more people don't do it every day. In this chapter, you learn how to:

- Modify the PHP configuration file so you can send mail
- Create and send a simple feedback form
- Use the `$PHP_SELF` variable to create a feedback form with custom error messages

## Using an SMTP Server

SMTP is an acronym for Simple Mail Transfer Protocol, and an SMTP server is a machine that transports mail, just like a web server is a machine that displays web pages when requested. An SMTP server is sometimes referred to as an outgoing mail server, which brings me to the point—you need such a server in order to complete the exercises in this chapter. On Linux/Unix, Send mail and Qmail are popular packages. On Windows, the SMTP service in the Windows NT Service Pack, or the service built into the Windows 2000 operating system, is often used.

However, if you have installed Apache, PHP, and MySQL as part of a development environment on your personal machine, you probably do not have SMTP running locally. If that's the case, you can access an outgoing mail server that might already be available to you.

**Note** If you skipped the first three chapters of this book and are using PHP as part of an Internet service provider's virtual hosting package, the SMTP server should already be installed on that machine, and PHP should be properly configured to access it.

If your machine is connected to the Internet via a dial-up connection, DSL, cable, or other type of access, you can use your Internet service provider's outgoing mail server. For example, if your development machine is a Windows box with a DSL connection to the Internet, you can use something like `mail.yourprovider.com` as your outgoing mail server. The rule of thumb is that whatever you have configured within your e-mail client (Eudora, Outlook, Netscape Mail, and so on) as your outgoing mail server will also function within your PHP code as your SMTP server. The trick is making PHP aware of this little fact, which you learn about next.

### SMTP-Related Changes in `php.ini`

In the `php.ini` master configuration file, there are a few directives that need to be set up so that the `mail()` function works properly. Open `php.ini` with a text editor and look for these lines:

```
[mail function];
For Win32 only.
SMTP = localhost
; For Win32 only.
sendmail_from = me@localhost.com
; For Unix only. You may supply arguments as well (def.
;sendmail_path =
```

If you are using Windows, you'll need to modify the first two directives, `SMTP` and `sendmail_from`. If you plan to use the outgoing mail server of your ISP (in this example, suppose it's called `DSLProvider.net`), the entry in `php.ini` would look like this:

```
SMTP = mail.dslprovider.net
```

The second configuration directive is `sendmail_from`, and this is the e-mail address used in the `From` header of the outgoing e-mail. It can be overwritten in the mail script itself but normally operates as the default value. For example:

```
sendmail_from = youraddress@yourdomain.com
```

Of course, replace `<youraddress@yourdomain.com>` with your own address.

If you're on Linux or a Unix variant, `sendmail_path` is all you need to worry about, and it should look something like this:

```
sendmail_path = /usr/sbin/sendmail
```

Or, if you're using Qmail

```
sendmail_path = /var/qmail/bin/sendmail
```

In the `sendmail_path` directive, you can also set configuration flags to specify queuing options or to explicitly set the `Return-Path` header, such as

```
sendmail_path = /usr/sbin/sendmail -t -fyou@yourdomain
```

After making changes to the `php.ini` file, restart the web server and

use the `phpinfo()` function to verify that the changes have been made. When that's done, you're ready to send some e-mail using PHP.

# A Simple Feedback Form

A simple feedback form usually contains fields for the respondent's name and e-mail address, and a text area for some sort of message. In this section, you create two files: one for the feedback form, and one for the PHP script to process the form, send the mail, and return a response to the browser.

## Creating the Feedback Form

In this section, you create the first half of the form/script combo—the feedback form itself, often referred to as the front-end form.

1. Open a new file in your text editor.
2. Type the following HTML:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Simple Feedback Form</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
```

3. Begin your form. Assume that the method is `POST` and the action is a script called `send_simpleform.php`:

```
<FORM METHOD="POST" ACTION="send_simpleform.php"
```

4. Create an input field for the user's name with a text label:

```
<P><strong>Your Name:</strong><br>
<INPUT type="text" NAME="sender_name" SIZE=30><
```

5. Create an input field for the user's e-mail address with a text label:

```
<P><strong>Your E-Mail Address:</strong><br>
<INPUT type="text" NAME="sender_email" SIZE=30>
```

6. Create a text area to hold the message with a text label:

```
<P><strong>Message:</strong><br>
```

```
<TEXTAREA NAME="message" COLS=30 ROWS=5 WRAP=vi
```

7. Add a submit button:

```
<P><INPUT TYPE="submit" NAME="submit" VALUE="Se
```

8. Close your form and add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</FORM>  
</BODY>  
</HTML>
```

9. Save the file with the name `simple_form.html`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

10. Open your web browser and type

[http://127.0.0.1/simple\\_form.html](http://127.0.0.1/simple_form.html).



You should see a form containing a text field for the person's name, a text field for the person's e-mail address, a text area for the message, and a button that says Send This Form.

In the [next section](#), you create the back-end script. That script will expect

three variables: `$_POST[sender_name]`, `$_POST[sender_email]`, and `$_POST[message]`.

## Creating a Script to Mail Your Form

According to the form action in `simple_form.html`, you need a script called `send_simpleform.php`. The goal of this script is to accept the text in `$_POST[sender_name]`, `$_POST[sender_email]`, and `$_POST[message]` format, send an e-mail, and display a confirmation to the web browser.

1. Open a new file in your text editor.
2. Begin a PHP block, and then add some error-checking code into the mix:

```
<?
if (($_POST[sender_name] == "") ||
    ($_POST[sender_email] == "") ||
    ($_POST[message] == ""))
{
    header("Location: simple_form.html");
    exit;
}
```

3. Start building a message string, which will contain the content for the e-mail itself:

```
$msg = "E-MAIL SENT FROM WWW SITE\n";
```

4. Continue building the message string by adding an entry for the sender's name:

```
$msg .= "Sender's Name:\t$_POST[sender_name]\n";
```

**NOTE**

The use of the newline (`\n`) character ensures that your code will print on multiple lines. This is helpful when you are viewing your HTML source.

**Note** The next few steps will continue building the message string by concatenating smaller strings to form one

long message string.

5. Continue building the message string by adding an entry for the sender's e-mail address:

```
$msg .= "Sender's E-Mail:\t$_POST[sender_email]
```

6. Continue building the message string by adding an entry for the message:

```
$msg .= "Message:\t$_POST[message]\n";
```

7. Create a variable to hold the recipient's e-mail address (substitute your own):

```
$to = "you@youremail.com";
```

8. Create a variable to hold the subject of the e-mail:

```
$subject = "Web Site Feedback";
```

9. Create a variable to hold additional mail headers:

```
$mailheaders = "From: My Web Site <genericaddress@youremail.com>";
```

**Note** Mail headers are the strings at the beginning of mail messages that formulate their structure and essentially make them valid mail messages.

10. Add the following to the \$mailheaders variable:

```
$mailheaders .= "Reply-To: $_POST[sender_email]"
```

11. Add the mail() function:

```
mail($to, $subject, $msg, $mailheaders);
```

12. Close your PHP block:

```
?>
```

Although this code will send the mail, you should return

something to the user's screen so that he knows the form has been sent. Otherwise, he might sit there and continually click the Send This Form button.



- ### 13. Start the HTML output:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Simple Feedback Form Sent</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
```

14. Add some information to tell the user what has happened:

<H1>The following e-mail has been sent:</H1>

15. Add the text label for the Your Name field and display the user's input, and do the same for the other fields:

```
<P><strong>Your Name:</strong><br>
<? echo "$_POST[sender_name]"; ?>
<P><strong>Your E-Mail Address:</strong><br>
<? echo "$_POST[sender_email]"; ?>
<P><strong>Message:</strong><br>
<? echo "$ POST[message]"; ?>
```

16. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

</BODY>

```
</HTML>
```

17. Save the file with the name `send_simpleform.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server. Your code should look something like the following figure.

In the [next section](#), you submit the form and see all these different types of string functions at work.



The screenshot shows a TextPad editor window with the following PHP code:

```
c:\>
if (($_POST[sender_name] == "") || ($_POST[sender_email] == "") || ($_POST[message] == "")) {
    exit();
}

$msg = "E-MAIL SENT FROM WWW SITE";
$msg .= "Sender's Name: " . $_POST[sender_name] . "\n";
$msg .= "Sender's E-Mail: " . $_POST[sender_email] . "\n";
$msg .= "Message: " . $_POST[message] . "\n";

$to = "you@yourdomain.com";
$subject = "Web Site Feedback";
$fromheaders = "From: $to Site <you@yourdomain.com> \n";
$headers .= "Reply-To: " . $_POST[sender_email] . "\n";
mail($to, $subject, $msg, $fromheaders);
?

<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Simple Feedback Form Sent</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<H1>The following e-mail has been sent:</H1>
<P><strong>Your Name:</strong><br>
<? echo "<strong>" . $_POST[sender_name] . "</strong>"; ?>
<P><strong>Your E-Mail Address:</strong><br>
<? echo "<strong>" . $_POST[sender_email] . "</strong>"; ?>
<P><strong>Message:</strong><br>
<? echo "<strong>" . $_POST[message] . "</strong>"; ?>

</BODY>
</HTML>
|+
```

## Submitting Your Form and Getting Results

Now that you've created both a front-end form and a back-end script, it's time to try them out.

1. Open your web browser and type  
[http://127.0.0.1/simple\\_form.html](http://127.0.0.1/simple_form.html).
2. Type your name in the Your Name field.
3. Type your e-mail address in the Your E-Mail Address field.
4. Type the following message in the Message field:  
PHP is so cool!
5. Click on the Send This Form button.

The information you entered, along with a confirmation that your e-mail has been sent, will appear.

Now check your e-mail, and see if a message is waiting for you.



1. Open `send_simpleform.php` in your text editor.
2. Modify the string containing Sender's Name by replacing the tab character (`\t`) with two spaces:

```
$msg .= "Sender's Name:  
$_POST[sender_name]\n";
```

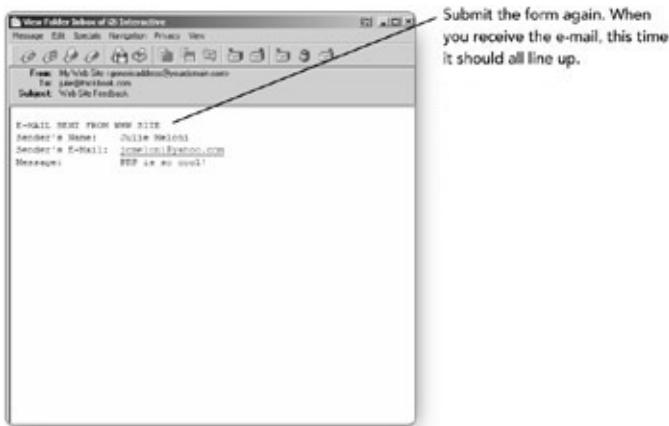
3. Modify the string containing Sender's E-Mail by replacing the tab character (\t) with four spaces:

```
$msg .= "Sender's E-Mail:      $_POST[sender_email]
```

4. Modify the string containing Message by replacing the tab character (\t) with 10 spaces:

```
$msg .= "Message:          $_POST[message] \n";
```

5. Save the file and upload it to your server.



In the [next section](#), you create custom error messages for when fields are blank, and you streamline the two-step process of sending mail into one cohesive script.

# A Feedback Form with Custom Error Messages

In the [previous section](#), you created two separate files. One file contained the front-end (form), and the other contained the back-end (script). In this section, you learn how to use the `$_SERVER[PHP_SELF]` variable in a form action to create a single file that holds both form and script, and how to create custom error messages when required fields are not completed.

## Creating the Initial Script

As you did earlier in this chapter, the first step in creating a form/script pair is to create the front-end form. However, in this all-in-one form, the front-end form is simply the first half of the script and not a separate file.

1. Open a new file in your text editor.
2. Type the following HTML:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>All-In-One Feedback Form</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
```

3. Start a PHP block, and then create a variable called `$form_block`, which will hold the entire form. Start with the form action, and assume that the method is `POST` and the action is `$_SERVER[PHP_SELF]`:

```
<?
$form_block = "
<FORM METHOD=\"POST\" ACTION=\"$_SERVER[PHP_SEL
```

**Note** Because you're putting a long string inside a variable, chances are good that you'll have a quotation mark or two. Remember to escape all your quotation marks with a backslash!

4. Create an input field for the user's name with a text label:

```
<P><strong>Your Name:</strong><br>
<INPUT type="text" NAME="sender_name" SIZE=
```

5. Create an input field for the user's e-mail address with a text label:

```
<P><strong>Your E-Mail Address:</strong><br>
<INPUT type="text" NAME="sender_email" SIZE=
```

6. Create a text area to hold the message with a text label:

```
<P><strong>Message:</strong><br>
<TEXTAREA NAME="message" COLS=30 ROWS=5 WRAP=
```

7. Add a submit button:

```
<P><INPUT TYPE="submit" NAME="submit" VALUE=
```

8. Close the form, and then add the ending quotation marks and instruction erminator (semicolon):

```
</FORM>" ;
```

9. Close the PHP block, and then add some more HTML so that the document is alid:

```
?>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

10. Save the file with the name `allinone_form.php`.

If you looked at this code in our web browser, you'd only see a title in the title bar. The burning question should be, "Why do we need all that HTML in a variable called `$form_block`?" In the [next section](#), you add to the script so that it displays particular chunks of code based on certain actions. The string in `$form_block` is one of those chunks.



The screenshot shows a window of the TextPad text editor. The title bar reads "TextPad [C:\Documents and Settings\Owner\My Documents\Books\Learn PHP\Updates\phppot\scripts\checkup.php]". The main content area contains the following PHP code:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>All-In-One Feedback Form</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>

<?php
$form_block = "
<FORM METHOD='POST' ACTION='$_SERVER[PHP_SELF]'>
<P><strong>Your Name:</strong><input type='text' NAME='sender_name' VALUE='$_POST[sender_name]' SIZE=30></P>
<P><strong>Your E-Mail Address:</strong><input type='text' NAME='sender_email' VALUE='$_POST[sender_email]' SIZE=30></P>
<P><strong>Message:</strong><br>
<TEXTAREA NAME='message' COLS=20 ROWS=5 WRAP=virtual>$_POST[message]</TEXTAREA></P>
<P><input TYPE='submit' NAME='submit' VALUE='Send This Form'></P>
</FORM>";
```

## Adding Error Checking to the Script

The plan is to use the global variable `$_SERVER[PHP_SELF]`, which has a value of the script's current name. So really, `$_SERVER[PHP_SELF]` will have a value of `allinone_form.php` in this instance. When you use `$_SERVER[PHP_SELF]` as a form action, you're saying, "When the submit button is clicked, reload this script and do something," instead of, "When the submit button is clicked, go find another script and do something."

Now that you have a shell of a script, think about what this all-in-one script must do:

- Display the form
- Submit the form
- Check for errors
- Print error messages without sending the form
- Send the form if no errors are found

Make a few modifications to the script to help it determine which actions it should take. Inside the `$form_block` variable, before the HTML code for the submit button, add this line:

```
<INPUT type=\"hidden\" name=\"op\" value=\"ds\">
```

This line creates a hidden variable called `$_POST[op]`, which has a value of `ds`. The "op" stands for "operation," and "ds" stands for "do something." I made these names up; they have nothing to do with any programming language. You can call them whatever you want, as long as you understand what they do (which you'll soon see).

The `$_POST[op]` variable is present only if the form has been submitted. So if the value of `$_POST[op]` is not `ds`, the user hasn't seen the form. If the user hasn't seen the form, you need to show it, so add the following `if...else` statement before the end of the PHP block:

```
if ($_POST[op] != "ds") {  
    // they need to see the form  
    echo "$form_block";  
}
```

You're not done yet, but your code should now look something like this:



A screenshot of the TextPad text editor. The code in the editor is as follows:

```
<HTML>  
<HEAD>  
<TITLE>All-In-One Feedback Form</TITLE>  
</HEAD>  
<BODY>  
  
<?php  
$form_block = '';  
if($_POST){  
    $action = $_SERVER[PHP_SELF];  
    $form_block .= "<FORM METHOD='POST' ACTION=\"$action\">";  
    $form_block .= "<P><strong>Your Name:</strong> <input type='text' NAME='sender_name' VALUE='".$_POST[sender_name]."' SIZE=30></P>";  
    $form_block .= "<P><strong>Your E-Mail Address:</strong> <input type='text' NAME='sender_email' VALUE='".$_POST[sender_email]."' SIZE=30></P>";  
    $form_block .= "<P><strong>Message:</strong> <br> <TEXTAREA NAME='message' COLS=30 ROWS=5 WRAP=virtual>" . $_POST[message] . "</TEXTAREA></P>";  
    $form_block .= "<input type='hidden' name='op' value='ds'>";  
    $form_block .= "<input TYPE='submit' NAME='submit' VALUE='Send This Form'></P>";  
}  
if($_POST[op] != "ds"){  
    //they need to see the form  
    echo $form_block;  
}  
</?php  
</BODY>  
</HTML>
```

You make a few more modifications in the next step, to add your error messages. If the form is submitted, the value of `$_POST[op]` will be `ds`, and now you must account for that. Assume that all the form fields are required; after checking for the value of `$_POST[op]`, you check for a

value in all the fields.

1. Continue the if...else statement:

```
else if ($_POST[op] ==  
"ds") {
```

2. Add an if statement within the parent statement to check for values. Start with \$\_POST[sender\_name]:

```
if ($_POST[sender_name] == "") {
```

3. Create an error message for \$\_POST[sender\_name] called \$name\_err:

```
$name_err = "<font color=red>Please enter your name:</font>";
```

4. Set the value of \$send to "no":

```
$send = "no";
```

5. Create a similar if statement for \$\_POST[sender\_email]:

```
if ($_POST[sender_email] == "") {  
$email_err = "<font color=red>Please enter your email address!</font><br>";  
$send = "no";  
}
```

6. Create a similar if statement for \$\_POST[message]:

```
if ($_POST[message] == "") {  
$message_err = "<font color=red>Please enter a message!</font>";  
$send = "no";  
}
```

7. Start an if...else statement to handle the value of \$send:

```
if ($send != "no") {  
    // it's ok to send!
```

8. Create a variable to hold the recipient's e-mail address

(substitute your own):

```
$to = "you@youremail.com";
```

9. Create a variable to hold the subject of the e-mail:

```
$subject = "All-in-One Web Site Feedback";
```

10. Create a variable to hold additional mail headers:

```
$mailheaders = "From: My Web Site <genericaddr@domain.com>";
```

11. Add to the \$mailheaders variable:

```
$mailheaders .= "Reply-To: $_POST[sender_email]";
```

12. Build the message string:

```
$msg = "E-MAIL SENT FROM WWW SITE\n";
$msg .= "Sender's Name:      $_POST[sender_name]\n";
$msg .= "Sender's E-Mail:    $_POST[sender_email]\n";
$msg .= "Message:           $_POST[message]\n\n"
```

13. Add the mail() function:

```
mail($to, $subject, $msg, $mailheaders);
```

14. Add a simple statement to let the user know the mail has been sent, and lose the if statement:

```
echo "<p>Mail has been sent!</p>";
}
```

15. Continue the if...else statement to deal with a value of "no" for \$send:

```
else if ($send == "no") {
```

16. Print the error messages:

```
echo "$name_err";
echo "$email_err";
echo "$message_err";
```

17. Print the form again:

```
echo "$form_block";
```

18. Close the current if...else block and the parent if...else block:

```
}
```

```
}
```

19. Save the file.

The entire code should look something like this:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>All-In-One Feedback Form</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<?
$form_block =
<FORM METHOD=\\"POST\\" ACTION=\\"$PHP_SELF\\">
<P><strong>Your Name:</strong><br>
<INPUT type=\\"text\\" NAME=\\"sender_name\\" SIZE=30></P>
<P><strong>Your E-Mail Address:</strong><br>
<INPUT type=\\"text\\" NAME=\\"sender_email\\" SIZE=30></P>
<P><strong>Message:</strong><br>
<TEXTAREA NAME=\\"message\\" COLS=30 ROWS=5 WRAP=virtual>
<INPUT type=\\"hidden\\" name=\\"op\\" value=\\"ds\\">
<P><INPUT TYPE=\\"submit\\" NAME=\\"submit\\" VALUE=\\"Send\\">
</FORM>;
```

```
if ($_POST[op] != "ds") {
    // they need to see the form
    echo "$form_block";
} else if ($_POST[op] == "ds") {
    // check value of $_POST[sender_name]
    if ($_POST[sender_name] == "") {
        $name_err = "<font color=red>Please enter yo";
        $send = "no";
```

```

}

// check value of $_POST[sender_email]
if ($_POST[sender_email] == "") {
    $email_err = "<font color=red>Please enter y
e-mail address!</font><br>";
    $send = "no";
}

// check value of $_POST[message]
if ($_POST[message]== "") {
    $message_err = "<font color=red>Please enter
$send = "no";
}

if ($send != "no") {
    // it's ok to send, so build the mail
    $msg = "E-MAIL SENT FROM WWW SITE\n";
    $msg .= "Sender's Name: $_POST[sender_name]\n";
    $msg .= "Sender's E-Mail: $_POST[sender_email]\n";
    $msg .= "Message: $_POST[message]\n\n";
    $to = "you@yourdomain.com";
    $subject = "All-in-One Web Site Feedback";
    $mailheaders = "From: My Web Site
<genericaddress@yourdomain.com>\n";
    $mailheaders .= "Reply-To: $_POST[sender_email]\n";
    //send the mail
    mail($to, $subject, $msg, $mailheaders);
    //display confirmation to user
    echo "<p>Mail has been sent!</p>";
} else if ($send == "no") {
    //print error messages
    echo "$name_err";
    echo "$email_err";
    echo "$message_err";
    echo "$form_block";
}
?>

```

## Submitting Your Form and Getting Results

Now that you've created both a front-end form and a back-end script, it's time to try them out.

1. Open your web browser and type  
[http://127.0.0.1/allinone\\_form.php](http://127.0.0.1/allinone_form.php).

You will see a form containing a text field for the person's name, a text field for the person's e-mail address, a text area for the message, and a button that says Send This Form.



2. Submit the form without typing anything in any of the fields.

The form, with all three error messages at the top, will appear in your browser window.

All-In-One Feedback Form - Netscape

Please enter your name!  
Please enter your e-mail address!  
Please enter a message!

Your Name:

Your E-Mail Address:

Message:

Send This Form

3. Type your name in the Your Name field and then submit the form.

All-In-One Feedback Form - Netscape

Please enter your e-mail address!  
Please enter a message!

Your Name:

Your E-Mail Address:

Message:

Send This Form

The form will reappear, this time without the name error message.

4. Type your name in the Your Name field and your e-mail address in the Your E-Mail Address field, and then submit the form.

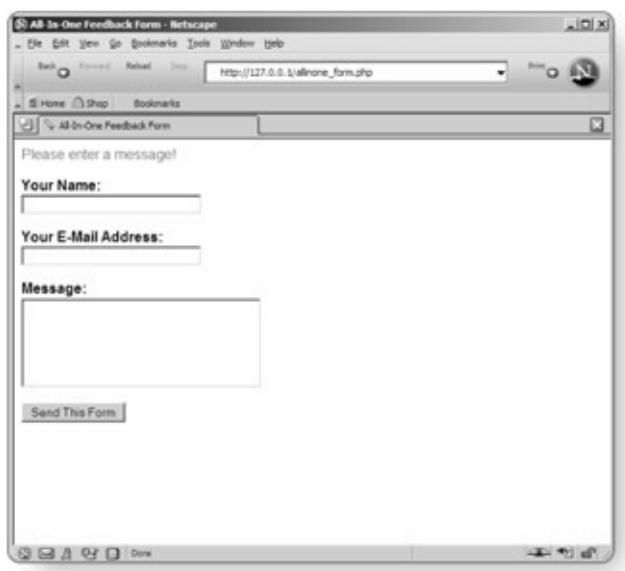
The form will reappear again, this time with only the message

error.

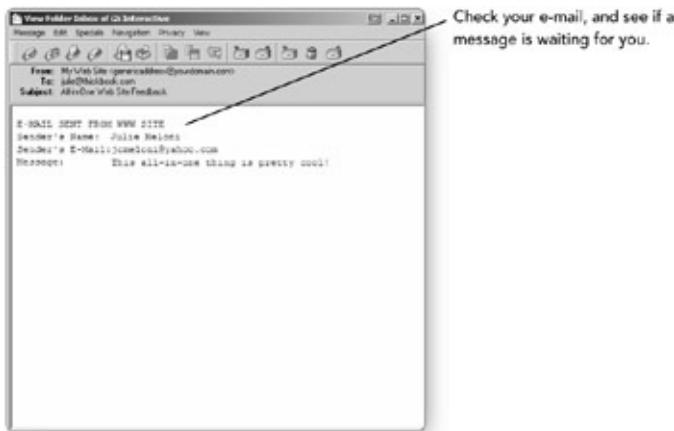
5. Type your name in the Your Name field, your e-mail address in the Your E-Mail Address field, and the following message:

This all-in-one thing is  
pretty cool!

6. Submit the form.



You will see a confirmation that our message has been sent.



Check your e-mail, and see if a message is waiting for you.

## Saving the Values if You Make an Error

One thing you probably noticed in the original script is that if you made an error, the form was reset and you lost the values you had entered. A simple modification to the original `$form_block` will take care of that problem. Just add a `VALUE` attribute to the form field to hold any previous value for the given variable.

1. Open `allinone_form.php` in your text editor.
2. Inside the `$form_block` variable, modify the input field for Your Name:

```
<INPUT type="text" NAME="sender_name"  
VALUE="$_POST[sender_name]" SIZE=30></P>
```

3. Modify the input field for Your E-Mail Address:

```
<INPUT type="text" NAME="sender_email"  
VALUE="$_POST[sender_email]" SIZE=30></P>
```

4. Modify the text area for Message:

```
<TEXTAREA NAME="message" COLS=30 ROWS=5  
WRAP=virtual>$_POST[message]</TEXTAREA></P>
```

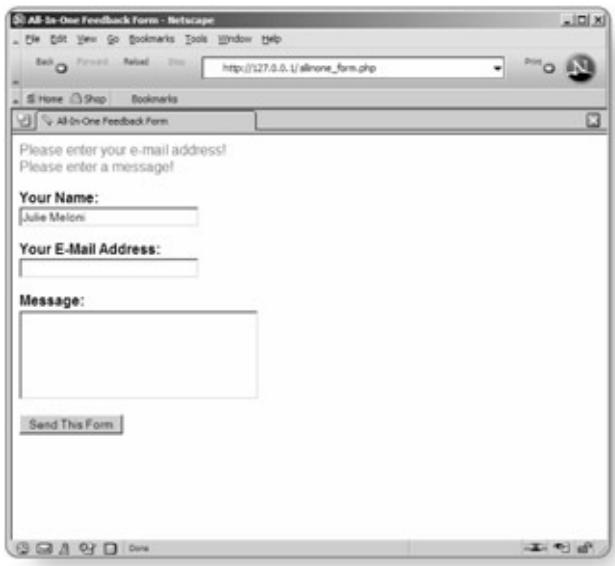
**Note** There's no VALUE attribute for TEXTAREA. Instead, the value goes between the start and end tags.

5. Save the file, and then open your web browser and type [http://127.0.0.1/allinone\\_form.php](http://127.0.0.1/allinone_form.php).
6. Type your name in the Your Name field, and then submit the form.

The form, complete with error messages, will appear. This time, though, your name has been saved!

Repeat the process for the other fields in the form to verify that the values were saved. You've just mastered another aspect of dynamic content, this time in relation to displaying error messages when users don't perform the proper tasks, such as completing all of the fields in a form.

Whereas this chapter was all about forms and sending mail, the [next chapter](#) is all about working with elements of your file system, such as files and directories.



# **Chapter 9: Using Your File System**

## Overview

Using simple PHP scripts, you can do anything with your file system—it's yours, after all! In this chapter, you learn how to:

- Display the contents of a directory
- Create a new file
- Open an existing file and append data to it
- Copy, rename, and delete files

## File Paths and Permissions

The scripts used in these chapters can be executed on both Windows and Linux/Unix operating systems. If you are using Windows, you can use both the forward slash (/) and the backslash (\) in file paths, whereas other operating systems use only the forward slash. The scripts in this chapter use the forward slash method in all instances. This method works even if you don't specify a drive letter. For example:

```
$path = "/Program Files/Apache Group/Apache/htdocs";
```

This path, on Windows, is assumed to be on the current drive (in my case, C:/). If you need to specify a drive letter, go for it:

```
$path = "K:/Program Files/Apache Group/Apache/htdocs/"
```

You'll have to modify file paths to fit your own directory structure, but you shouldn't have to do anything more than that.

**Note** For each directory specified in this chapter, you must have the proper permissions to create, modify, and delete files within it. This is an especially important note for non-Windows users, whose operating system is multi-user by nature. If you are unsure how to assign or modify permissions on your system, please contact your system administrator.

# Displaying Directory Contents

Believe it or not, this script will be the most complicated in this chapter, and it has only 32 lines! The goal is to open a directory, find the names of all the files in the directory, and print the results in a bulleted list.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. Create a variable to hold the full path name of a directory:

```
$dir_name = "/Documents and Settings/Owner/Desktop";
```

**Note** This directory is one that exists on my own machine. Substitute your own directory name so that this works for you!

3. Create a handle and use the `opendir()` function to open the directory specified in step 2.

```
$dir = opendir($dir_name);
```

**Note** The term *handle* is used to refer to the just-opened directory.

4. You'll eventually place the results in a bulleted list inside a string called `$file_list`. Start that bulleted list now:

```
$file_list = "<ul>";
```

5. Start a `while` loop that uses the `readdir()` function to determine when to stop and start the loop. The `readdir()` function returns the name of the next file in the directory, and in this case assigns the value to a variable called `$file_name`:

```
while ($file_name = readdir($dir)) {
```

6. Get rid of those `.` and `..` filenames using an `if` statement:

```
if ((file_name != ".") && (file_name != ".."))
```

7. If \$file\_name is neither of the "dot" filenames, add it to \$file\_list using the concatenation assignment operator:

```
$file_list .= "<li>$file_name";
```

8. Close the if statement and the while loop:

```
}
```

9. Add the closing tag to the bulleted list:

```
$file_list .= "</ul>";
```

10. Close the open directory:

```
closedir($dir);
```

11. Close your PHP block and then add some HTML to begin the display:

```
?>
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Directory Listing</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
```

12. Mingle some HTML and PHP to print the name of the directory you just read:

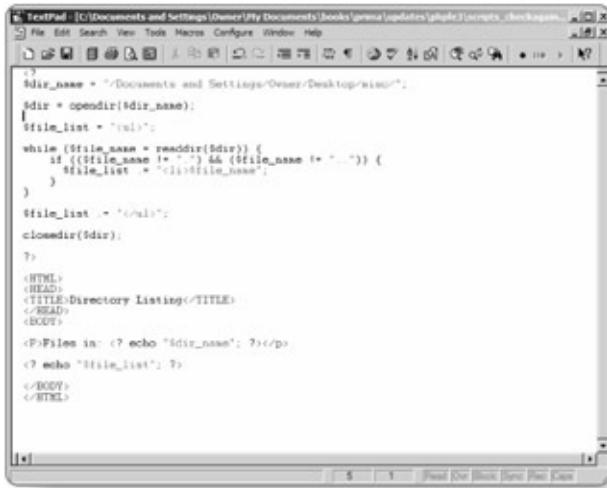
```
<P>Files in: <? echo "$dir_name"; ?></P>
```

13. Print the file list, and then close your HTML tags so the document is valid:

```
<? echo "$file_list"; ?>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

14. Save the file with the name `listfiles.php`.

Your code should look something like the code shown in the following figure.



```
<?php
$dir_name = '/Documents and Settings/Owner/My Documents/Books/general/updates/php/1/scripts/checkpoint';
$dir = opendir($dir_name);
$file_list = "<ul>";
while ($file_name = readdir($dir)) {
    if ((($file_name != ".") && ($file_name != "..")) && ($file_name != "listfiles.php")) {
        $file_list .= "<li>$file_name</li>";
    }
}
$file_list .= "</ul>";
closedir($dir);
?>
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Directory Listing</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<P>Files in: <? echo "$dir_name"; ?></p>
<? echo "$file_list"; ?>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

To test it, place the file in the document root of your web server, and then open your web browser and type

<http://127.0.0.1/listfiles.php>.



Assuming that this worked, try it for other directories on your system. If a directory doesn't exist, the script won't return an error—it just won't have

any results.

In the [next section](#), you work with the `fopen()` and `fclose()` functions to open and close specific files.

## Working with `fopen()` and `fclose()`

Before you jump headfirst into working with files, you need to learn a bit about the `fopen()` function, which is used to open files. This function requires a filename and mode, and it returns a file pointer. The file pointer provides information about the file and is used as a reference.

The filename is the full path to the file you want to create or open, and the mode can be any of the modes listed in [Table 9.1](#).

**Table 9.1: Modes Used with `fopen()`**

Mode	Usage
r	Opens an existing file and reads data from it. The file pointer is placed at the beginning of the file.
r+	Opens an existing file for reading or writing. The file pointer is placed at the beginning of the file.
w	Opens a file for writing. If a file with that name does not exist, the function creates a new file. If the file exists, the function deletes all existing contents and places the file pointer at the beginning of the file.
w+	Opens a file for reading and writing. If a file with that name does not exist, the function creates a new file. If the file exists, the function deletes all existing content and places the file pointer at the beginning of the file.
a	Opens a file for writing. If a file with that name does not exist, the function creates a new file. If the file exists, the function places the file pointer at the end of the file.
a+	Opens a file for reading and writing. If a file with that name does not exist, the function attempts to create a new file. If the file exists, the function places the file pointer at the end of the file.

## Creating a New File

Compared to the first section of this chapter, this next task is a piece of cake. The goal is simply to create a new, empty file in a specified location.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. Create a variable to hold the full path name to a file:

```
$filename = "/Documents and Settings/Owner/Desktop/";
```

**Note** This directory is one that exists on my own machine. Substitute your own directory name so that this works for you!

3. Create a file pointer and use the `fopen()` function to open the file specified in step 3 for reading and writing. The `die()` function will cause the script to end and a message to be displayed if the file doesn't open properly.

```
$newfile = fopen($filename, "w+") or die("Could not open file");
```

**Note** The term *file pointer* is used to refer to the just-opened file.

4. Close the file pointer:

```
fclose ($newfile);
```

5. Create a message to print upon success, and then close your PHP block:

```
$msg = "<P>File created!</P>";  
?>
```

6. Add this HTML:

```
<HTML>  
<HEAD>  
<TITLE>Creating a New File</TITLE>
```

```
</HEAD>
<BODY>
```

7. Print the message:

```
<? echo "$msg"; ?>
```

8. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

9. Save the file with the name `newfile.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

10. Open your web browser and type

<http://127.0.0.1/newfile.php>.

If the file creation was successful, you should see the success message shown in the following figure.



However, if your file creation failed, you will see a nasty parse error. You can force an error by using an invalid value for `$filename`, such as this:

```
$filename =
```

```
"/bozo/mydata.txt";
```

When you run your script, you'll see something like the following figure.



Although the `die()` function will do its job by printing the specified error message, PHP will issue its own warnings based on the failure of the function to do its job. You can suppress errors and warnings from PHP by using the @ sign in front of functions.

In your script, change this line

```
$newfile = fopen($filename,  
"w+") or die("Couldn't create  
file.");
```

to this:

```
$newfile = @fopen($filename,  
"w+") or die("Couldn't create  
file.");
```



Save the file and access the script via your web browser. You'll now see just the message from the `die()` function, and no other warnings.

## Checking if a File Already Exists

To avoid any possible housekeeping errors when running around your file system, you can use the `file_exists()` function to check if a file already exists before you create it. This next script will do just that, and will print a message one way or the other.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. Create a variable to hold the full path name to a file (use your own file path):

```
$filename = "/Documents and Settings/Owner/Desktop/test.txt";
```

**Note** Yes, this is the same file you probably created in the [previous section](#). That's fine, because it can trip the error checking!

3. Start an `if...else` statement that checks for a true/false result to the `file_exists()` function:

```
if (file_exists($filename)) {
```

4. Create a variable to hold a message regarding the file's existence:  

```
$msg = "<P>File already exists.</P>";
```
5. Continue the `else` statement to do something if the file doesn't exist:  

```
} else {
```
6. Create a file pointer and use the `fopen()` function to open the file specified in step 2 for reading and writing. The `die()` function will cause the script to end and a message to be displayed if the file doesn't open properly.  

```
$newfile = @fopen($filename, "w+") or die("Coul...
```
7. Create a variable to hold a success message:  

```
$msg = "<P>File created!</P>";
```

8. Close the file pointer, the `if...else` statement, and your PHP block:  

```
fclose($newfile);  
}  
?>
```

9. Add this HTML:  

```
<HTML>  
<HEAD>  
<TITLE>Creating a New File</TITLE>  
</HEAD>  
<BODY>
```

10. Print the message:  

```
<? echo "$msg"; ?>
```

11. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>  
</HTML>
```

12. Save the file with the name `newfile-checkfirst.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.
13. Open your web browser and type  
<http://127.0.0.1/newfile-checkfirst.php>.

Assuming that you used the filename of a previously created file, you should see the failure message shown in the next figure.



If you change the value of `$filename` to a file that doesn't exist and then access the script again, you'll see the success message. Because just creating a file is boring, in the [next section](#) you learn how to write data to the file.

## Appending Data to a File

The goal of the next script is to append data to a file. If the file exists, the script will just write data into it. If the file doesn't exist, it will be created before data is written to it.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. Create a variable to hold the full path name to a file (use your own file path):

```
$filename = "/Documents and Settings/Owner/Desktop/testfile.txt";
```

3. Create a variable called \$newstring to hold the string you want to write to the file. Populate that string with this very exciting message:

```
$newstring = "Check it out!\nI've created a new file and stuck all this text into it!";
```

**NOTE**

The use of the newline character causes a line break to occur at that point in the text.

4. Create a file pointer and use the fopen() function to open the file specified in step 2 for reading and writing. The die() function will cause the script to end and a message to be displayed if the file doesn't open properly.

```
$myfile = @fopen($filename, "w+") or die("Couldn't open file");
```

5. Use the fwrite() function to place the text (\$newstring) inside the file (\$myfile). The die() function will cause the script to end and a message to be displayed if the fwrite() function fails.

```
@fwrite($myfile, $newstring) or die("Couldn't write to file");
```

6. Create a variable to hold a success message:

```
$msg = "<p>File has data in it now...</p>";
```

7. Close the file pointer and the PHP block:

```
fclose($myfile);  
?>
```

8. Add this HTML:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Adding Data to a File</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
```

9. Print the message:

```
<? echo "$msg"; ?>
```

10. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

11. Save the file with the name `writedata.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

12. Open your web browser and type

**<http://127.0.0.1/writedata.php>**.



In the [next section](#), you read the data from the text file created by this script.

## Reading Data From a File

You'll now create a script to read the data from the file you created in the [previous section](#). You could just open that file in a text editor, but where's the fun in that? PHP has a handy function called `fread()` that does the job for you.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. Create a variable to hold the full path name to the file you created in the [previous section](#) (use your own path):

```
$filename = "/Documents and Settings/Owner/Desktop/My Documents/testfile.txt";
```

3. Create a file pointer and use the `fopen()` function to open the file specified in step 2 for reading only. The `die()` function will cause the script to end and a message to be displayed if the file doesn't open properly.

```
$whattoread = @fopen($filename, "r") or die("Could not open file");
```

4. Create a variable called `$file_contents`, and use the `fread()` function to read all the lines from the open file pointer (`$whattoread`) for as long as there are lines in the file:

```
$file_contents = fread($whattoread, filesize($filename));
```

### NOTE

Using the `filesize()` function on an existing file lets PHP do the work for you. The second argument of the `fread()` function is for the length of the file. If you don't know the length, but you know you want all of it, you can use `filesize($filename)` to get that length.

5. Create a variable to print a message, including the contents of the file:

```
$msg = "The file contains:<br>$file_contents";
```

6. Close the file pointer and your PHP block:

```
fclose ($whattoread);  
?>
```

7. Add this HTML:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Reading Data From a File</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
```

8. Print the message:

```
<? echo "$msg"; ?>
```

9. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

10. Save the file with the name `readdata.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

11. Open your web browser and type

<http://127.0.0.1/readdata.php>.



That's definitely the string written to the file, but what happened to that line break? The newline character means nothing to a web browser,

which renders only HTML. Luckily, the PHP development team had great forethought and created the `nl2br()` function (newline-to-break; get it?). Make some slight adjustments to the `readdata.php` script:

1. Add this line after the line containing the `fread()` function:

```
$new_file_contents =  
nl2br($file_contents);
```

2. Modify the `$msg` string so that it looks like this:

```
$msg = "The file contains:<br>$new_file_content";
```

3. Save the file.

Now open this file in your web browser, and notice the line break, as shown here.



In the [next section](#), you read the same message, but instead of printing it on the screen, you send it via e-mail.

## Sending File Contents via E-Mail

If you're saving the results of HTML forms to a plain text file, which you want to read only at specific times, you can write a little script that mails

the contents of the file to you on demand.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. Create a variable to hold the full path name to the file containing the data (use your own path):

```
$filename = "/Documents and Settings/Owner/Desktop/";
```

3. Create a file pointer and use the `fopen()` function to open the file specified in step 2 for reading only. The `die()` function will cause the script to end and a message to be displayed if the file doesn't open properly.

```
$whattoread = @fopen($filename, "r") or die("Could not open file");
```

4. Create a variable called `$file_contents`, and use the `fread()` function to read all the lines from the open file pointer (`$whattoread`) for as long as there are lines in the file:

```
$file_contents = fread($whattoread, filesize($filename));
```

5. Create a variable to hold your e-mail address:

```
$to = "you@yourdomain.com";
```

6. Create a variable for the subject of the e-mail:

```
$subject = "File Contents";
```

7. Create a variable for additional mail headers:

```
$mailheaders = "From: My Web Site <genericaddress@yourdomain.com>";
```

8. Populate the `mail()` function using the `$file_contents` string as the third argument (the message):

```
mail($to, $subject, $file_contents, $mailheaders);
```

9. Create a variable to print a message to the screen:

```
$msg = "<P>Check your mail!</P>";
```

10. Close the file pointer and your PHP block:

```
fclose ($whattoread);  
?>
```

11. Add this HTML:

```
<HTML>  
<HEAD>  
<TITLE>Mailing Data From a File</TITLE>  
</HEAD>  
<BODY>
```

12. Print the message:

```
<? echo "$msg"; ?>
```

13. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>  
</HTML>
```

14. Save the file with the name `mailcontents.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

15. Open your web browser and type

<http://127.0.0.1/mailcontents.php>.

Like the message says, go check your mail! You should have an e-mail waiting for you, with the contents of the file printed in it.



Unlike with the previous script, you didn't need to use the `nl2br()` function, because you weren't displaying text in a web browser window. The plain-text e-mail will keep the original line break.

# File System Housekeeping

The next series of scripts will help you perform very basic file system tasks, such as copying, renaming, and deleting files. Remember that you can perform file system functions only if the proper permissions are in place for the PHP user.

## Copying Files

The `copy()` function is very simple: it needs to know the original filename and a new filename, and that's all there is to it.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. Create a variable to hold the full path name to the original file (use your own path):

```
$orig_filename = "/Documents and Settings/Owner"
```

3. Create a variable to hold the full path name to the new file (use your own path):

```
$new_filename = "/Documents and Settings/Owner/".
```

4. Create a variable to hold the true/false result of the function. Suppress warnings by using the `@` in front of the function, and use `die()` to print a message if the function fails:

```
$success = @copy($orig_filename, $new_filename)
```

5. Start an `if...else` statement to print the proper message based on the outcome of the function:

```
if ($success) {
```

6. The message string, if successful, should print a confirmation of the copy:

```
$msg = "Copied $orig_filename to $new_filename"
```

7. Continue the statement for a failure, and then close the PHP

block:

```
 } else {
    $msg = "Could not copy file.";
}
?>
```

**Note** Using the `else` statement in this case is actually unnecessary, but it's good practice for providing a default result. If the `copy()` function fails, the `die()` function will exit the script and print the error before even getting to the `if...else` part of the script.

8. Add this HTML:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Copy a File</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
```

9. Print the message:

```
<? echo "$msg"; ?>
```

10. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

11. Save the file with the name `copyfile.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

12. Open your web browser and type

<http://127.0.0.1/copyfile.php>.



See if your error handling works by changing the value of \$new\_filename to something that doesn't exist:

```
$new_filename =  
"/bozo/textfile.bak";
```

Access the script via your web browser, and you should see the appropriate message.

Next, let's move on to renaming files. The script is remarkably similar!

## Renaming Files

Like the `copy()` function, the `rename()` function just needs to know the original filename and a new filename. In this case, you're just renaming the original, not copying it.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. Create a variable to hold the full path name to the original file (use your own path):

```
$orig_filename = "/Documents and Settings/Owner
```

3. Create a variable to hold the full path name to the new file (use

your own path):

```
$new_filename = "/Documents and Settings/Owner/
```

4. Create a variable to hold the true/false result of the function. Suppress warnings by using the @ in front of the function, and use die() to print a message if the function fails:

```
$success = @rename($orig_filename, $new_filename);
or die("Couldn't rename file.");
```

5. Start an if...else statement to print the proper message based on the outcome of the function:

```
if ($success) {
```

6. The message string, if successful, should print a confirmation of the renaming function:

```
$msg = "Renamed $orig_filename to $new_filename";
```

7. Continue the statement for a failure, and then close your PHP block:

```
} else {
    $msg = "Could not rename file.";
}
?>
```

**Note** As in the previous script, the else statement in this case is unnecessary, but it's good practice for providing a default result.

8. Add this HTML:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Rename a File</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
```

9. Print the message:

```
<? echo "$msg"; ?>
```

10. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>  
</HTML>
```

11. Save the file with the name `renamefile.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

12. Open your web browser and type

<http://127.0.0.1/renamefile.php>.



See if your error handling works by changing the value of `$new_filename` to something that doesn't exist:

```
$new_filename =  
"/bozo/textfile.bak";
```

There's one more housekeeping function in the [next section](#): deleting files.

## Deleting Files

Be very careful when using the `unlink()` function, because once you've deleted a file, it's gone for good.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. Create a variable to hold the full path name to the file you want to delete (use your own path):

```
$filename = "/Documents and Settings/Owner/Desktop/My Pictures/My Photo.jpg";
```

3. Create a variable to hold the true/false result of the function. Suppress warnings by using the `@` in front of the function, and use `die()` to print a message if the function fails:

```
$success = @unlink($filename) or die("Couldn't delete $filename");
```

4. Start an `if...else` statement to print the proper message based on the outcome of the function:

```
if ($success) {
```

5. The message string, if successful, should print a confirmation of the deletion:

```
$msg = "Deleted $filename";
```

6. Continue the statement for a failure, and then close your PHP block:

```
} else {  
    $msg = "Could not delete file.";  
}  
?>
```

**Note** As in the previous scripts, using the `else` statement in this case is unnecessary, but it's good practice for providing a default result.

7. Add this HTML:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Delete a File</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
```

8. Print the message:

```
<? echo "$msg"; ?>
```

9. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

10. Save the file with the name `deletefile.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

11. Open your web browser and type

**<http://127.0.0.1/deletefile.php>**.



See if your error handling works by changing the value of `$filename` to something that doesn't exist:

```
$filename = "/bozo/textfile.old";
```

Access the script via your Web browser, and you should see this:



In the [next chapter](#), you create a two-step process (front-end form and back-end script) to initiate file uploads from a web browser to your file system.

## **Chapter 10: Uploading Files to Your Website**

## Overview

If you need a quick interface for uploading files to your website from a remote location, you can create a two-step form and script interface with PHP. In this chapter, you learn how to:

- Create an HTML form for file uploads
- Create a PHP script to handle file uploads

## Checking Your `php.ini` File

Before you start uploading files, check a few values in your `php.ini` file. Look for this section of text:

```
; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ;  
; File Uploads ;  
; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ;  
; Whether to allow HTTP file uploads.  
File_uploads = On  
  
; Temporary directory for HTTP uploaded files (will use  
; specified).  
;upload_tmp_dir =  
  
; Maximum allowed size for uploaded files.  
Upload_max_filesize = 2M
```

To ensure the file upload process will work smoothly, make the following modifications:

1. Uncomment the `upload_tmp_dir` line by deleting the initial semicolon.
2. Enter a directory name after the `=` for `upload_tmp_dir`.
3. If you want to allow larger uploads, change the number of bytes for `upload_max_filesize`.

For example, on a Windows system, this section of the `php.ini` file might look like this:

```
; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ;  
; File Uploads ;  
; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ;  
; Whether to allow HTTP file uploads.  
file_uploads = On  
  
;Temporary directory for HTTP uploaded files (will use
```

```
;specified).  
upload_tmp_dir = /temp  
; Maximum allowed size for uploaded files.  
upload_max_filesize = 2M
```

If you are not using Windows, you don't have to modify the value for `upload_tmp_dir`, as long as you want files to be placed in `/tmp` (the default).

# Understanding the Process

The process of uploading a file to a web server through an HTML form interface puzzles a lot of people. Take a moment to understand the process you'll create in the following sections.

To start and finish this process, you need the following:

- An HTML form
- A file to upload
- A place to put the file
- A script to put it there

The process itself goes something like this:

1. The user accesses the HTML form and sees a text field and the Browse button in his or her web browser.
2. The user browses his or her hard drive for the file to upload and then selects a file.
3. The full file path and filename appear in the text field.
4. The user clicks on the submit button.
5. The selected file goes out, lands at the web server, and sits around in a temporary directory.
6. The PHP script used in the form action checks that a file was sent, and then executes a `copy` command on the temporary file to move it to a real directory on the web server.
7. The PHP script confirms the action for the user.

**Note** The PHP user (the user under which PHP runs, such as "nobody" or "www" or "joe") must have write permissions in the temporary directory as well as the target directory for the file. If you have difficulty with permissions, contact your system

administrator.

Start by simply creating the HTML form interface in the [next section](#).

## Creating the Form

Start out by creating a one-field form. You can create a form to upload as many files as you like, after you get this sequence to work with one file.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and type the following HTML:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Upload a File</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<H1>Upload a File</H1>
```

2. Begin your form. Assume that the method is POST and the action is a script called do\_upload.php. Because you'll be sending more than just text, use the ENCTYPE attribute.

```
<FORM METHOD="POST" ACTION="do_upload.php" ENCTYPE="multipart/form-data">
```

3. Create an input field for the file with a text label. Assume that you'll be uploading an image file, and name the input field img1:

```
<p><strong>File to Upload:</strong><br>
<INPUT TYPE="file" NAME="img1" SIZE="30"></P>
```

**Note** The TYPE="file" attribute in the form field will display an input field with a Browse button. The Browse button launches a file manager through which you select the file to upload.

4. Add a submit button, and then close your form and add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
<P><INPUT TYPE="submit" NAME="submit" VALUE="Upload">
</FORM>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

5. Save the file with the name `upload_form.html`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.
6. Open your web browser and type  
[http://127.0.0.1/upload\\_form.html](http://127.0.0.1/upload_form.html).



In the [next section](#), you create the script that handles the file upload.

## Creating the Upload Script

Take a moment to commit the following list to memory—it contains the variables that are automatically placed in the `$_FILES` superglobal after a successful file upload. The base of `img1` comes from the name of the input field in the original form.

- `$_FILES[$img1][tmp_name]`. The value refers to the temporary file on the web server.
- `$_FILES[img1][name]`. The value is the actual name of the file that was uploaded. For example, if the name of the file was `me.jpg`, the value of `$_FILES[img1][name]` is `me.jpg`.
- `$_FILES[img1][size]`. The size of the uploaded file in bytes.
- `$_FILES[img1][type]`. The MIME type of the uploaded file, such as `image/jpg`.

**Note** A MIME type indicates the type of the content being transmitted. For instance, the MIME type of a JPEG file is `image/jpg`, and the MIME type of a Microsoft Word document is `application/msword`.

The goal of this script is to take the uploaded file, copy it to the document root of the web server, and return a confirmation to the user containing values for all the variables in the preceding list.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block:  
`<?`
2. Create an `if...else` statement that checks for a value in `$_FILES[img1]`.  
`if ($_FILES[img1] != "") {`
3. If `$_FILES[img1]` is not empty, execute the `copy` function. Use `@` before the function name to suppress warnings, and use the `die()` function to cause the script to end and a message to be displayed if the `copy()` function fails.

```
@copy($_FILES['img1']['tmp_name'],  
"/usr/local/apache2/htdocs/".$_FILES['img1']['name']  
or die("Couldn't copy the file.");
```

**Note** If the document root of your web server is not /usr/local/apache2/htdocs/, as shown in step 3, change the path to match your own system. For example, a Windows user might use /Program Files/Apache Group/Apache/htdocs/.

4. Continue the else statement to handle the lack of a file for upload:

```
} else {  
    die("No input file specified");
```

5. Close the if...else statement, and then close your PHP block:

```
}  
?>
```

6. Add this HTML:

```
<HTML>  
<HEAD>  
<TITLE>Successful File Upload</TITLE>  
</HEAD>  
<BODY>  
<H1>Success!</H1>
```

7. Mingle HTML and PHP, printing a line that displays values for the various elements of the uploaded file (name, size, and type):

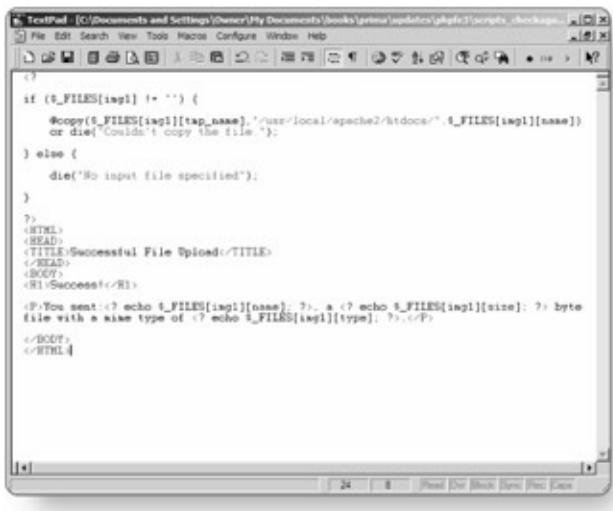
```
<P>You sent: <? echo $_FILES['img1']['name']; ?>,  
a <? echo $_FILES['img1']['size']; ?> byte file with  
a mime type of <? echo $_FILES['img1']['type']; ?>.
```

8. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>  
</HTML>
```

## 9. Save the file with the name do\_upload.php.

The code should look something like the following figure.



A screenshot of the TextPad text editor. The window title is "TextPad [C:\Documents and Settings\Owner\My Documents\books\phme\updates\ghpfc\scripts\checkimg.php]". The code in the editor is:

```
</?>  
if ($_FILES[img1] != '') {  
    if(copy($_FILES[img1]['tmp_name'],'/usr/local/apache2/htdocs/' . $_FILES[img1]['name']))  
        or die("Couldn't copy the file.");  
    } else {  
        die("No input file specified");  
    }  
?>  
<HTML>  
<HEAD>  
<TITLE>Successful File Upload</TITLE>  
</HEAD>  
<BODY>  
<H1>Success!</H1>  
<P>You sent:<? echo $_FILES[img1][name]; ?>, a <? echo $_FILES[img1][size]; ?> byte  
file with a type of <? echo $_FILES[img1][type]; ?>.</P>  
</BODY>  
</HTML>
```

In the [next section](#), you finally get to upload a file!

# Uploading a File using Your Form and Script

This is the moment of truth, where you hold your breath and test the script.

1. Open your web browser and type  
[http://127.0.0.1/upload\\_form.html](http://127.0.0.1/upload_form.html).
2. Use the Browse button to locate a file you want to upload.

**Note** This example uses a file on my own machine, so the figures won't look quite the same as your results.

The full path to the file should appear in the form field.



3. Click on the Upload File button.

The results screen should appear, providing information about the file you just uploaded.

**Note** Allow your file upload script to be used only by yourself or other trusted sources, unless you limit the types of files you want to upload by checking the file type before copying to the system.



There's nothing to it! You're now a file system wizard. In the [next chapter](#), you'll become a database wizard as well.

## **Part IV: Getting to Know Your MySQL Database**

## **Chapter List**

[Chapter 11:](#) Establishing a Connection and Poking Around

[Chapter 12:](#) Creating a Database Table

[Chapter 13:](#) Inserting Data into the Table

[Chapter 14:](#) Selecting and Displaying Data

## **Chapter 11: Establishing a Connection and Poking Around**

## Overview

During the process of installing and testing MySQL in [Chapter 1](#), you should have created a sample database as well as a sample table, and even inserted and selected some data. The next several chapters focus on making the same types of connections and queries, and using PHP scripts for the front end. In this chapter, you learn how to:

- Connect to MySQL
- List all databases on localhost
- List all tables in a database
- Create a database
- Drop (delete) a database

# Working with User Privileges in MySQL

When you installed the MySQL database in [Chapter 1](#), you were working as the anonymous or root user. Before you begin working regularly with databases, you should create a real user with a real password. To do this, you need to understand a bit about the MySQL privilege system.

**Note** If you are accessing MySQL through an Internet service provider, you probably have only one user and one database available to you. By default, that one user has access to all tables in the database and is allowed to perform all commands. If this is the case, you can skip the information in this section and proceed to the script-creation sections. In all instances where a username and password are used, use the one given to you by your ISP.

## Creating a New User

If you have proper permissions for adding a user, the simplest method for performing this task is the `GRANT` command. The basic syntax of the `GRANT` command follows, where `[privilege list]` is a placeholder for the privileges you want to give to the new user.

```
GRANT [privilege list] ON databasename.tablename TO  
username@host IDENTIFIED BY "password";
```

You can grant many types of privileges, and for more information, please visit the MySQL Manual topic at <http://www.mysql.com/doc/G/R/GRANT.html>. For now, you will just grant all privileges to your new user, on all tables in the database.

**Note** The following commands are exactly the same for MySQL on Windows and Linux/Unix platforms.

1. Start the MySQL monitor from the command line, using the path to the `mysql` executable file that is relevant to your file system.
2. Select the database called `mysql` by typing the following at the `mysql>` prompt: `use mysql;`

3. Type the following SQL statement, substituting your own username and password if you want. The wildcard (\*) grants permissions on all databases and tables:

```
GRANT ALL ON *.* TO spike@localhost IDENTIFIED :
```

4. Exit the MySQL monitor by typing the following at the mysql> prompt:

```
exit
```

5. Issue the command to reload the grant tables using the mysqladmin program:

```
mysqladmin reload
```

The new user (`spike`) will now have access to all databases and tables when using the password `9sj7En4`. This user will be the sample user in all database connectivity scripts from this point forward. Please substitute your own username and password where appropriate.

# Connecting to MySQL

The goal of this script is simply to connect to MySQL, running on your machine (`localhost`).

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. Create a variable to hold the result of the `mysql_connect()` function:

```
$connection = mysql_connect("localhost", "spike
```

**Note** The `mysql_connect()` function requires a host name, username, and password (in that order).

3. Add a `die()` function to the `mysql_connect()` line to cause the script to end and a message to be displayed if the connection fails. Within the `die()` function, use the `mysql_error()` function. The message that is printed upon error is the exact error as sent by MySQL. The new line should read as follows:

```
$connection = mysql_connect("localhost", "spike  
or die(mysql_error());
```

4. Test the value of `$connection`. If it's true, the connection to MySQL was made, and a variable is created to hold a message:

```
if ($connection) {  
    $msg = "success!";  
}
```

**Note** If a connection cannot be made, the script will end with the `die()` function.

5. Close your PHP block, and then add HTML:

```
?>
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>MySQL Connection</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
```

6. Print the message string:

```
<? echo "$msg"; ?>
```

7. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

8. Save the file with the name `db_connect.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

9. Open your web browser and type

**[http://127.0.0.1/db\\_connect.php](http://127.0.0.1/db_connect.php)**



If you entered the correct username and password, you should have a successful result.

## Breaking Your Connection Script

Anytime you work with databases, you will have errors. It's inevitable. That's why I want to show you some common errors and how to handle them fairly gracefully.

You'll make a modification to the `db_connect.php` script that causes it to fail on connection, simply by changing the username.

1. Change the username to `buffy` (unless `buffy` is a real user!) so that the connection line reads as follows:

```
$connection = mysql_connect("localhost", "buffy"
                             or die(mysql_error()));
```

2. Save the file, and then open your web browser to [http://127.0.0.1/db\\_connect.php](http://127.0.0.1/db_connect.php).



That is some kind of nasty response! At least it tells you exactly what is wrong, and several times over: user `buffy` couldn't connect to MySQL. You can suppress one of the ugly warnings and just go with the message from the `die()` function by placing a `@` before the `mysql_connect()` function name. Try it.

1. Add a `@` before the `mysql_connect()` function, keeping the

**bad username:**

```
$connection =  
@mysql_connect("localhost",  
"buffy", "9sj7En4")  
or die(mysql_error());
```

2. Save the file, and then open your web browser to  
[http://127.0.0.1/db\\_connect.php](http://127.0.0.1/db_connect.php).



With this change, the warning is suppressed, and only the message from the `die()` function is displayed. This is a meaningful error message output from the `mysql_error()` function.

If you can keep nasty errors and warnings to a minimum, it will make the overall user experience much more pleasant if your database decides to render itself unavailable during peak web-surfing hours.

## Listing Databases on a Server

Now that you've successfully used PHP to make a connection to MySQL, it's time to familiarize yourself with some of the built-in MySQL-related functions. In this section, you use the following functions:

- `mysql_list_dbs()` — Used to list the databases on a MySQL server.
- `mysql_num_rows()` — Returns the number of rows in a result set.
- `mysql_tablename()` — Despite its name, can extract the name of a table or a database from a result.

The goal of this script is to list all the databases on the local MySQL server.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. Create a variable to hold the result of the `mysql_connect()` function. Include the `@` to suppress warnings, as well as the `die()` function to cause the script to end and a message to be displayed if the connection fails:

```
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike"  
    or die(mysql_error()));
```

3. Create a variable to hold the result of the `mysql_list_dbs()` function. Include the `@` to suppress warnings, as well as the `die()` function to cause the script to end and a message to be displayed if the script can't get the list:

```
$dbs = @mysql_list_dbs($connection) or die(mysql_error());
```

**Note** The only argument necessary for the `mysql_list_dbs()` function is the link identifier for

the current connection.

4. You'll be looping through a result and dynamically populating a bulleted list. Start that bulleted list outside the loop:

```
$db_list = "<ul>";
```

5. Start a counter. You'll need it for your loop:

```
$i = 0;
```

6. Begin a `while` loop. This loop will continue for as long as the value of `$i` is less than the number of rows in the `$dbs` result value:

```
while ($i < mysql_num_rows($dbs)) {
```

7. Once you're within the `while` loop, get the name of the database reflected in the current row of the result:

```
$db_names[$i] = mysql_tablename($dbs, $i);
```

**Note** The variable `$i` is replaced by its value, so during the first loop, this line would be something like

```
$db_names[0] = mysql_tablename($dbs, 0);
```

Counting starts at 0, not 1, so this would reflect the first row in the result. As the counter is incremented, so is the row number.

8. Add the current database name to the bullet list:

```
$db_list .= "<li>$db_names[$i]</li>";
```

9. Increment your count before you close the `while` loop:

```
$i++;
```

10. Close the `while` loop, the bulleted list, and your PHP block:

```
}
```

```
$db_list .= "</ul>";  
?>
```

11. Add this HTML:

```
<HTML>  
<HEAD>  
<TITLE>MySQL Databases</TITLE>  
</HEAD>  
<BODY>  
<P><strong>Databases on localhost</strong>:</P>
```

12. Print the message string:

```
<? echo "$db_list"; ?>
```

13. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>  
</HTML>
```

14. Save the file with the name db\_listdb.php.

All together, your code should look like this:

```
<?  
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike", "9s  
or die(mysql_error());  
  
$dbs = @mysql_list_dbs($connection) or die(mysql_error());  
$db_list = "<ul>";  
$i = 0;  
  
while ($i < mysql_num_rows($dbs)) {  
    $db_names[$i] = mysql_tablename($dbs, $i);  
    $db_list .= "<li>$db_names[$i]</li>";  
    $i++;  
}  
$db_list .= "</ul>";  
?>
```

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>MySQL Databases</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<P><strong>Databases on localhost</strong>:</P>
<? echo "$db_list"; ?>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

Place this file in the document root of your web server, and then open your Web browser and type [http://127.0.0.1/db\\_listdb.php](http://127.0.0.1/db_listdb.php).

Your list might vary, depending on how much you played around with things in the first chapter, but you should at least see the MySQL system database (`mysql`) and the database created in [Chapter 1](#) (`testDB`). Next, you add another loop to this script to print the tables within each database.



## Listing Tables in a Database

A few additions to the `db_listdb.php` script are all you need to list the tables in the databases as well. The only new function you'll see is `mysql_list_tables()`, which is used to list tables within a MySQL database.

The goal of this script is to list all of the databases, including the tables within those databases, on the local MySQL server.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. Add the connection information just as you have been doing:

```
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike", "spike");
or die(mysql_error());
```

3. Create a variable to hold the result of the `mysql_list_dbs()` function. Include the `@` to suppress warnings, as well as the `die()` function to cause the script to end and a message to be displayed if the script can't get the list:

```
$dbs = @mysql_list_dbs($connection) or die(mysql_error());
```

4. You'll be looping through a result and dynamically populating a bulleted list. Start that bulleted list outside the loop:

```
$db_list = "<ul>";
```

5. Start a counter. You'll need it for your loop:

```
$db_num = 0;
```

**Note** Use `$db_num` instead of `$i` as the counter, because at one point in this script, you'll have two counters going at the same time.

6. Begin a `while` loop. This loop will continue for as long as the

**value of \$db\_num is less than the number of rows in the \$dbs result value:**

```
while ($db_num < mysql_num_rows($dbs)) {
```

7. Once you're within the `while` loop, get the name of the database reflected in the current row of the result:

```
$db_names[$db_num] = mysql_tablename($dbs, $db_
```

8. Add the current database name to the bulleted list:

```
$db_list .= "<li>$db_names[$db_num]";
```

9. Create a variable to hold the result of the `mysql_list_tables()` function. Include the `@` to suppress warnings, as well as the `die()` function to cause the script to end and a message to be displayed if the script can't get the list:

```
$tables = @mysql_list_tables($db_names[$db_num])
```

**Note** The only argument necessary for the `mysql_list_tables()` function is the name of the current database.

10. You'll be looping through a result and dynamically populating a bulleted list. Start that bulleted list outside the loop:

```
$table_list = "<ul>";
```

11. Start a counter. You'll need it for your second loop:

```
$table_num = 0;
```

12. Begin a `while` loop. This loop will continue for as long as the value of `$table_num` is less than the number of rows in the `$tables` result value.

```
while ($table_num < mysql_num_rows($tables)) {
```

13. Once you're within the `while` loop, get the name of the table reflected in the current row of the result:

```
$table_names[$table_num] = mysql_tablename($tab
```

14. Add the current table name to the bulleted list:

```
$table_list .= "<li>$table_names[$table_num]" ;
```

15. Increment your count before you close the `while` loop:

```
$table_num++;
```

16. Close the inner `while` loop and the bulleted list of tables:

```
}
```

```
$table_list .= "</ul>" ;
```

17. Add the value of `$table_list` to `$db_list`, and then increment your count before you close the outer `while` loop:

```
$db_list .= "$table_list" ;
```

```
$db_num++ ;
```

```
}
```

18. Close the bulleted list of databases, and then your PHP block:

```
$db_list .= "</ul>" ;
```

```
?>
```

19. Add this HTML:

```
<HTML>
```

```
<HEAD>
```

```
<TITLE>MySQL Tables</TITLE>
```

```
</HEAD>
```

```
<BODY>
```

```
<P><strong>Databases and tables on localhost</s
```

20. Print the message string:

```
<? echo "$db_list" ; ?>
```

21. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

22. Save the file with the name db\_listtables.php.

Your code should look something like this:

```
<?
//connection code
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike", "9s
    or die(mysql_error()));

//get database list
$dbs = @mysql_list_dbs($connection) or die(mysql_error

//start first bullet list
$db_list = "<ul>";
$db_num = 0;

//loop through results of function
while ($db_num < mysql_num_rows($dbs)) {
    //get database names and make each a bullet point
$db_names[$db_num] = mysql_tablename($dbs, $db_num);
    $db_list .= "<li>$db_names[$db_num]</li>";

    //get table names and start another bullet list
$tables = @mysql_list_tables($db_names[$db_num]);
    $table_list = "<ul>";
    $table_num = 0;

    //loop through results of function
    while ($table_num < mysql_num_rows($tables)) {
        //get table names and make each a bullet point
        $table_names[$table_num] = mysql_tablename($t
        $table_list .= "<li>$table_names[$table_num]
        $table_num++;
    }
}
```

```

//close inner bullet list and increment number to
$table_list .= "</ul>";
$db_list .= "$table_list";
$db_num++;

}
//close outer bullet list
$db_list .= "</ul>";
?>
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>MySQL Tables</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<P><strong>Databases and tables on localhost</strong>:<br/>
<? echo "$db_list"; ?>
</BODY>
</HTML>

```

It's time to see if this script lists the databases on your server, including their table. Place this file in the document root of your web server, and open your web browser to [http://127.0.0.1/db\\_listtables.php](http://127.0.0.1/db_listtables.php).



Because all privileges on all tables were granted to the test user, you

should see a list of all tables and databases, including those reserved by the system. Your mileage might vary, depending on your server setup and your databases and tables.

In the [next section](#), you attempt to create new databases on your server.

## Creating a New Database

The complex elements of the previous scripts are nowhere to be found in this next script. The goal of this script is to create a new database on the MySQL server.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. Create a variable to hold the query to issue, which will create the new database:

```
$sql = "CREATE database testDB2";
```

3. Add the connection information just as you have been doing:

```
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike"  
    or die(mysql_error());
```

4. Issue the query, using the `mysql_query()` function. Include the `@` to suppress warnings, as well as the `die()` function to cause the script to end and a message to be displayed if the query fails:

```
$result = @mysqlquery($sql, $connection) or die
```

5. Test the value of `$result`. If it's true, the query was successful, and a variable is created to hold a message:

```
if ($result) {  
    $msg = "<P>Database has been created!</P>"  
}
```

6. Close your PHP block, and then add HTML:

```
?>  
<HTML>  
<HEAD>  
<TITLE>Create a MySQL Database</TITLE>  
</HEAD>  
<BODY>
```

7. Print the message string:

```
<? echo "$msg"; ?>
```

8. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>  
</HTML>
```

9. Save the file with the name `db_createdb.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

10. Open your web browser and type

[http://127.0.0.1/db\\_createdb.php](http://127.0.0.1/db_createdb.php).

If the database creation was successful, you'll see the message shown in the following figure.



Verify that the new database is present by opening your web browser to [http://127.0.0.1/db\\_listdb.php](http://127.0.0.1/db_listdb.php).

You should see your new database in the list.



In the [next section](#), you drop (delete) the database you just created.

## Deleting a Database

The goal of this script is to delete a database on the MySQL server. To do so, you simply have to modify the query used in the previous script.

1. Open db\_createdb.php in your text editor.

2. Change the value of the \$sql variable to

```
$sql = "DROP DATABASE testDB2";
```

3. Change the error message and the HTML title to reflect the fact that you want to delete a database and not create one.

Your code should look something like this:

```
<?
$sql = "DROP DATABASE testDB2";

$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike", "9sj7";
or die(mysql_error());
$result = @mysql_query($sql, $connection) or die(mysql_
if ($result) {
    $msg = "<P>Database has been deleted!</P>";
}
?>
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Delete a MySQL Database</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<? echo "$msg"; ?>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

4. Save the file with the new name db\_dropdb.php, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

5. Open your web browser and type

[http://127.0.0.1/db\\_dropdb.php](http://127.0.0.1/db_dropdb.php).

If the database deletion was successful, you'll see the message shown in the following figure.



In the [next chapter](#), you create a database table for keeps, and you eventually populate that table with some data.

## **Chapter 12: Creating a Database Table**

## Overview

You have this great database server, and only a table called `test_table` sitting in a database called `testDB`. Where's the fun in that? In this chapter, you learn how to:

- Plan for a database table
- Recognize the pitfalls of certain data types
- Recognize the importance of unique fields
- Follow a two-step process for table creation
- Create a table to hold your personal music catalog

# Planning for Your Tables

Creating a table is easy—it's the planning that takes some brainpower. To create a simple table, you only need to give it a name. But that would make for a boring table, because it wouldn't contain any columns (fields) and couldn't hold any data. So besides the name, you should know the number of fields and the types of fields you want to have in your table.

## Basic MySQL Data Types

All fields in a table are given a particular data type definition. The *data type* defines the type of data that's allowed in the field. With some data type definitions, you must also define the maximum length you want to allow in the field, but others are assumed to have one specific length for its particular type.

It's very important to define fields appropriately. For example, if you have a field to hold the name of a recording, and it's a 50-character `varchar` field, yet you try to stuff a 100-character string into the field, your string will truncate at 50 characters.

Not only is it important to define the fields correctly so that the data fits inside the fields, but if you define a field with an incorrect SQL syntax, the table won't be created, period. For example, if you want to use the text data type for a field, you cannot specify a length: it's automatically assumed to have a particular length.

[Table 12.1](#) shows some of the more common types you will use. For a complete list, please read the MySQL manual.

**Table 12.1: Some MySQL Data Types**

Data Type	Definition
TINYINT	A very small integer that can be signed or unsigned. If signed, the allowable range is from 128 to 127. If unsigned, the allowable range is from 0 to 255.

SMALLINT	A small integer that can be signed or unsigned. If signed, the allowable range is from -32768 to 32767. If unsigned, the allowable range is from 0 to 65535.
MEDIUMINT	A medium-sized integer that can be signed or unsigned. If signed, the allowable range is from -8388608 to 8388607. If unsigned, the allowable range is from 0 to 16777215.
INT	A normal-sized integer that can be signed or unsigned. If signed, the allowable range is from -2147483648 to 2147483647. If unsigned, the allowable range is from 0 to 4294967295.
BIGINT	A large integer that can be signed or unsigned. If signed, the allowable range is from -9223372036854775808 to 9223372036854775808. If unsigned, the allowable range is from 0 to 18446744073709551615.
FLOAT	A floating point number that cannot be unsigned. You can define the display length (M) and the number of decimals (D). This is not required and will default to 10,2, where 2 is the number of decimals. Decimal precision can go to 24 places for a FLOAT.
DATE	A date in YYYY-MM-DD format, between 1000-01-01 and 9999-12-31. For example, December 30th, 1973 would be stored as 1973-12-30.
DATETIME	A date in YYYY-MM-DD format, between 1000-01-01 and 9999-12-31, plus hour and minute information in HH:MM:SS format. For example, 12:01 AM on December 30th, 1973 would be stored as 1973-12-30 00:01:00.
	A timestamp between midnight, January 1, 1970 and sometime in 2037. You can define multiple

TIMESTAMP	lengths to the <code>TIMESTAMP</code> field, which directly correlate to what is stored in it. The default length for <code>TIMESTAMP</code> is 14, which stores <code>YYYYMMDDHHMMSS</code> . This looks like the <code>DATETIME</code> format, only without the hyphens between numbers; 3:30 in the afternoon on December 30th, 1973 would be stored as <code>19731230153000</code> . Other definitions of <code>TIMESTAMP</code> are 12 ( <code>YYMMDDHHMMSS</code> ), 8 ( <code>YYYYMMDD</code> ), and 6 ( <code>YYMMDD</code> ).
CHAR	A fixed-length string between 1 and 255 characters in length, right-padded with spaces to the specified length when stored. Defining a length is not required, but the default is 1.
VARCHAR	A variable-length string between 1 and 255 characters in length. You must define a length when creating a <code>VARCHAR</code> field.
BLOB or TEXT	A field with a maximum length of 65535 characters. <code>BLOBS</code> are "Binary Large Objects" and are used to store large amounts of binary data, such as images or other types of files. Fields defined as <code>TEXT</code> also hold large amounts of data; the difference between the two is that sorts and comparisons on stored data are case sensitive on <code>BLOBS</code> and case insensitive in <code>TEXT</code> fields. You do not specify a length with <code>BLOB</code> or <code>TEXT</code> .
ENUM	An enumeration (list). When defining an <code>ENUM</code> , you are creating a list of items from which the value must be selected (or it can be <code>NULL</code> ). For example, if you wanted your field to contain either "A" or "B" or "C", you would define your <code>ENUM</code> as <code>ENUM ('A', 'B', 'C')</code> and only those values (or <code>NULL</code> ) could ever populate that field. <code>ENUMs</code> can have 65535 different values.

## Defining Your Fields

The overall goal of this chapter is to create a table to hold data from your own personal music collection. Take a moment to think about the kinds of things you'd want to know: the title and artist, obviously, and maybe the record label, the date it was acquired, and your own personal notes regarding the recording. I thought about what I wanted for my own table, which I've decided to call `my_music`, as shown in [Table 12.2](#).

**Table 12.2: Fields for `my_music`**

Field Name	Description
<code>id</code>	Creates a unique ID number for the entry
<code>format</code>	Is it a CD, cassette, or even an LP?
<code>title</code>	The title of the recording
<code>artist_fn</code>	The artist's first name
<code>artist_ln</code>	The artist's last name or the name of the group
<code>rec_label</code>	The record label
<code>my_notes</code>	My own thoughts about the recording
<code>date_acq</code>	Date acquired

In the [next section](#), you create a sequence of forms that will take your table information and send it to your MySQL database. In the first step, you submit the name of the table and the number of fields you want to include. The second step will display additional form fields so that you can define the properties of your table columns. A third step will send the request to MySQL, verify that the table was created, and display a "Success!" message.

## The Importance of Unique Fields

Using unique ID numbers not only helps you keep track of your data, but

also down the road, helps you attempt to establish relationships between multiple tables. In the `my_music` table, there will be an ID field. Using this field as the unique field, instead of the title field, will allow you to have two recordings in your table that have the same name. For example, if you own the album *Strange Fire* by the Indigo Girls, you could have two entries in your table: one for the version released in 1987, and one for the version re-released in 1989 (just trust me on that one).

Without using a unique identifier, you would have to pick only one version to put in your table, and your table wouldn't be very accurate. I hope this simple example conveys the importance of having a unique identifier in each record in your table. The usage of the unique identifier will become more apparent throughout the remainder of this book, as you create more database-driven elements.

## A Two-Step Form Sequence

A two-step form sequence for creating a database table might seem like overkill. After all, you saw a basic table-creation SQL statement in [Chapter 1](#), when you created `test_table`:

```
create table test_table (test_id int, test_note text);
```

When using a PHP script to create a table, all you're doing is sending the exact same query to MySQL. However, you can tie a pretty ribbon around the process (creating a form-based interface) and call it an administrative interface!

In the process of creating the administrative interface, you'll start with an HTML form, and then create a PHP script that takes information from that form and dynamically creates another form. Finally, you'll create a script that sends the actual SQL query.

### Step 1: Number of Fields

This HTML form will contain two input fields: one for the name of the table, and one for the number of fields you want your table to contain.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and type the following HTML:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Create a Database Table: Step 1</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<H1>Step 1: Name and Number</H1>
```

2. Begin your form. Assume that the method is `POST` and the action is a script called `do_showfielddef.php`:

```
<FORM METHOD="POST" ACTION="do_showfielddef.php"
```

3. Create an input field for the table name with a text label:

```
<P><strong>Table Name:</strong><br>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="table_name" SIZE=30></
```

4. Create an input field for the number of fields in the table with a text label:

```
<P><strong>Number of Fields:</strong><br>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="num_fields" SIZE=5></P>
```

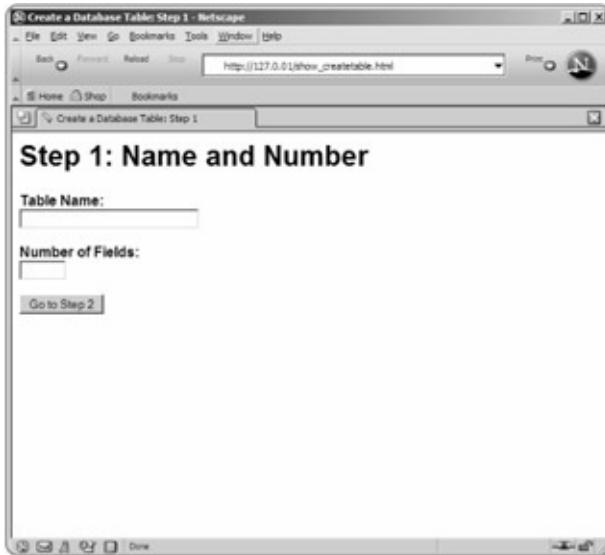
5. Add a submit button, and then close your form and add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
<P><INPUT TYPE="submit" NAME="submit" VALUE="Go">
</FORM>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

6. Save the file with the name `show_createtable.html`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.
7. Open your web browser and type

[http://127.0.0.1/show\\_createtable.html](http://127.0.0.1/show_createtable.html).

In the [next section](#), you follow step 2 of the process, and create the script that dynamically creates another form based on the values of `$_POST[table_name]` and `$_POST[num_fields]`.



## Step 2: Defining Your Fields

In step 1, you created variables to hold the name of the table (`$_POST[table_name]`) and the number of fields you want to place in the table (`$_POST[num_fields]`). In this step, you create a PHP script to display additional form elements needed for further definition of the fields: name, type, and length.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. Check that values were actually entered for

`$_POST[table_name]` and `$_POST[num_fields]`. If they weren't, direct the user back to the form and exit the script:

```
if ((!$_POST[table_name]) || (!$_POST[num_field  
header("Location: show_createtable.html");  
exit;  
}
```

3. Start building a string called `$form_block`, starting with the form action and method. Assume that the method is `POST` and the action is a script called `do_createtable.php`. Remember to escape your quotation marks!

```
$form_block = "  
<FORM METHOD=\\"POST\\" ACTION=\\"do_createtable.p
```

**Note** Because the script is creating the next form on-the-fly (dynamically), build one big string so that you can echo just the string after the complicated parsing has taken place. This way you won't be stuck with a half-built page that won't be displayed if an error occurs.

4. Add a hidden field to hold the value of `$_POST[table_name]`, which you'll use at the end of the sequence just to show the user that the proper table has been created:

```
<INPUT TYPE=\\"hidden\\" NAME=\\"table_name\\" VALU
```

5. Display your form in an HTML table so that the fields line up nicely. Start with a row of column headings, and close the \$form\_block string for now:

```
<TABLE CELLPACING=5 CELLPADDING=5>
<TR>
<TH>FIELD NAME</TH><TH>FIELD TYPE</TH><TH>FIELD
```

6. Start a `for` loop to handle the creation of the form fields. Like a `while` loop, a `for` loop continues as long as a condition is true. In this case, the `for` loop starts out with the variable `$i` having a value of 0, and it continues for as long as `$i` is less than the value of `$_POST[num_fields]`. After each loop, `$i` is incremented by 1:

```
for ($i = 0; $i < $_POST[num_fields]; $i++) {
```

7. Within the `for` loop, you'll add to the original `$form_block`. You'll add one row for each field you want to have in your database table. Start with the table row tag and a table data cell containing an input type for the field name:

```
$form_block .= "
<TR>
<TD ALIGN= CENTER><INPUT TYPE=\\"text\\" NAME=\\"field_name[]\\"
SIZE=\\"30\\"></TD>
```

**Note** The use of brackets (`[]`) after `field_name` in your input field indicates an array. For each field you define in this form, you'll be adding a value to the `$_POST[field_name]` array.

An array holds many variables in numbered slots, beginning with 0. Slots are added automatically as the array grows. For example, if you are creating a database table with six fields, the `$_POST[field_name]` array will be made up of six field name variables: `$_POST[field_name][0]`,

```
$POST[field_name][1],  
$POST[field_name][2],  
$POST[field_name][3],  
$POST[field_name][4], and  
$POST[field_name][5].
```

8. In the next table data cell, create a drop-down list containing some common field types:

```
<TD ALIGN= CENTER>  
<SELECT NAME= "field_type[] ">  
    <OPTION VALUE= "char ">char</OPTION>  
    <OPTION VALUE= "date ">date</OPTION>  
    <OPTION VALUE= "float ">float</OPTION>  
    <OPTION VALUE= "int ">int</OPTION>  
    <OPTION VALUE= "text ">text</OPTION>  
    <OPTION VALUE= "varchar ">varchar</OPTION>  
</SELECT>  
</TD>
```

9. In the final table data cell, create a text field for the length of the field, and close your table row. Also close the \$form\_block string, because you're done with it for now:

```
<TD ALIGN= CENTER><INPUT TYPE= "text" NAME= "fi<br></TR>";
```

10. Close the for loop:

```
}
```

11. Add the final chunk of HTML to the \$form\_block string. You'll add one row that holds the submit button, and then close your table and form:

```
$form_block .= "  
<TR>  
    <TD ALIGN= CENTER COLSPAN=3><INPUT TYPE= "submit">  
    Table</TD>
```

```
</TR>
</TABLE>
</FORM>";
```

12. Close the PHP block and type the following HTML:

```
?>
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Create a Database Table: Step 2</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
```

13. Add a nice heading so that the users know what they are viewing. Mingle HTML and PHP to include the value of the `$_POST[table_name]` variable:

```
<H1>Define fields for <? echo "$_POST[table_nam?>
```

14. Display the contents of `$form_block`:

```
<? echo "$form_block"; ?>
```

15. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

16. Save the file with the name `do_showfielddef.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

Your code should look something like this:

```
<?
//validate important input
if (((!$POST[table_name]) || (!$POST[num_fields]))) {
    header("Location: show_createtable.html");
    exit;
}

//begin creating form for display
$form_block = "
```

```

<FORM METHOD=\\"POST\\" ACTION=\\"do_createtable.php\\">
<INPUT TYPE=\\"hidden\\" NAME=\\"table_name\\" VALUE=\\"$_P(
<TABLE CELLSPACING=5 CELLPADDING=5>
<TR>
<TH>FIELD NAME</TH><TH>FIELD TYPE</TH><TH>FIELD LENGTH·

//count from 0 until you reach the number of fields
for ($i = 0; $i <$_POST[num_fields]; $i++) {
    //add to the form, one row for each field
    $form_block .= "
<TR>
<TD ALIGN= CENTER>
<INPUT TYPE=\\"text\\" NAME=\\"field_name[]\\" SIZE=\"
<TD ALIGN= CENTER>
<SELECT NAME=\\"field_type[]\\">
    <OPTION VALUE=\\"char\\\">char</OPTION>
    <OPTION VALUE=\\"date\\\">date</OPTION>
    <OPTION VALUE=\\"float\\\">float</OPTION>
    <OPTION VALUE=\\"int\\\">int</OPTION>
    <OPTION VALUE=\\"text\\\">text</OPTION>
    <OPTION VALUE=\\"varchar\\\">varchar</OPTION>
</SELECT>
</TD>
<TD ALIGN= CENTER>
<INPUT TYPE=\\"text\\" NAME=\\"field_length[]\\" SIZE=:
</TR>";
}

//finish up the form
$form_block .= "
<TR>
<TD ALIGN= CENTER COLSPAN=3><INPUT TYPE=\\"submit\\" VALU
</TR>
</TABLE>
</FORM>";
?>
<HTML>

```

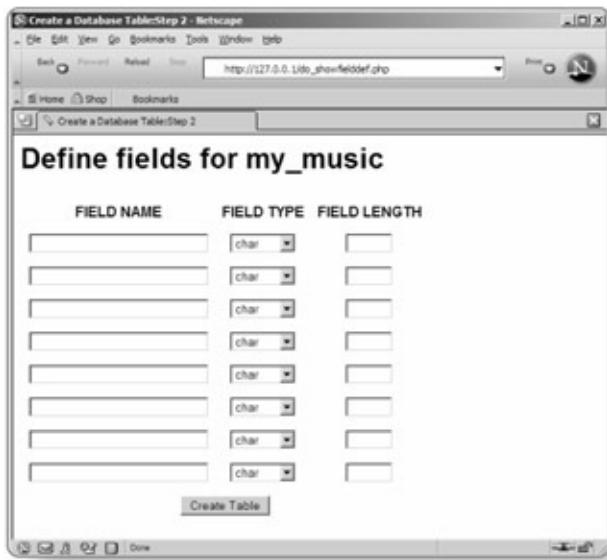
```
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Create a Database Table: Step 2</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<H1>Define fields for <? echo "$_POST[table_name]"; ?>
<? echo "$form_block"; ?>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

In the [next section](#), you prepare to create the table.

## Starting the Table-Creation Process

You should be able to go from step 1 (naming the table and providing the number of fields) to step 2 (defining the fields) without any problems. Let's try it out.

1. Open your web browser to  
[http://127.0.0.1/show\\_createtable.html](http://127.0.0.1/show_createtable.html).
2. In the Table Name field, type **my\_music**.
3. In the Number of Fields field, type **8**.
4. Click the Go to Step 2 button. You should see the form shown in the following figure.



There are eight rows, corresponding to the eight fields you want to create in the `my_music` table. Populate those fields, but hold off on pressing the Create Table button, because you haven't created the script yet!

1. In the first row, type `id` for the Field Name, select `int` from the Field Type drop-down menu, and specify a Field Length of 5.
2. In the second row, type `format` for the Field Name, select `char` from the Field Type drop-down menu, and specify a Field Length of 2.
3. In the third row, type `title` for the Field Name, select `varchar` from the Field Type drop-down menu, and specify a Field Length of 150.
4. In the fourth row, type `artist_fn` for the Field Name, select `varchar` from the Field Type drop-down menu, and specify a Field Length of 100.
5. In the fifth row, type `artist_ln` for the Field Name, select `varchar` from the Field Type drop-down menu, and specify a Field Length of 100.
6. In the sixth row, type `rec_label` for the Field Name, select

`varchar` from the Field Type drop-down menu, and specify a Field Length of 50.

7. In the seventh row, type `my_notes` for the Field Name and select `text` from the Field Type drop-down menu.
8. In the eighth row, type `date_acq` for the Field Name and select `date` from the Field Type drop-down menu.

**Note** No field length is specified for the `my_notes` field, because it is a `text` field and thus no length is used in its definition, as you learned. Similarly, no length is specified for the `date_acq` field, because data in these fields is stored in the specific 0000-00-00 format.

The completed form should look like the following figure.

In the [next section](#), you create the back-end script for this form so that you can click that button and create the table.

The screenshot shows a web browser window titled "Create a Database Table Step 2 - Netscape". The URL in the address bar is "http://127.0.0.1/dk\_jshow/fielddef.php". The main content is a form titled "Define fields for my\_music". The form has three columns: "FIELD NAME", "FIELD TYPE", and "FIELD LENGTH". The fields listed are:

FIELD NAME	FIELD TYPE	FIELD LENGTH
id	int	5
format	char	2
title	varchar	150
artist_fn	varchar	100
artist_ln	varchar	100
rec_label	varchar	50
my_notes	text	
date_acq	date	

At the bottom of the form is a "Create Table" button.

# Creating the Table-Creation Script

This script will build a SQL statement and then send it to MySQL to create the `my_music` table.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. Create a variable to hold the name of the database on which the table should reside:

```
$db_name = "testDB";
```

3. Add the connection information just as you have been doing:

```
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike"  
    or die(mysql_error()));
```

4. Create a variable to hold the result of the `mysql_select_db()` function. Include the `@` to suppress warnings, as well as the `die()` function to cause the script to end and a message to be displayed if the selection of the database fails:

```
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) o
```

**Note** The `mysql_select_db()` function requires a database name and the link identifier for the current connection.

5. Start building the query by placing the initial syntax in a variable called `$sql`:

```
$sql = "CREATE TABLE $_POST[table_name] (";
```

6. Create a `for` loop to create the remainder of the SQL statement. The loop should repeat for the number of fields contained as elements in the `$_POST[field_name]` array:

```
for ($i = 0; $i < count($_POST[field_name]); $i++) {
```

**Note** The `count()` function counts the number of elements in an array.

7. For each new field, you'll need to add the field name and type to the SQL statement:

```
$sql .= $_POST[field_name][$i] . " " . $_POST[fiel...
```

8. Because some field definitions will have a specific length and others will not, start an `if...else` block to handle this aspect. If a length is present, it must go inside parentheses, followed by a comma to start the next field definition:

```
if ($_POST[field_length][$i] != "") {  
    $sql .= " (" . $_POST[field_length][$i] . "), "
```

9. If no length is present, just print the comma to separate the field definitions. Then close the `if...else` block:

```
} else {  
    $sql .= ", ";  
}
```

10. Close the `for` loop:

```
}
```

11. The SQL statement held in `$sql` still needs some help. It should have an extraneous comma at the end of it, and the parentheses must be closed. Use the `substr()` function to return the entire string, with the exception of the last character:

```
$sql = substr($sql, 0, -1);
```

**Note** The `0` in the `substr()` argument list tells the function to begin at the first character, and the `-1` tells the

function to stop at the next-to-last character.

12. Close the parentheses:

```
$sql .= ")" ;
```

13. Create a variable to hold the result of the `mysql_query()` function. Include the `@` to suppress warnings, as well as the `die()` function to cause the script to end and a message to be displayed if the query fails:

```
$result = mysql_query($sql, $connection) or die(
```

14. Test the value of `$result`. If it's true, the query was successful, and a variable is created to hold a message:

```
if ($result) {  
    $msg = "<P>".$_POST[table_name]." has been  
}
```

15. Close your PHP block and add HTML:

```
?>  
<HTML>  
<HEAD>  
<TITLE>Create a Database Table: Step 3</TITLE>  
</HEAD>  
<BODY>
```

16. Add a nice heading so that the users know what they are viewing. Mingle HTML and PHP to include the value of the `$_POST[db_name]` variable:

```
<h1>Adding table to <? echo "$db_name"; ?>...</
```

17. Print the message string:

```
<? echo "$msg"; ?>
```

18. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>
```

```
</HTML>
```

19. Save the file with the name `do_createtable.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

Your code should look something like this:

```
<?
//indicate the database you want to use
$db_name = "testDB";
//connect to database
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike", "9s"
    or die(mysql_error()));
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) or die(m
//start creating the SQL statement
$sql = "CREATE TABLE $_POST[table_name] (";

//continue the SQL statement for each new field
for ($i = 0; $i < count($_POST[field_name]); $i++) {
    $sql .= $_POST[field_name][$i]." ".$_POST[field_t

        if ($_POST[field_length][$i] != "") {
            $sql .= " (".$_POST[field_length][$i]."),";
        } else {
            $sql .= ",";
        }
}
//clean up the end of the string
$sql = substr($sql, 0, -1);
$sql .= ")";

//execute the query
$result = mysql_query($sql,$connection) or die(mysql_e

//get a good message for display upon success
if ($result) {
    $msg = "<P>".$_POST[table_name]." has been created";
}
```

```
?>
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Create a Database Table: Step 3</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<h1>Adding table to <? echo "$db_name"; ?>...</h1>
<? echo "$msg"; ?>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

Go on to the next step, where you get to click a button and create a table.

## Create that Table!

You should still have your web browser open to the field definition form, with the fields complete and ready for submission. Go ahead and click on the Create Table button. If everything goes smoothly, you'll see the response in the following figure.



To prove that the `my_music` table has really been created on the `testDB` database, access the `db_listtables.php` script you created in the [previous chapter](#). You should see the `my_music` table in the list.



In the [next chapter](#), you create an HTML form interface to a script that adds entries to the `my_music` table.

## **Chapter 13: Inserting Data into the Table**

## Overview

The `my_music` database table is just sitting there, waiting for you to add information about your music collection. In this chapter, you learn how to:

- Create an administrative interface for adding a record
- Create a script to insert the record into your table

## Creating the Record Addition Form

The HTML form will contain an input field for each column in the `my_music` database table. In the [previous chapter](#), you created eight fields, which correspond to eight columns. Your record addition interface should have a space for each of these fields.

**Note** Use the database field names as the value of the `NAME` attribute in the HTML form fields. Also, where appropriate, use the size of the database field as the value of the `maxlength` attribute in the HTML form fields.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and type the following HTML:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Add a Record</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<H1>Adding a Record to my_music</H1>
```

2. Begin your form. Assume that the method is `POST` and the action is a script called `do_addrecord.php`:

```
<FORM METHOD="POST" ACTION="do_addrecord.php">
```

3. Begin an HTML table to assist in layout. Start a new table row and table data cell, and then create an input field for the ID, with a text label:

```
<TABLE CELLPACING=3 CELLPADDING=3>
<TR>
<TD VALIGN=TOP>
<P><STRONG>ID:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="id" SIZE=5 MAXLENGTH=5>
```

4. Create an input field for the date acquired with a text label. Close the table data cell after the input field:

```
<P><STRONG>Date Acquired (YYYY-MM-DD) :</STRONG>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="date_acq" SIZE=10 MAXL
```

```
</TD>
```

**Note** The date type used in MySQL uses the YYYY-MM-DD format. An example of a date using this format is 2004-03-02 (March 2nd, 2004).

5. In a new table data cell, create a set of radio buttons to select the format of the recording. Close the table data cell and the table row after the set of radio buttons:

```
<TD VALIGN=TOP>
<P><STRONG>Format:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="radio" NAME="format" VALUE="CD" checked>
<INPUT TYPE="radio" NAME="format" VALUE="CS"> CD
<INPUT TYPE="radio" NAME="format" VALUE="LP"> LP
</P>
</TD>
</TR>
```

6. Start a new table row and table data cell, and then create an input field for the title with a text label. Close the table data cell after the input field:

```
<TR>
<TD VALIGN=TOP>
<P><STRONG>Title:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="title" SIZE=35 MAXLENGTH=255>
</TD>
```

7. In a new table data cell, create an input field for the record label information with a text label. Close the table data cell and the table row after the input field:

```
<TD VALIGN=TOP>
<P><STRONG>Record Label:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="rec_label" SIZE=35 MAXLENGTH=255>
</TD>
</TR>
```

8. Start a new table row and table data cell, and then create an input field for the artist's first name with a text label. Close the table data cell after the input field:

```
<TR>
<TD VALIGN=TOP>
<P><STRONG>Artist's First Name:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="artist_fn" SIZE=35 MAXLENGTH=50>
</TD>
```

9. In a new table data cell, create an input field for the artist's last name (or group name) with a text label. Close the table data cell and the table row after the input field:

```
<TD VALIGN=TOP>
<P><STRONG>Artist's Last Name (or Group Name):</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="artist_ln" SIZE=35 MAXLENGTH=50>
</TD>
</TR>
```

10. Start a new table row and a table data cell that spans two columns. Create a TEXTAREA field with a text label to hold your notes regarding the recording:

```
<TR>
<TD VALIGN=TOP COLSPAN=2 ALIGN=CENTER>
<P><STRONG>My Notes:</STRONG><BR>
<TEXTAREA NAME="my_notes" COLS=35 ROWS=5 WRAP=virtual>
```

11. Add a submit button, and then close the table data cell, the table row, and the table itself:

```
<P><INPUT TYPE="SUBMIT" NAME="submit" VALUE="Add to My List">
</TD>
</TR>
</TABLE>
```

12. Close your form, and add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</FORM>  
</BODY>  
</HTML>
```

13. Save the file with the name `show_addrecord.html`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.
14. Open your web browser and type  
[http://127.0.0.1/show\\_addrecord.html](http://127.0.0.1/show_addrecord.html).



In the [next section](#), you create the script that takes the form input, creates a SQL statement, and adds the record to the database table.

## Creating the Record Addition Script

The script you'll create for a record addition is a lot simpler than the script for table creation!

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. Check that values were actually entered for `$_POST[id]`, `$_POST[format]`, and `$_POST[title]`. If they weren't, direct the user back to the form and exit the script:

```
if ((!$_POST[id]) || (!$_POST[format]) || (!$_POST[title])) {
    header("Location: /show_addrecord.html");
    exit;
}
```

**Note** You can have as many (or as few) required fields as you want.

3. Create a variable to hold the name of the database on which the table resides:

```
$db_name = "testDB";
```

4. Create a variable to hold the name of the table you're populating with this script:

```
$table_name = "my_music";
```

5. Add the connection information just as you have been doing:

```
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike");
or die(mysql_error());
```

6. Select the database as you have learned to do:

```
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) or die(mysql_error());
```

7. Create the SQL statement. The first parenthetical statement

gives the names of the fields to populate (in order), and the second parenthetical statement sends the actual strings:

```
$sql = "INSERT INTO $table_name  
        (id, format, title, artist_fn, artist_ln, re-  
         my_notes, date_acq) VALUES  
        ('$_POST[id]', '$_POST[format]', '$_POST[tit-  
         '$_POST[artist_fn]', '$_POST[artist_ln]', '$_-  
         '$_POST[my_notes]', '$_POST[date_acq]')";
```

8. Create a variable to hold the result of the `mysql_query()` function, as you have learned to do:

```
$result = @mysql_query($sql,$connection) or die
```

9. Close your PHP block and add HTML:

```
?>  
<HTML>  
<HEAD>  
<TITLE>Add a Record</TITLE>  
</HEAD>  
<BODY>
```

10. Add a nice heading so that the users know what they are viewing. Mingle HTML and PHP to include the value of the `$table_name` variable:

```
<H1>Adding a Record to <? echo "$table_name"; ?>
```

11. Next, you'll re-create the layout used in `show_addrecord.html`, only it won't contain form fields. Instead, you'll mingle HTML and PHP to show the values that were entered. Start a new table row and table data cell, and then display a text label and value for ID:

```
<TABLE CELLSPACING=3 CELLPADDING=3>  
<TR>  
<TD VALIGN=TOP>  
<P><STRONG>ID:</STRONG><BR>
```

```
<? echo "$_POST[id]"; ?></P>
```

12. Display a text label and value for the date acquired, and then close the table data cell:

```
<P><STRONG>Date Acquired (YYYY-MM-DD) :</STRONG>
<? echo "$_POST[date_acq]"; ?></P>
</TD>
```

13. Display a text label and the format of the recording, and then close the table data cell and table row:

```
<TD VALIGN=TOP>
<P><STRONG>Format:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "$_POST[format]"; ?>
</P>
</TD>
</TR>
```

14. Start a new table row and table data cell, display a text label and value for the title, and close the table data cell:

```
<TR>
<TD VALIGN=TOP>
<P><STRONG>Title:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "$_POST[title]"; ?></P>
</TD>
```

15. In a new table data cell, display a text label and value for the record label information, and then close the table data cell and table row:

```
<TD VALIGN=TOP>
<P><STRONG>Record Label:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "$_POST[rec_label]"; ?></P>
</TD>
</TR>
```

16. Start a new table row and table data cell, and then create an input field for the artist's first name with a text label. Close the

table data cell after the input field:

```
<TR>
<TD VALIGN=TOP>
<P><STRONG>Artist's First Name:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "$_POST[artist_fn]"; ?></P>
</TD>
```

17. In a new table data cell, display a text label and value for the artist's last name (or group name), and then close the table data cell and table row:

```
<TD VALIGN=TOP>
<P><STRONG>Artist's Last Name (or Group Name) :<
<? echo "$_POST[artist_ln]"; ?></P>
</TD>
</TR>
```

18. Start a new table row and a table data cell that spans two columns. Display a text label and value for your notes regarding the recording:

```
<TR>
<TD VALIGN=TOP COLSPAN=2 ALIGN=CENTER>
<P><STRONG>My Notes:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo stripslashes($_POST[my_notes]); ?></P>
```

**Note** The `stripslashes()` function will remove any slashes automatically added to your form data, which is turned on by default in PHP. It will add slashes where necessary to escape special characters, such as single quotes and double quotes. You can turn it off by modifying your `php.ini` file, but if you leave it on, it's one less thing you have to worry about.

19. Add a link back to the original form, and then close the table data cell, the table row, and the table itself:

```
<P><a href="show_addrecord.html">Add Another</a>
```

```
</TD>
</TR>
</TABLE>
```

20. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

21. Save the file with the name `do_addrecord.php`, and place it in the document root of your web server.

Your code should look something like this:

```
<?
//check for required fields
if ((!$_POST[id]) || (!$_POST[format]) || (!$_POST[title]))
    header("Location: /show_addrecord.html");
    exit;
}

//set up database and table names
$db_name = "testDB";
$table_name = "my_music";

//connect to MySQL and select database to use
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike", "9s
    or die(mysql_error()));
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) or die(m
//create SQL statement and issue query
$sql = "INSERT INTO $table_name
    (id, format, title, artist_fn, artist_ln, rec_label
    my_notes, date_acq) VALUES
    ('$_POST[id]', '$_POST[format]', '$_POST[title]',
    '$_POST[artist_fn]', '$_POST[artist_ln]', '$_POST[r
    '$_POST[my_notes]', '$_POST[date_acq]')";

$result = @mysql_query($sql,$connection) or die(mysql_
?>
```

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Add a Record</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<H1>Adding a Record to <? echo "$table_name"; ?></H1>
<TABLE CELLSPACING=3 CELLPADDING=3>
<TR>
<TD VALIGN=TOP>
<P><STRONG>ID:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "$_POST[id]"; ?></P>
<P><STRONG>Date Acquired (YYYY-MM-DD) :</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "$_POST[date_acq]"; ?></P>
</TD>
<TD VALIGN=TOP>
<P><STRONG>Format:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "$_POST[format]"; ?>
</P>
</TD>
</TR>
<TR>
<TD VALIGN=TOP>
<P><STRONG>Title:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "$_POST[title]"; ?></P>
</TD>
<TD VALIGN=TOP>
<P><STRONG>Record Label:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "$_POST[rec_label]"; ?></P>
</TD>
</TR>
<TR>
<TD VALIGN=TOP>
<P><STRONG>Artist's First Name:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "$_POST[artist_fn]"; ?></P>
</TD>
<TD VALIGN=TOP>
<P><STRONG>Artist's Last Name (or Group Name) :</STRONG>
```

```
<? echo "$_POST[artist_ln]"; ?></P>
</TD>
</TR>
<TR>
<TD VALIGN=TOP COLSPAN=2 ALIGN=CENTER>
<P><STRONG>My Notes:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo stripslashes($_POST[my_notes]); ?></P>
<P><a href="show_addrecord.html">Add Another</a></P>
</TD>
</TR>
</TABLE>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

Go on to the next step, where you get to click a button and add a record.

## Populating Your Table

Now the fun begins! If you didn't close your web browser after the first part of this chapter, `show_addrecord.html` should still be visible in your browser window. If it's not, open [http://127.0.0.1/show\\_addrecord.html](http://127.0.0.1/show_addrecord.html) now.

Complete the addition form for an album you have lying around. The following figure shows an example from my collection.

Click the Add Record button, and you should see a confirmation screen shown in the following figure.

The screenshot shows a Netscape browser window with the title "Add a Record - Netscape". The URL in the address bar is "Http://127.0.0.1/show\_addrecord.html". The main content is a form titled "Adding a Record to my\_music". The form fields are as follows:

- ID:  Format:  CD  cassette  LP
- Date Acquired (YYYY-MM-DD):
- Title:  Record Label:
- Artist's First Name:  Artist's Last Name (or Group Name):
- My Notes:

At the bottom of the form is a "Add Record" button.

Add several of your own recordings to the database table. Unless you changed the script on your own, the only required fields are ID, format, and title.



**Note** In later chapters, you'll learn to make modifications to your table so that the ID field really is unique and increments automatically. That way you don't have to keep entering a number and hoping it works.

## **Chapter 14: Selecting and Displaying Data**

## Overview

By now, you've happily and repeatedly populated the `my_music` table with all the items in your music collection—or at least a few. In this chapter, you learn how to:

- Select records from a table using the SQL `ORDER BY` clause
- Format and display records from a database table

# Planning and Creating Your Administrative Menu

You could just write one script that says, "Select all my data; I don't care about the order," but that would be boring. In this chapter, you'll see four ways to select records from the `my_music` table. To facilitate easy navigation, create an administration menu—fancy words for "a list of links to scripts."

1. Open a new file in your text editor and type the following HTML:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>My Menu</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<H1>My Menu</H1>
<P><strong>My Music</strong></P>
```

2. Start a bulleted list, and create the first link to a script called `sel_byid.php`. This script will display the records ordered by ID number:

```
<ul>
<li><a href="sel_byid.php">ordered by ID</a>
```

3. Add a link to a script called `sel_bydateacq.php`. This script will display the records ordered by date acquired. The most recently acquired item is listed first:

```
<li><a href="sel_bydateacq.php">ordered by date
(most recent first)
```

4. Add a link to a script called `sel_bytitle.php`. This script will display the records ordered by title:

```
<li><a href="sel_bytitle.php">ordered by title<
```

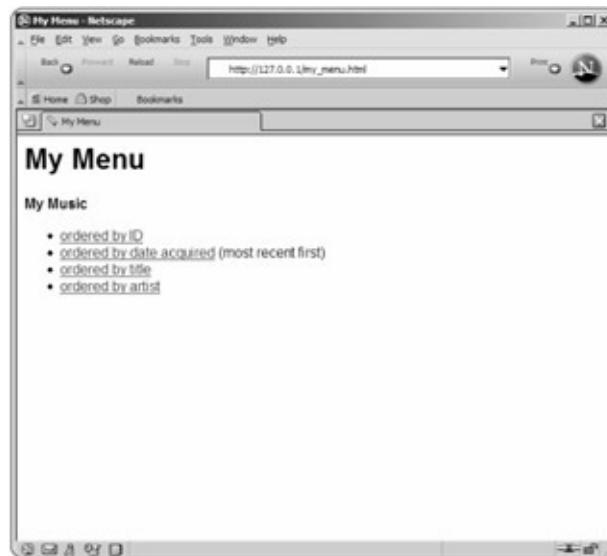
5. Add a link to a script called `sel_byartist.php`. This script will display the records ordered by artist:

```
<li><a href="sel_byartist.php">ordered by artis
```

6. Close the bulleted list, and then add some HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</ul>  
</HTML>
```

7. Save the file with the name `my_menu.html`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.
8. Open your web browser and type  
[http://127.0.0.1/my\\_menu.html](http://127.0.0.1/my_menu.html).



In the next sections, you create the scripts that do all the aforementioned selecting.

## Selecting Data From the my\_music Table

The next four sections contain scripts that are variations on a theme: selecting and displaying data. A large portion of the scripts is exactly the same, but repetition makes perfection, I was always told.

The only new function in these scripts is the `mysql_fetch_array()` function. This function takes the result of a SQL query and places the rows in array format. Using a simple `while` loop, you can extract and display these elements.

Hang on to your hat, and start with the first script, which just returns the results ordered by their ID numbers.

### Displaying Records Ordered by ID

One of the required fields in the record addition script is ID. In this script, you'll select all the records in the `my_music` table, ordered by the ID numbers. The default value of the `ORDER BY` clause is `ASC` (ascending), so the records are returned with ID #1 first, followed by #2, #3, and so on.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block:  
`<?`
2. Create a variable to hold the name of the database on which the table resides:  
`$db_name = "testDB";`
3. Create a variable to hold the name of the table you're selecting from, using this script:  
`$table_name = "my_music";`
4. Add the connection information as you have been:  
`$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spik...  
or die(mysql_error());`
5. Select the database as you have learned:

```
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) or die;
```

6. Create the SQL statement:

```
$sql = "SELECT id, format, title, artist_fn, ar  
my_notes, date_acq FROM $table_name ORDER BY
```

**Tip** Because you're selecting all the fields, you could use a \* SQL statement instead of naming all the fields. In this case, the line would look like this:

```
$sql = "SELECT * FROM $table_name ORDER BY
```

7. Create a variable to hold the result of the `mysql_query()` function, as you have learned:

```
$result = @mysql_query($sql, $connection) or die;
```

8. Start the `while` loop. The `while` loop will create an array called `$row` for each record in the result set (`$result`):

```
while ($row = mysql_fetch_array($result)) {
```

9. Get the individual elements of the record, and give them good names. Add the `stripslashes()` function around any free text field that might have had slashes added to it:

```
$id = $row['id'];
/format = $row['format'];
$title = stripslashes($row['title']);
$artist_fn = stripslashes($row['artist_fn']);
$artist_ln = stripslashes($row['artist_ln']);
$rec_label = stripslashes($row['rec_label']);
$my_notes = stripslashes($row['my_notes']);
$date_acq = $row['date_acq'];
```

10. Do a little formatting with the artists' names. Because some artists have only a first name, some artists use both first and last names, and group names are thrown into the `artist_ln`

field, start an `if...else` block to deal with this. Start by looking for groups:

```
if ($artist_fn != "") {
```

11. Create a variable called `$artist_fullname`, which will contain a string with `$artist_fn`, followed by a space, followed by `$artist_ln`, all within the `trim()` function:

```
$artist_fullname = trim("$artist_fn $artist_ln")
```

**Note** The `trim()` function gets rid of extraneous space at the beginning and end of a string.

12. Continue the block, assigning the trimmed value of `$artist_ln` to `$artist_fullname`:

```
} else {  
    $artist_fullname = trim("$artist_ln");  
}
```

13. Do a little more formatting. If you didn't enter a date in the `date_acq` field, MySQL will enter a default value of `0000-00-00`. Create an `if` block that looks for this value and then replaces it with something more friendly:

```
if ($date_acq == "0000-00-00") {  
    $date_acq = "[unknown]";  
}
```

14. Create a variable called `$display_block` to hold all the formatted records. The formatting in this block places the title of the recording in bold, followed by the name of the record label and the artist. Next comes a line break, and then your notes, and then an emphasized parenthetical statement that holds the date acquired and format:

```
$display_block .= "<P><strong>$title</strong> o:
```

```
    by $artist_fullname<br>
$my_notes <em>(acquired:$date_acq, format:$format)</em>
```

15. Close the while loop, and then your PHP block:

```
}
```

```
?>
```

16. Add this HTML:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>My Music (Ordered by ID)</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<H1>My Music: Ordered by ID</H1>
```

17. Display the results:

```
<? echo "$display_block"; ?>
```

18. Add a link back to the main menu, and then add some more HTML to make a valid document:

```
<P><a href="my_menu.html">Return to Menu</a></P>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

19. Save the file with the name `sel_byid.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

20. Open your web browser and type

[http://127.0.0.1/my\\_menu.html](http://127.0.0.1/my_menu.html).

21. Click on the link called ordered by ID.

Your records will be different from mine, but you should see a screen like the following, where the records are ordered by internal ID number.

In the [next section](#), you create the script that displays results ordered by date acquired.



## Displaying Records Ordered by Date Acquired

Although it isn't a required field, the record addition script has a space for the date the recording made its way into your music collection. In this script, you'll select all the records in the `my_music` table, ordered by this date, with the most recent acquisition appearing first in the list.

1. Open the `sel_byID.php` file and change the SQL statement to:

```
$sql = "SELECT * FROM $table_name ORDER BY date";
```

2. Change the HTML title and heading to reflect the new ordering method:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>My Music (Ordered by Date Acquired)</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<H1>My Music: Ordered by Date Acquired</H1>
```

3. Save the file with the name `sel_bydateacq.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

4. Open your web browser and type

[http://127.0.0.1/my\\_menu.html](http://127.0.0.1/my_menu.html).

5. Click on the link called ordered by date acquired.

Your records will be different from mine, but you should see a screen like the following, where the records are ordered by the date the recordings were acquired. Those without dates would appear at the end of the list.

In the [next section](#), you create the script that displays results ordered by title.



## Displaying Records Ordered by Title

As you might imagine, the recording title is a required field in the record addition script. In this script, you'll select all the records in the my\_music table, ordered alphabetically by title.

1. Open the `sel_bydateacq.php` file and change the SQL statement to:

```
$sql = "SELECT * FROM $table_name ORDER BY title";
```

2. Change the HTML title and heading to reflect the new ordering method:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>My Music (Ordered by Title)</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<H1>My Music: Ordered by Title</H1>
```

3. Display the results:

```
<? echo "$display_block"; ?>
```

4. Add a link back to the main menu, and then add some more HTML to make a valid document:

```
<P><a href="my_menu.html">Return to Menu</a></P>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

5. Save the file with the name `sel_bytitle.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

6. Open your web browser and type

[http://127.0.0.1/my\\_menu.html](http://127.0.0.1/my_menu.html).

7. Click on the link called ordered by title.

Your records will be different from mine, but you should see a screen like the following, where the records are ordered by title of the recording.

In the final section, you create the script that displays results ordered by artist name.



## Displaying Records Ordered by Artist

This script is a bit trickier because you have to take into consideration issues associated with artist names: some have only a first name, some have first and last names, and group names are thrown into the `artist_ln` field as well. In this script, you select all the records in the `my_music` table, ordered alphabetically by the full name of the artist.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. Create a variable to hold the name of the database on which the table resides:

```
$db_name = "testDB";
```

3. Create a variable to hold the name of the table you're selecting from, using this script:

```
$table_name = "my_music";
```

4. Add the connection information as you have been:

```
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike"  
or die(mysql_error()));
```

5. Select the database as you have learned:

```
$db = @mysql select db($db_name, $connection) or die("Error selecting database");
```

6. Create the SQL statement. Go back to the method that names all the fields in the `SELECT` statement:

```
$sql = "SELECT id, format, title, trim(concat(a.  
    artist_fullname, rec_label, my_notes, date_ac.  
    ORDER BY artist fullname";
```

**Note** Within this SQL statement, you're essentially creating a new field from two fields that already exist, using the `concat()` function (a MySQL string function) to combine `artist_fn` and `artist_ln`, with a space in-between. Using `artist_fullname` assigns this new value to a field called `artist_fullname`. For example, suppose you own the album *White Ladder* by David Gray. The artist's first name ("David") and last name ("Gray") would go in their respective areas of the form, but would be output as one string ("David Gray").

The `trim()` function still strips the white space. The phrase `trim(concat(artist_fn, ', artist_ln))` as `artist_fullname` replaces the `if...else` block usually seen within the `while` loop in previous scripts.

7. Create a variable to hold the result of the `mysql_query()` function, as you have learned:

```
$result = @mysql_query($sql, $connection) or die
```

- Start the while loop. The while loop will create an array called \$row for each record in the result set (\$result):

```
while ($row = mysql_fetch_array($result)) {
```

9. Get the individual elements of the record, and give them good

names. Remember, you have a new field called `artist_fullname`. Add the `stripslashes()` function around any free text field that might have had slashes added to it:

```
$id = $row['id'];
$format = $row['format'];
$title = stripslashes($row['title']);
$artist_fullname = stripslashes($row['artist_fullname']);
$rec_label = stripslashes($row['rec_label']);
$my_notes = stripslashes($row['my_notes']);
$date_acq = $row['date_acq'];
```

10. If you didn't enter a date in the `date_acq` field, MySQL will enter a default value of `0000-00-00`. Create an `if` block that looks for this value and then replaces it with something more friendly:

```
if ($date_acq == "0000-00-00") {
    $date_acq = "[unknown]";
}
```

11. Create a variable called `$display_block` to hold all the formatted records. The formatting in this block places the title of the recording in bold, followed by the artist's name in parentheses. Next comes a line break, and then your notes, and then an emphasized parenthetical statement that holds the date acquired and format:

```
$display_block .= "
<P><strong>$title</strong> ($artist_fullname)<b>
$my_notes <em>(acquired: $date_acq, format: $format)</em>"
```

12. Close the `while` loop, and then your PHP block:

```
}
```

13. Add this HTML:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>My Music (Ordered by Artist)</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<H1>My Music: Ordered by Artist</H1>
```

14. Display the results:

```
<? echo "$display_block"; ?>
```

15. Add a link back to the main menu, and then add some more HTML to make a valid document:

```
<P><a href="my_menu.html">Return to Menu</a></P>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

16. Save the file with the name `sel_byartist.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

17. Open your web browser and type

[http://127.0.0.1/my\\_menu.html](http://127.0.0.1/my_menu.html).

18. Click on the link called ordered by artist.

Your records will be different from mine, but you should see a screen like the following, where the records are ordered by the name of the artist.



The next chapters give you a break from database work, as you learn a bit about user authentication, cookies, and sessions.

## Part V: User Authentication and Tracking

## **Chapter List**

[Chapter 15:](#) Database-Driven User Authentication

[Chapter 16:](#) Using Cookies

[Chapter 17:](#) Session Basics

# **Chapter 15: Database-Driven User Authentication**

## Overview

Everyone has secrets they don't want to share with the entire world. But some secrets can be shared—with certain people. In this chapter, you learn how to:

- Create a database table for authorized users
- Create a login form and script sequence that authenticates users before displaying any secrets

## Why Authenticate Anyone?

When initially developing a website, you might want to restrict access to certain members of your development team. If your corporate website contains sensitive financial data, you might want to restrict your financial statements to a particular list of investors. Or maybe you just don't want people poking around in your personal things.

A common type of user authentication is *database-driven*, in which usernames and passwords are kept in a database table and accessed via a login form and script. In the [next section](#), you create this database table and add some users to it.

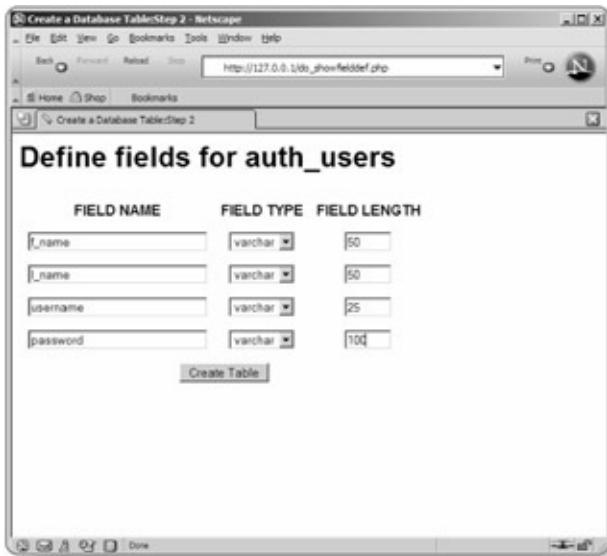
## Creating the User Table

In [Chapter 12](#), "Creating a Database Table," you followed a two-step table-creation process. You can use that same process to create the authorized users table.

1. Open your web browser to  
[http://127.0.0.1/show\\_createtable.html](http://127.0.0.1/show_createtable.html).
2. In the Table Name field, type `auth_users`.
3. In the Number of Fields field, type **4**.
4. Click on the Go to Step 2 button. You should see a form with four rows, corresponding to the four fields that will be in the `auth_users` table.
5. In the first row, type `f_name` for the Field Name, select `varchar` from the Field Type drop-down menu, and specify a Field Length of **50**. This field will hold the user's first name.
6. In the second row, type `l_name` for the Field Name, select `varchar` from the Field Type drop-down menu, and specify a Field Length of **50**. This field will hold the user's last name.
7. In the third row, type `username` for the Field Name, select `varchar` from the Field Type drop-down menu, and specify a Field Length of **25**. This field will hold the user's username.
8. In the fourth row, type `password` for the Field Name, select `varchar` from the Field Type drop-down menu, and specify a Field Length of **100**. This field will hold a hash of the password.

**Note** If you recall from [Chapter 7](#), "Displaying Dynamic Content," a *hash* is like a digital summary of the string. It can be used to compare versions of strings (or files) to determine whether the versions differ.

The completed form should look like the following figure.



Click on the Create Table button. You should see a confirmation screen stating that your table has been created. In the [next section](#), you create a record addition form and script, and add users to the `auth_users` table.

# Adding Users to Your Table

An empty `auth_users` table does you no good. In this section, you create a simple record addition form and script, similar to those you created in [Chapter 13](#), "Inserting Data into the Table."

## Creating the User Addition Form and Script

The HTML form will contain an input field for each column in the `auth_users` table.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and type the following HTML:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Add a User</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<H1>Adding a Record to auth_users</H1>
```

2. Begin your form. Assume that the method is `POST` and the action is a script called `do_adduser.php`:

```
<FORM METHOD="POST" ACTION="do_adduser.php">
```

3. Create an input field for the user's first name with a text label:

```
<P><STRONG>First Name:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="f_name" SIZE=25 MAXLEN=40>
```

4. Create an input field for the user's last name with a text label:

```
<P><STRONG>Last Name:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="l_name" SIZE=25 MAXLEN=40>
```

5. Create an input field for the username with a text label:

```
<P><STRONG>Username:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="username" SIZE=25 MAXLEN=20>
```

6. Create an input field for the password with a text label:

```
<P><STRONG>Password:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="password" SIZE=25 MAXL:
```

**Note** The MAXLENGTH of the password form field is 25, whereas the database field maximum length is 100. This discrepancy in length takes into consideration the encryption that will occur. A 25-character plain-text password, such as that entered in this form field, will be probably be longer than 25 characters when encrypted. Because only the encrypted password is stored in the database, the greater maximum length will handle the extra data.

7. Add a submit button, and then close your form and add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
<P><INPUT TYPE="SUBMIT" NAME="submit" VALUE="Add User">
</FORM>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

8. Save the file with the name `show_adduser.html`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.
9. Open your web browser and type  
[http://127.0.0.1/show\\_adduser.html](http://127.0.0.1/show_adduser.html).



You will see a form for adding a user, with four fields for name and password information, as well as a submit button. Next, you will create the back-end script for the record-addition form.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. Check that values were actually entered for all four fields. If they weren't, direct the user back to the form and exit the script:

```
if (( !$_POST[f_name] ) || ( !$_POST[l_name] ) ||  
    ( !$_POST[username] ) || ( !$_POST[password] )) {  
    header("Location: show_adduser.html");  
    exit;  
}
```

3. Create a variable to hold the name of the database on which the table resides:

```
$db_name = "testDB";
```

4. Create a variable to hold the name of the table you're populating with this script:

```
$table_name = "auth_users";
```

5. Add the connection information as you have been:

```
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike"
    or die(mysql_error()));
```

6. Select the database as you have learned:

```
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) or die(mysql_error());
```

7. Create the SQL statement. The first parenthetical statement gives the names of the fields to populate (in order), and the second parenthetical statement sends the actual strings:

```
$sql = "INSERT INTO $table_name (f_name, l_name)
VALUES ('$_POST[f_name]', '$_POST[l_name]', '$_POST[password]')";
```

**Note** The `PASSWORD()` function inserts a hash of the password, not the password itself. This alleviates the security risk of having plain-text passwords sitting in your database, because all the script needs to do is match the two hashes.

8. Create a variable to hold the result of the `mysql_query()` function, as you have learned:

```
$result = @mysql_query($sql, $connection) or die(mysql_error());
```

9. Close your PHP block, and then add HTML:

```
?>
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Add a User</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<H1>Added to auth_users:</H1>
```

10. Mingle HTML and PHP to show the values entered for each field, starting with the first-name field:

```
<P><STRONG>First Name:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "$_POST[f_name]"; ?></p>
<P><STRONG>Last Name:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "$_POST[l_name]"; ?></p>
<P><STRONG>Username:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "$_POST[username]"; ?></p>
<P><STRONG>Password:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "$_POST[password]"; ?></p>
```

11. Add a link back to the original form:

```
<P><a href="show_adduser.html">Add Another</a><
```

12. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

13. Save the file with the name `do_adduser.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

Your code should look like this:

```
<?
//check for required fields
if ((!$_POST[f_name]) || (!$_POST[l_name]) || (!$_POST
(!$_POST[password])) {
    header("Location: show_adduser.html");
    exit;
}
//set up the names of the database and table
$db_name = "testDB";
$table_name = "auth_users";

//connect to the server and select the database
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike", "9s
    or die(mysql_error()));
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) or die(m
//create and issue query
```

```

$sql = "INSERT INTO $table_name (f_name, l_name, username, password)
VALUES ('$_POST[f_name]', '$_POST[l_name]', '$_POST[username]', password('$_POST[password]'))";
$result = @mysql_query($sql,$connection) or die(mysql_error());
?>
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Add a User</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<H1>Added to auth_users:</H1>
<P><STRONG>First Name:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "$_POST[f_name]"; ?></p>

<P><STRONG>Last Name:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "$_POST[l_name]"; ?></p>
<P><STRONG>Username:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "$_POST[username]"; ?></p>

<P><STRONG>Password:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "$_POST[password]"; ?></p>
<P><a href="show_adduser.html">Add Another</a></p>
</BODY>
</HTML>

```

Next you test this code by adding some sample users to your table.

## Adding Some Users

The next examples are based on fake users on my server. Your results will vary, depending on what you enter in your table. To get to the user addition form, open your web browser and type

[http://127.0.0.1/show\\_adduser.html](http://127.0.0.1/show_adduser.html).

In my user addition form, I typed information for a user named Joe Webby, with a username of joe and a password of ilikecheese. The completed form looks like the following figure.



After I clicked on the Add User button, the confirmation screen was displayed, as shown in the following figure.



To see an example of how the password hash is stored, use the command-line interface to the MySQL Monitor to view your record. You would see that the password entry says 127493710101bb5a, not ilikecheese.



The screenshot shows a PuTTY terminal window titled "sulley@26.com - PuTTY". The window displays a MySQL monitor session. The user has connected to the "testDB" database and run a query to select all columns from the "auth\_users" table. The output shows one row with columns f\_name, l\_name, username, and password, containing the values Joe, Webby, joe, and a long hex string respectively. The MySQL prompt "mysql>" is visible at the bottom.

```
sulley@26.com - PuTTY
Welcome to the MySQL monitor.  Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 8354 to server version: 4.0.18-max

Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.

mysql> use testDB;
Database changed
mysql> select * from auth_users;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| f_name | l_name | username | password      |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Joe    | Webby  | joe     | 127493710101bb5a |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> ||
```

Continue adding some users on your own, until you have a nice family of users.

## Creating the Login Form

The HTML form will contain just two fields: username and password. Both are required.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and type the following HTML:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Login</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<H1>Login to Secret Area</H1>
```

2. Begin your form. Assume that the method is POST and the action is a script called `do_authuser.php`:

```
<FORM METHOD="POST" ACTION="do_authuser.php">
```

3. Create an input field for the username with a text label:

```
<P><STRONG>Username:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="username" SIZE=25 MAXL
```

4. Create an input field for the password with a text label.

```
<P><STRONG>Password:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="password" NAME="password" SIZE=25 >
```

5. Add a submit button, and then close your form and add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
<P><INPUT TYPE="SUBMIT" NAME="submit" VALUE="Lo
</FORM>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

6. Save the file with the name `show_login.html`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

7. Open your web browser and type

[http://127.0.0.1/show\\_login.html](http://127.0.0.1/show_login.html).



You will see the login form, with text fields for the username and password as well as a submit button.

Next, you create the back-end script for the login form.

# Creating the Authentication Script

The goal of this script is to match the username and password entered in the form with a username and password (in the same record) in the auth\_users table.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. Check that values were actually entered for both. If they weren't, direct the user back to the form and exit the script:

```
if (( !$_POST[username] ) || ( !$_POST[password] ))
    header("Location: show_login.html");
    exit;
}
```

3. Create a variable to hold the name of the database on which the table resides:

```
$db_name = "testDB";
```

4. Create a variable to hold the name of the table you're populating with this script:

```
$table_name = "auth_users";
```

5. Add the connection information as you have been:

```
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike"
    or die(mysql_error()));
```

6. Select the database as you have learned:

```
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) or die(mysql_error());
```

7. Create the SQL statement. The statement is looking for all fields in a record where the username in the table matches the username entered in the form, and the password hash in the table matches a hash of the password entered in the form:

```
$sql = "SELECT * FROM $table_name WHERE username = '$username' AND password = '$password'";
```

```
AND password = password('$_POST[password]')";
```

8. Create a variable to hold the result of the `mysql_query()` function, as you have learned:

```
$result = @mysql_query($sql,$connection) or die
```

9. Check for any results from the query by counting the number of rows returned in the result set:

```
$num = mysql_num_rows($result);
```

10. Start an `if...else` block to deal with your result. If the number of returned rows is more than 1, a match is found. Create a variable to hold an appropriate message:

```
if ($num != 0) {  
    $msg = "<P>Congratulations, you're authori
```

11. If the number of returned rows is 0, no matches are found. In that case, direct the user back to the login form, and then close the `if...else` block:

```
} else {  
    header("Location: show_login.html");  
    exit;  
}
```

12. Close your PHP block and add HTML:

```
?>  
<HTML>  
<HEAD>  
<TITLE>Secret Area</TITLE>  
</HEAD>  
<BODY>
```

13. Display the message:

```
<? echo "$msg"; ?>
```

14. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

15. Save the file with the name `do_authuser.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

Your code should look like this:

```
<?
//check for required fields
if ((!$_POST[username]) || (!$_POST[password])) {
    header("Location: show_login.html");
    exit;
}

//set up names of database and table to use
$db_name = "testDB";
$table_name = "auth_users";

//connect to server and select database
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike", "9s"
    or die(mysql_error()));
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) or die(m
//build and issue the query
$sql = "SELECT * FROM $table_name WHERE username = '$_
    AND password = password('$_POST[password]')";

$result = @mysql_query($sql, $connection) or die(mysql_
    
//get the number of rows in the result set
$num = mysql_num_rows($result);

//print a message or redirect elsewhere, based on resu
if ($num != 0) {
    $msg = "<P>Congratulations, you're authorized!</p
} else {
    header("Location: show_login.html");
    exit;
```

```
}

?>
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Secret Area</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<? echo "$msg"; ?>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

Next, you get to test the login form!

## Trying to Authenticate Yourself

In this section, you attempt to log in as one of the users you added to the `auth_users` table. Your results will vary, depending on the usernames and passwords you're using. To get to the login form, open your web browser and type [http://127.0.0.1/show\\_login.html](http://127.0.0.1/show_login.html).

I first tried to break the authentication routine by entering a bad username and a bad password.



After I clicked on the Login button, I was directed back to the login page, because both the username and password were invalid.

**Note** Any combination of bad username and bad password will cause the authentication to fail.

Then I entered correct values in the Username and Password fields, and after I clicked on the Login button, I saw the success message shown in the following figure.



In the [next chapter](#), you'll be introduced to cookies, and you'll see how to use them in an authentication scheme or just for general user tracking.

## **Chapter 16: Using Cookies**

## Overview

Cookies are great little tools, but they get a bad rap in the press when nasty people misuse them. These little bits of text can make your development life much easier if you use them properly. In this chapter, you learn how to:

- Set a cookie
- Extract data from a cookie
- Amend your user authentication routines to use a cookie

## What are Cookies?

Cookies are pieces of text that are sent to a user's web browser. Cookies can help you create shopping carts, user communities, and personalized sites. It's not recommended that you store sensitive data in a cookie, but you can store a unique identification string that will match a user with data held securely in a database.

Take the shopping example. Suppose you assign an identification variable to a user so that you can track what he does when he visits your site. First, the user logs in, and you send a cookie with variables designed to say, "This is Joe, and Joe is allowed to be here." While Joe is surfing around your site, you can say, "Hello, Joe!" on each and every page. If Joe clicks through your catalog and chooses 14 items to buy, you can keep track of these items and display them all in a bunch when Joe goes to the checkout area.

# Setting Cookies



Before you start setting cookies, determine how you will use them and at what point you will set them. Whatever cookies you decide to set, remember that you absolutely must set a cookie before sending any other content to the browser, because a cookie is actually part of the header information.

If you heed this warning, you won't spend hours wondering why you're getting "Cannot add header information" errors. This sample code does just that.

It produces the error shown in the following figure.

Anytime you see this error, assume that you've sent *something* to the web browser before its time. This can include white space, a line break, or text you can actually see.



The `setcookie()` function, used to set one cookie at a time, expects six arguments:

- **Name.** Holds the name of the variable that is kept in the global `$_COOKIE` and is accessible in subsequent scripts.
- **Value.** The value of the variable passed in the name parameter.
- **Expiration.** Sets a specific time at which the cookie value is no longer accessible. Cookies without a specific expiration time expire when the web browser closes.
- **Path.** Determines for which directories the cookie is valid. If a single slash is in the path parameter, the cookie is valid for all files and directories on the web server. If a specific directory is named, this cookie is valid only for pages within that directory.
- **Domain.** Cookies are valid only for the host and domain that set them. If no domain is specified, the default value is the host name of the server that generated the cookie. The domain parameter must have at least two periods in the string in order to be valid.
- **Security.** If the security parameter is 1, the cookie will only be transmitted via HTTPS, which is to say, over a secure web server.

This next line is an example of a cookie called `id` with a value of `55sds809892jjsj2`. This particular cookie expires in four hours (the current time plus 14,400 seconds), and it is valid for any page below the document root on the domain `yourdomain.com`.

```
setcookie("id", "55sds809892jjsj2", time() + 14400, "/")
```

In the [next section](#), I'll give you a cheat sheet for common values of time. Then you'll move into using cookie variables.

## Counting Time

If you want to specify an expiration date or time, the easiest way is to tell PHP to count forward for you, and then place a value in the expiration slot within the `setcookie()` function. This value should be a Unix time integer (the number of seconds since January 1, 1970), which you can get using the `time()` function with additional seconds added to it.

Setting an expiration date on your cookies builds in some extra assurances of the validity of your users. If you set your cookie without a time limit, it will automatically expire when the users close their browsers. This is useful when users are sharing computers; you don't want the next user to have all the access afforded by the previous user's cookie. Similarly, you might want to set a cookie for only 15 minutes, if you are building an online store that allows you to receive a discount on everything purchased in the first 15 minutes of your users' visits.

[Table 16.1](#) shows some common uses of `time() + n` within the `setcookie()` function.

**Table 16.1: Common Times**

Value	Definition
<code>time() + 60</code>	One minute from the current time
<code>time() + 900</code>	15 minutes from the current time

<code>time() + 1800</code>	30 minutes from the current time
<code>time() + 3600</code>	One hour from the current time
<code>time() + 14400</code>	Four hours from the current time
<code>time() + 43200</code>	12 hours from the current time
<code>time() + 86400</code>	24 hours from the current time
<code>time() + 259200</code>	Three days from the current time
<code>time() + 604800</code>	One week from the current time
<code>time() + 2592000</code>	30 days from the current time

## Setting a Test Cookie

The goal of this little script is just to set a test cookie and then print a message to the screen. Before you start, ensure that you do not have any personal firewall settings blocking incoming cookies. Also, modify your web browser preferences to prompt you before setting cookies. This is the only way to watch a cookie as the server attempts to send it to your browser.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block. Then create a set of variables called `$cookie_name`, `$cookie_value`, `$cookie_expire`, and `$cookie_domain`, and give them the following values:

```
<?
$cookie_name = "test_cookie";
$cookie_value = "test string!";
$cookie_expire = time() + 86400;
$cookie_domain = "127.0.0.1";
```

**Note** Substitute your own domain name for the value of `$cookie_domain`, if you are not using 127.0.0.1 (localhost) as your domain.

2. Use the `setcookie()` function to set this test cookie and then

close the PHP block:

```
setcookie($cookie_name, $cookie_value, $cookie_
$cookie_domain, 0);
?>
```

3. Type the following HTML:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Set Test Cookie</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<h1>Mmmmmmmm...cookie!</h1>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

4. Save the file with the name `setcookie.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.
5. Open your web browser and type  
<http://127.0.0.1/setcookie.php>.

You should see a dialog box prompting you to accept the cookie. The actual dialog box will differ from browser to browser, as will the action buttons.



6. Click on Allow to accept the cookie.

You should see the HTML text.



## Using Cookie Variables

There's an element to using cookies that most people forget about until they spend a few hours trying to debug something that isn't even wrong (I've done this). When a web browser accepts a cookie, you can't extract its value until the next HTTP request is made.

In other words, if you set a cookie called `name` with a value of `Julie` on page 1, you can't extract that value until the user reaches page 2 (or page 5 or page 28—just some other page that isn't the page on which the cookie is initially set).

## Using Cookies with Authentication

In the authentication script in the [previous chapter](#), you had a login form and a results page. However, the authentication was valid only for the result page because it dynamically displayed the secret content (in this case, a `Congratulations!` message). If you want to require authentication for a series of static pages, you have to make some minor adjustments.

1. Open `do_authuser.php` in your text editor.
2. Scroll down to the `if...else` block that deals with the result of the authentication. Add a block that sets a cookie:

```
if ($num != 0) {  
    $cookie_name = "auth";  
    $cookie_value = "ok";  
    $cookie_expire = "0";  
    $cookie_domain = "127.0.0.1";  
    setcookie($cookie_name, $cookie_value, $co  
    "/" , $cookie_domain, 0);
```

**Note** The `setcookie()` function will send a cookie called `auth` with a value of `ok`. It will expire at the end of the browser session and will be valid for all directories on `127.0.0.1`. Use your own domain name if appropriate.

**3. Delete this line:**

```
$msg = "<P>Congratulations, you're authorized!<
```

**4. Add this string:**

```
$display_block = "  
<p><strong>Secret Menu:</strong></p>  
<ul>  
<li><a href=\"secretA.php\">secret page A</a>  
<li><a href=\"secretB.php\">secret page B</a>  
</ul>";
```

**Note** Don't worry; you'll create the pages in this menu soon enough.

**5. Scroll until you see the following code:**

```
<? echo "$msg"; ?>
```

**6. Replace it with this:**

```
<? echo "$display_block"; ?>
```

**7. Save the file.**

Your new code should look like this:

```
<?  
//check for required fields  
if ((!$_POST[username]) || (!$_POST[password])) {  
    header("Location: /show_login.html");  
    exit;  
}  
  
//setup names of database and table to use  
$db_name = "testDB";  
$table_name = "auth_users";  
//connect to server and select database  
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike", "9s"  
    or die(mysql_error()));
```

```
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) or die(mysql_error());  
  
//build and issue query  
$sql = "SELECT * FROM $table_name WHERE  
username = \"$_POST[username]\" AND  
password = password(\"$_POST[password]\")";  
  
$result = @mysql_query($sql) or die (mysql_error());  
  
//get the number of rows in the result set  
$num = mysql_numrows($result);  
  
//print a message and set a cookie if authorized,  
//or redirect elsewhere if unauthorized  
if ($num != 0) {  
    $cookie_name = "auth";  
    $cookie_value = "ok";  
    $cookie_expire = "0";  
    $cookie_domain = "127.0.0.1";  
    setcookie($cookie_name, $cookie_value, $cookie_expire,  
    "/" , $cookie_domain, 0);  
  
    $display_block = "  
    <p><strong>Secret Menu:</strong></p>  
    <ul>  
        <li><a href=\"secretA.php\">secret page A</a>  
        <li><a href=\"secretB.php\">secret page B</a>  
    </ul>";  
} else {  
    header("Location: /show_login.html");  
    exit;  
}  
?  
<HTML>  
<HEAD>  
<TITLE>Secret Area</TITLE>  
</HEAD>
```

```
<BODY>
<? echo "$display_block"; ?>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

Open your web browser and type

[http://127.0.0.1/show\\_login.html](http://127.0.0.1/show_login.html) to get to the login form, and then enter a valid username and password. If you still have your preferences set to warn before accepting cookies, you'll see a dialog box with cookie information in it.

After you click on Yes (or OK, depending on the dialog box), the new menu will be displayed:



## Checking for the Authentication Cookie

The secret menu contains links to two files: `secretA.php` and `secretB.php`. By adding a snippet of code to the beginning of these pages, you can check for an authorized user.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. Start an if...else block to check the value of `$_COOKIE[auth]`. The value must be `ok` for the user to be an authorized user:

```
if ($_COOKIE[auth] == "ok") {
```

3. Create a value to hold a success message:

```
$msg = "<P>Welcome to secret page A, authorized
```

4. Continue the if...else statement to account for an unauthorized visitor. An unauthorized user will be redirected to the login form:

```
} else {  
    header("Location: /show_login.html");  
    exit;  
}
```

**Note** A unauthorized visitor is one who attempts to access `secretA.php` directly without going through the authentication process.

5. Close the PHP block and type the following HTML:

```
?>  
<HTML>  
<HEAD>  
<TITLE>Secret Page A</TITLE>  
</HEAD>  
<BODY>
```

6. Display the message:

```
<? echo "$msg"; ?>
```

7. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>  
</HTML>
```

8. Save the file with the name `secretA.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

The contents of `secretB.php` should be nearly identical to `secretA.php`, so create another file just like `secretA.php`, only change "A" to "B" in the messaging.

It's time for some tests. Unless your browser crashed, you should still be logged in (the `auth` cookie hasn't expired), and you should have the secret menu in front of you.

Click on the link for secret page A. You should see the success message shown in the following figure.

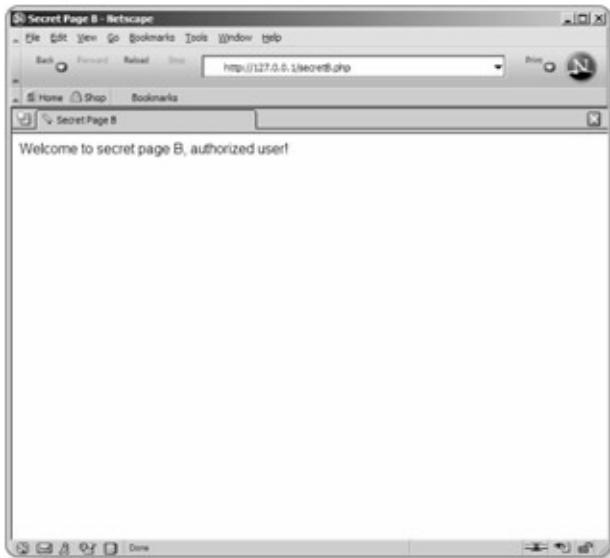
Now exit completely out of your web browser. This includes closing all browser windows and your mail client (if it's integrated). The `auth` cookie should now have expired (there's nothing to see; it just goes away).



1. Reopen your web browser, and attempt to directly access `secretB.php` by typing [`http://127.0.0.1/secretB.php`](http://127.0.0.1/secretB.php).
2. Because you are not an authorized user anymore, you should be redirected to the login screen. Go ahead and log back in as an authorized user, and accept the cookie.

3. Click on the link for secret page B.

You should see the success message now shown in the following figure.



Thus concludes a brief, yet useful introduction to user authentication.

## **Chapter 17: Session Basics**

## Overview

Sessions are like cookies on steroids. Using sessions, you can maintain user-specific information without setting multiple cookies, or even using a database. In this chapter, you learn how to:

- Start a session
- Add a variable to the `$_SESSION` superglobal
- Enable a per-user access count
- Maintain user preferences throughout multiple pages

## Before You Begin...Checking `php.ini`

Before you start working with sessions, check a value in your `php.ini` file. Look for this section of text and read it carefully:

```
; Argument passed to save_handler. In the case of file  
; where data files are stored. Note: Windows users have  
; variable in order to use PHP's session functions.  
[much more explanatory text skipped]  
session.save_path = /tmp
```

What the text in the `php.ini` file says is, essentially, that you must modify the value of `session.save_path` so that the file can be written to a directory that exists. This change primarily affects Windows users, and the modification is simple.

Enter a directory name after the `=` for `session.save_path`. For example, my `php.ini` file on Windows contains this:

```
session.save_path = c:\temp
```

After making the change, restart Apache so that the change takes effect. If you are using Linux/Unix, `/tmp` is a standard directory, and you can leave this alone unless you want to change it for some compelling reason.

## What's a Session?

In terms of time, a *session* is the amount of time during which a user visits a site. In the programming world, a session is kind of like a big blob that can hold all sorts of variables and values.

- This blob has an identification string, such as 940f8b05a40d5119c030c9c7745aead9.
- This identification string is automatically sent to the user when a session is initiated, in a cookie called `PHPSESSID` (accessible via `$_COOKIE[PHPSESSID]`).
- On the server side, a matching temporary file is created with the same name (940f8b05a40d5119c030c9c7745aead9).

# Understanding Session Variables

In the temporary session file on the web server, session variables (and their values) are stored. Because these values and variables are not kept in a database, no additional system resources are required to connect to and extract information from database tables. You can access session variables through the `$_SESSION` superglobal.

For example, a temporary session file might contain the following:

```
count|s:7:"76";
valid|s:7:"yes";
```

In this example, `count` and `valid` are the names of the session variables, and `76` and `yes` are their respective values. However, to output the variable in the session, you must first explicitly add it to the `$_SESSION` superglobal. Once it is added, you can extract the value (using `$_SESSION[count]` or `$_SESSION[valid]`, in this example).

When you attempt to retrieve a session variable, the sequence goes something like this (say you're trying to get the value of `$_SESSION[count]`):

1. The PHP parser gets the value of `$_COOKIE[PHPSESSID]` from the user cookie.
2. The PHP parser finds a matching temporary session file.
3. Inside the session file, the PHP parser looks for `count` and then finds its value (say, `76`).
4. `$_SESSION[count]` is equal to `76`.

Next, you start your own per-user counter script using a session.

## Starting a Session

Starting a session is a snap. You just call the `session_start()` function, and PHP takes care of the rest, sending the cookie and creating

the temporary file.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block, and then call the `session_start()` function:

```
<?
session_start();
```

**Note** The `session_start()` function actually performs several important tasks. First, it determines whether a session has been started for the current user, and it starts one if necessary. It also alerts the PHP engine that session variables and other session-related functions will be used within the specific script.

Because of the dual purpose of `session_start()`, use it at the beginning of all session-related scripts.

2. Create a string to hold a message, and then close the PHP block:

```
$msg = "started a session....";
?>
```

3. Type the following HTML:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Start a Session</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
```

4. Display the message string:

```
<? echo "$msg"; ?>
```

5. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

6. Save the file with the name `session.php`, and place this file in

the document root of your web server.

7. Open your web browser and type  
<http://127.0.0.1/session.php>.



If you still have your preferences set to warn before accepting cookies, you'll see a dialog box like this figure (or one appropriate to your browser).

After you click on Allow, the message will be displayed.



How inspiring was that? In the [next section](#), you register an actual value and watch it change during the course of your session.

## Registering and Modifying Session Variables

The goal of this script is to register a variable and change its value during the course of a user session.

1. Open a new file in your text editor, start a PHP block, and call the `session_start()` function:

```
<?
session_start();
```

2. Register a variable called `count`:

```
session_register('count');
```

**Note** Now, for as long as this session exists, a variable called `$_SESSION['count']` will be available. Currently, the variable has no value.

3. Increment the value of `$_SESSION['count']` to account for the current access:

```
$_SESSION[count]++;
```

4. Create a string to hold a message, including the value of  
\$\_SESSION[count]:

```
$msg = "<P>You've been here $_SESSION[count] times!"
```

5. Close the PHP block and type the following HTML:

```
?>
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Count Me!</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
```

6. Display the message string:

```
<? echo "$msg"; ?>
```

7. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

8. Save the file with the name `countme.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

9. Open your web browser and type

<http://127.0.0.1/countme.php>.

Unless you closed your web browser between the last script and now, your old session will still be active and you won't see the cookie approval dialog box. You should just see the following figure.



Reload the page several times, and watch how the counter increments by one after each reload. For example, I reloaded the page eight times and finally saw the figure shown on the next page.



In the [next section](#), you handle more than just an access count— you set and display user preferences during a user session.

# Managing User Preferences with Sessions

Moving beyond the simple access counter, you can use sessions to manage your users' preferences when they visit your site. In this three-step example, you'll start a session, ask a user for her font family and base font size preferences, display those preferences on subsequent pages, and allow the user to change her mind and reset the values.

## Starting a Session and Registering Defaults

In this script, you'll start a session and register the `font_family` and `font_size` variables. The displayed HTML will be a form that allows you to change your preferences.

1. Open a new file in your text editor, start a PHP block, and call the `session_start()` function:

```
<?
session_start();
```

2. Start an `[if...else]` block to check for any previous values for `font_family` and `font_size`. If values are not present in the current session, assign default values and add them:

```
if ((!$_SESSION[font_family]) || (!$_SESSION[fo:
    $font_family = "sans-serif";
    $font_size = "10";
    $_SESSION[font_family] = $font_family;
    $_SESSION[font_size] = $font_size;
```

3. If previous values do exist, extract the values from the `$_SESSION` superglobal:

```
} else {
    $font_family = $_SESSION[font_family];
    $font_size = $_SESSION[font_size];
}
```

**Note** Because the user will come back to this script to reset her display preferences, you have to take into account the fact that the values of the variables must always be extracted from the session itself.

If you simply added the variables to a session without checking for previous values, each time the page was loaded, the value of these variables would be overwritten as an empty string.

4. Close the PHP block and type the following HTML:

```
?>
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>My Display Preferences</TITLE>
```

5. Create a style sheet block, starting with the opening `<STYLE>` tag:

```
<STYLE type="text/css">
```

6. Add a style sheet entry for the `BODY`, `P`, and `A` tags. Mingle HTML and PHP to display the current values of `$font_family` and `$font_size`:

```
BODY, P, A {font-family:<? echo "$font_family"; ?>;
font-size:<? echo "$font_size"; ?>pt;font-weigh
```

7. Add a style sheet entry for the `H1` tag. Mingle HTML and PHP to display the value of `$font_family` and a modified value of `$font_size` (base value plus 4):

```
H1 {font-family:<? echo "$font_family"; ?>;
font-size:<? echo $font_size + 4; ?>pt;font-wei
```

8. Close the `</STYLE>` tag and continue with the HTML, adding a heading and beginning a form. Assume that the form method is `POST` and the action is `session02.php`:

```
</STYLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<H1>Set Your Display Preferences</H1>
<FORM METHOD="POST" ACTION="session02.php">
```

9. Create a set of radio buttons from which the user can choose a new font family:

```
<P>Pick a Font Family:<br>
<input type="radio" name="sel_font_family" value="serif">
<input type="radio" name="sel_font_family" value="sans-serif" checked>
<input type="radio" name="sel_font_family" value="cursive">
<input type="radio" name="sel_font_family" value="fantasy">
<input type="radio" name="sel_font_family" value="monospace">
</p>
```

10. Create a set of radio buttons from which the user can choose a new base font size:

```
<P>Pick a Base Font Size:<br>
<input type="radio" name="sel_font_size" value="xx-small">
<input type="radio" name="sel_font_size" value="x-small">
<input type="radio" name="sel_font_size" value="small">
<input type="radio" name="sel_font_size" value="medium">
<input type="radio" name="sel_font_size" value="large">
<input type="radio" name="sel_font_size" value="x-large">
<input type="radio" name="sel_font_size" value="xx-large">
</p>
```

11. Add a submit button and close the form:

```
<P><input type="submit" name="submit" value="Select Preferences">
</FORM>
```

12. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

13. Save the file with the name `session01.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

Your entire code should look like this:

```
<?
//start a session
session_start();
//check for stored values and register defaults
if ((!$_SESSION[font_family]) || (!$_SESSION[font_size])
    $font_family = "sans-serif";
    $font_size = "10";
    $_SESSION[font_family] = $font_family;
    $_SESSION[font_size] = $font_size;
} else {
    //extract from $_SESSION superglobal if exist
    $font_family = $_SESSION[font_family];
    $font_size = $_SESSION[font_size];
}
?>
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>My Display Preferences</TITLE>
<STYLE type="text/css">
BODY, P, A {font-family:<? echo "$font_family"; ?>;
font-size:<? echo "$font_size"; ?>pt;font-weight:normal;
H1 {font-family:<? echo "$font_family"; ?>;
font-size:<? echo $font_size + 4; ?>pt;font-weight:bold;
</STYLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<H1>Set Your Display Preferences</H1>
<FORM METHOD="POST" ACTION="session02.php">
<P>Pick a Font Family:<br>
<input type="radio" name="sel_font_family" value="serif">
<input type="radio" name="sel_font_family" value="sans-serif" checked> sans-serif
<input type="radio" name="sel_font_family" value="Courier">
<input type="radio" name="sel_font_family" value="WingDings">
</p>
<P>Pick a Base Font Size:<br>
```

```

<input type="radio" name="sel_font_size" value="8"> 8pt
<input type="radio" name="sel_font_size" value="10" checked="checked"/>
<input type="radio" name="sel_font_size" value="12"> 12pt
<input type="radio" name="sel_font_size" value="14"> 14pt
</p>
<P><input type="submit" name="submit" value="Set Display Preferences" />
</FORM>
</BODY>
</HTML>

```

Now open your web browser and type  
<http://127.0.0.1/session01.php>.

Unless you closed your web browser between the last script and now, your old session will still be active and you won't see the cookie approval dialog box. You should just see the following figure.



In the [next section](#), you create the script that handles the preference changes.

## Making Preference Changes

In this script, you assign the new values for `font_family` and

`font_size`, and display a confirmation that the changes have been made.

1. Open a new file in your text editor, start a PHP block, and call the `session_start()` function:

```
<?
session_start();
```

2. Start an `if...else` block to check for the posted valued for `font_family` and `font_size`. If values are present, add them in the session:

```
if (( $_POST[sel_font_family]) && ($_POST[sel_fo
    $font_family = $_POST[sel_font_family];
    $font_size = $_POST[sel_font_size];
    $_SESSION[font_family] = $font_family;
    $_SESSION[font_size] = $font_size;
```

3. Continue the block to check for previously stored values for `font_family` and `font_size`, but only if the posted values are not present:

```
} else if (((!$_POST[sel_font_family]) && (!$_P
    && ($_SESSION[font_family]) && ($_SESSION
    $font_family = $_SESSION[font_family];
    $font_size = $_SESSION[font_size];
    $_SESSION[font_family] = $font_family;
    $_SESSION[font_size] = $font_size;
```

4. Finally, if values are not present from the form or from a previous session, define and add some defaults:

```
} else {
    $font_family = "sans-serif";
    $font_size = "10";
    $_SESSION[font_family] = $font_family;
    $_SESSION[font_size] = $font_size;
}
```

5. Close the PHP block and type the following HTML:

```
?>
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>My Display Preferences</TITLE>
```

6. Create a style sheet block, starting with the opening <STYLE> tag:

```
<STYLE type="text/css">
```

7. Add a style sheet entry for the BODY, P, and A tags. Mingle HTML and PHP to display the current value of \$font\_family and \$font\_size:

```
BODY, P, A {font-family:<? echo "$font_family"; ?>pt;font-weigh
```

8. Add a style sheet entry for the H1 tag. Mingle HTML and PHP to display the value of \$font\_family and a modified value of \$font\_size (base value plus 4):

```
H1 {font-family:<? echo "$font_family"; ?>; font-size:<? echo $font_size + 4; ?>pt;font-wei
```

9. Close the </STYLE> tag and continue with the HTML, displaying the values of the two registered session variables:

```
</STYLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<H1>Your Preferences Have Been Set</H1>
<P>As you can see, your selected font family is
<? echo "$font_family"; ?>, with a base size
of <? echo "$font_size" ?> pt.</p>
```

10. Provide a link back to session01.php in case the user wants to change preferences again, and then add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
<P>Please feel free to <a href="session01.php">
```

```
preferences</a> again.</p>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

11. Save the file with the name `session02.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

Your entire code should look like this:

```
<?
//start a session
session_start();
//check for posted values and register defaults
if (($_POST[sel_font_family]) && ($_POST[sel_font_size]
    $font_family = $_POST[sel_font_family];
    $font_size = $_POST[sel_font_size];
    $_SESSION[font_family] = $font_family;
    $_SESSION[font_size] = $font_size;
//check for stored values, extract from $_SESSION supe
} else if (((!$_POST[sel_font_family]) && (!$_POST[sel_
    && ($_SESSION[font_family]) && ($_SESSION[font_
    $font_family = $_SESSION[font_family];
    $font_size = $_SESSION[font_size];
    $_SESSION[font_family] = $font_family;
    $_SESSION[font_size] = $font_size;

//register defaults
} else {
    $font_family = "sans-serif";
    $font_size = "10";
    $_SESSION[font_family] = $font_family;
    $_SESSION[font_size] = $font_size;
}
?>
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>My Display Preferences</TITLE>
```

```

<STYLE type="text/css">
BODY, P, A {font-family:<? echo "$font_family"; ?>;
    font-size:<? echo "$font_size"; ?>pt;font-weight:;
H1 {font-family:<? echo "$font_family"; ?>;
    font-size:<? echo $font_size + 4; ?>pt;font-weight:
</STYLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<H1>Your Preferences Have Been Set</H1>
<P>As you can see, your selected font family is now <?
    ?, with a base size of <? echo "$font_size" ?> p
<P>Please feel free to <a href="session01.php">change
    again.</p>
</BODY>
</HTML>

```

Unless you closed your web browser between the last script and now, you should still be staring at the font family and font size selection form.

1. Select sans-serif for the font family.
2. Select 14pt for the base font size.
3. Click on the Set Display Preferences button.



The page is displayed using your selected font family and base font size, and the changes are confirmed.

## Displaying Changes

This is getting fun! With your web browser still open to the confirmation screen for the initial preference changes, click on the change your preferences link.

The selection form is also displayed using your new font family and base font size. Then, follow these steps:

1. Select Courier for the font family.
2. Select 8pt for the base font size.
3. Click on the Set Display Preferences button.



The page is displayed using your selected font family and base font size, and accompanying text also indicates the changes have been made. Again, click on the change your preferences link to see that the selection form is displayed using your new font family and base font size.



Continue changing the font family and sizes, and you'll quickly discover which preferences you like and which are simply annoying! Play around with the script, changing the fonts to others available on your system, or even add other font attributes to your form and accompanying style sheet, such as italic, bold, underline and so forth. Although the purpose of this script is to get a feel for how user-specific elements can be stored in session variables, you can also take the opportunity to explore more about the dynamic display of content.

## **Part VI: Creating Your Own Contact Management System**

## **Chapter List**

[Chapter 18:](#) Planning Your System

[Chapter 19:](#) Adding Contacts

[Chapter 20:](#) Modifying Contacts

[Chapter 21:](#) Deleting Contacts

[Chapter 22:](#) Working with Contacts

## **Chapter 18: Planning Your System**

## Overview

The first step in good application design is having a plan. Although improvisation along the way is sometimes a good thing, it's best to start with a solid foundation and a series of goals. The next several chapters will help you create a simple contact-management system—basically, an online address book. In this chapter, you learn how to:

- Define administrative tasks and create a menu
- Modify the table-creation script sequence to account for primary keys and auto-incrementing fields
- Define and create the `my_contacts` table

# Planning and Creating the Administration Menu

Not only will you be able to view data within your system, but you'll also be able to add, modify, and delete contacts. A menu would be good idea —one that provides links to all your action scripts, and that adds some authentication to the mix so that only you can see the data. Now create all that in one script!

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block. Then, start a session, or continue a session if it currently exists:

```
<?
session_start();
```

2. Start an `if...else` block that checks for the value of the `$_POST[op]` variable, which will be a hidden variable in the login form you'll soon create:

```
if ($_POST[op] == "ds") {
```

3. If the value of `$_POST[op]` is `ds`, the user has completed the form. Start another `if...else` block that checks the validity of the username and password entered by the user:

```
if (( $_POST[username] != "admin" ) || ( $_POST[pa
```

**Note** You can use any username and password you want. This script is hard-coded to check that the username is `admin` and that the password is `abc123`.

4. If either the username or password is incorrect, create a variable called `$msg` to hold an error message:

```
$msg = "<P><font color=\"#FF0000\"><strong>Bad :  
Try Again</strong></font></P>";
```

5. Create a variable called `$show_form`, and give it a value of `yes`. This value will be checked later in the script to determine what to display:

```
$show_form = "yes";
```

6. Continue the if...else statement:

```
} else {
```

7. If the user makes it this far, the username and password are correct. So, store a value of yes in the session variable called \$\_SESSION[valid]:

```
$_SESSION[valid] = "yes";
```

8. Create a variable called \$show\_menu and give it a value of yes. This value will be checked later in the script to determine what to display:

```
$show_menu = "yes";
```

9. Close the inner if...else block:

```
}
```

10. Continue the outer if...else block:

```
} else {
```

11. If the user is within this section of the outer if...else block, he has reached this script without going through the form. Check for the value of \$\_SESSION[valid], and determine what to show—menu or form:

```
if ($_SESSION[valid] == "yes") {  
    $show_menu = "yes";  
} else {  
    $show_form = "yes";  
}
```

12. Close the outer if...else block:

```
}
```

13. Create the form block, which will be shown if the user has not

logged in or if the login is incorrect. Start by creating the variable and printing a header:

```
$form_block = "<h1>Login</h1>
```

14. Start the form. In this case, the method is POST and the action is a variable called \$\_SERVER[PHP\_SELF]:

```
<form method=POST action=\"$_SERVER[PHP_SELF]\">
```

**Note** \$\_SERVER[PHP\_SELF] is a global variable whose value is equal to the name of the current script. By using \$\_SERVER[PHP\_SELF] as a form action, you're essentially saying, "When the submit button is clicked, reload me!"

15. Print the value of \$msg:

```
$msg
```

**Note** If the login is incorrect, \$msg will contain a value, and that value will be printed in this space. If \$msg was not created or a value was not given, nothing will be printed, so it doesn't hurt anything by being present all the time.

16. Create input fields for the username and password with text labels:

```
<P><strong>username:</strong><br>
<input type=\"text\" name=\"username\" size=15>
<P><strong>password:</strong><br>
<input type=\"password\" name=\"password\" size=15>
```

17. Add the hidden field for op:

```
<input type=\"hidden\" name=\"op\" value=\"ds\">
```

18. Add the submit button, and close the form and string:

```
<P><input type="submit" name="submit" value:</FORM>";
```

19. Create the menu block, which will be shown if a user has logged in and is valid. Start by creating the variable and printing a header:

```
$menu_block = "<h1>My Contact Administration Sy</h1>";
```

20. Add several menu items, and then close the string:

```
<P><strong>Administration</strong>
<ul>
<li><a href="show_addcontact.php">Add a Contact</a>
<li><a href="pick_modcontact.php">Modify a Contact</a>
<li><a href="pick_delcontact.php">Delete a Contact</a>
</ul>
<P><strong>View Records</strong>
<ul>
<li><a href="show_contactsbyname.php">Show Contacts</a>
</ul>";
```

21. Use an `if...else` block to perform a final check to see which should be displayed—`$form_block` or `$menu_block`. Whichever should be displayed should be the value of a new variable called `$display_block`:

```
if ($show_form == "yes") {
    $display_block = $form_block;
} else if ($show_menu == "yes") {
    $display_block = $menu_block;
}
```

22. Close your PHP block and add HTML:

```
?>
<HTML>
<HEAD>
```

```
<TITLE>My Contact Management System</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
```

23. Display the results:

```
<? echo "$display_block"; ?>
```

24. Add some more HTML to make a valid document:

```
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

25. Save the file with the name `contact_menu.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

You just created a heck of a lot of code. It should look something like this:

```
<?
//start a session
session_start();

//check if user is coming from a form
if ($_POST[op] == "ds") {
    //check username and password
    if (( $_POST[username] != "admin") || ( $_POST[pass]
        //handle bad login
        $msg = "<P><font color=\\"#FF0000\\"><strong>B
        Try Again</strong></font></P>";
        $show_form = "yes";
} else {

    //handle good login
    $_SESSION[valid] = "yes";
    $show_menu = "yes";

}
} else {
    //determine what to show
    if ($valid == "yes") {
```

```

        $show_menu = "yes";
    } else {
        $show_form = "yes";

    }
}

//build form block
$form_block = "<h1>Login</h1>
<form method=POST  action=\"$_SERVER[PHP_SELF]\">
$msg
<P><strong>username:</strong><br>
<input type=\"text\" name=\"username\" size=15 maxlen=15>
<P><strong>password:</strong><br>
<input type=\"password\" name=\"password\" size=15 maxlen=15>
<input type=\"hidden\" name=\"op\" value=\"ds\">
<P><input type=\"submit\" name=\"submit\" value=\"log in\" type=submit>
</FORM>";

//build menu block
$menu_block = "<h1>My Contact Administration System</h1>
<P><strong>Administration</strong>
<ul>
<li><a href=\"show_addcontact.php\">Add a Contact</a>
<li><a href=\"pick_modcontact.php\">Modify a Contact</a>
<li><a href=\"pick_delcontact.php\">Delete a Contact</a>
</ul>

<P><strong>View Records</strong>
<ul>
<li><a href=\"show_contactsbyname.php\">Show Contacts, by Name</a>
</ul>";

//assign the block to show to the $display_block variable
if ($show_form == "yes") {
    $display_block = $form_block;
} else if ($show_menu == "yes") {
    $display_block = $menu_block;
}

```

```
?>
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>My Contact Management System</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<? echo "$display_block"; ?>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

## Logging in to the Administration Menu

Now try to log in to the administration menu, using the hard-coded username and password from the script.

1. Open your web browser and type  
[http://127.0.0.1/contact\\_menu.php](http://127.0.0.1/contact_menu.php).

You will see the login form with text fields for the username and password, as well as a submit button.



2. Type a bad username and/or a bad password in the appropriate fields, and then click on the login button.

You will see the login form again, with a red error message displayed.

3. Type the correct username (`admin`) and the correct password (`abc123`), and then click on the login button.



You will see the Administrative Menu for your contact management system.

In the [next section](#), you'll take a step back and create the `my_contacts` table so that you can perform all the tasks listed in this fancy administration menu!



## Defining the `my_contacts` Table

Take a moment to think about the kinds of things you'd want in a contact management system: names, addresses, telephone numbers of all sorts, e-mail addresses, and maybe even the person's birthday.

I thought about what I wanted for my own table, which I've decided to call `my_contacts`. This information appears in [Table 18.1](#).

**Table 18.1: Fields for `my_contacts`**

Field Name	Description
<code>id</code>	Creates a unique ID number for the entry
<code>f_name</code>	The person's first name
<code>l_name</code>	The person's last name
<code>address1</code>	First line of the address
<code>address2</code>	Second line of the address
<code>address3</code>	Third line of the address
<code>postcode</code>	ZIP or postal code
<code>country</code>	Country in which the person resides
<code>prim_tel</code>	Primary telephone number
<code>sec_tel</code>	Secondary telephone number
<code>email</code>	E-mail address
<code>birthday</code>	The person's birthday

In the [next section](#), you'll modify the table-creation scripts from [Chapter 12](#), "Creating a Database Table." You'll add the capability to name primary keys and auto-incrementing fields.

## Modifying the Table-Creation Scripts

With a few minor modifications to two of the three scripts in the table-creation sequence from [Chapter 12](#), you can add check boxes to the form to handle primary keys and auto-incrementing fields. These types of fields are incredibly useful for ID fields.

1. Open `do_showfielddef.php` in your text editor and find the section of `$form_block` that prints table headings, and add the following before the end of the row:

```
<TH>PRIMARY KEY?</TH><TH>AUTO-INCREMENT?</TH>
```

2. In the `$form_block` within the `for` loop, the next-to-last line prints a text field with a name of `field_length[]`. After that line, and before the end of the table row, add these two lines:

```
<TD ALIGN= CENTER><INPUT TYPE= \"checkbox\" NAME= VALUE= \"Y\"></TD>
<TD ALIGN= CENTER><INPUT TYPE= \"checkbox\" NAME= VALUE= \"Y\"></TD>
```

3. Save this file.

Your modified code for this script should look something like this:

```
<?
//validate important input
if ((!$_POST[table_name]) || (!$_POST[num_fields])) {
    header("Location: http://127.0.0.1/show_createtab");
    exit;
}
//begin creating form for display
$form_block =
<FORM METHOD= \"POST\" ACTION= \"do_createtable.php\">
<INPUT TYPE= \"hidden\" NAME= \"table_name\" VALUE= \"$_P
<TABLE CELLSPACING=5 CELLPADDING=5>
<TR>
<TH>FIELD NAME</TH><TH>FIELD TYPE</TH><TH>FIELD LENGTH
<TH>PRIMARY KEY?</TH><TH>AUTO-INCREMENT?</TH></TR>";
```

```

//count from 0 until you reach the number of fields
for ($i = 0; $i < ${_POST[num_fields]}; $i++) {
    //add to the form, one row for each field
    $form_block .= "<TR>
<TD ALIGN= CENTER><INPUT TYPE= \"text\""
NAME= \"field_name[]\" SIZE= \"30\"></TD>
<TD ALIGN= CENTER>
<SELECT NAME= \"field_type[]\">
    <OPTION VALUE= \"char\">char</OPTION>
    <OPTION VALUE= \"date\">date</OPTION>
    <OPTION VALUE= \"float\">float</OPTION>
    <OPTION VALUE= \"int\">int</OPTION>
    <OPTION VALUE= \"text\">text</OPTION>
    <OPTION VALUE= \"varchar\">varchar</OPTION>
</SELECT>
</TD>
<TD ALIGN= CENTER><INPUT TYPE= \"text\""
NAME= \"field_length[]\" SIZE= \"5\"></TD>
<TD ALIGN= CENTER><INPUT TYPE= \"checkbox\""
NAME= \"primary[]\" VALUE= \"Y\"></TD>
<TD ALIGN= CENTER><INPUT TYPE= \"checkbox\""
NAME= \"auto_increment[]\" VALUE= \"Y\"></TD>
</TR>";
}

//finish up the form
$form_block .= "<TR>
<TD ALIGN= CENTER COLSPAN=3><INPUT TYPE= \"submit\" VALU
</TR>
</TABLE>
</FORM>";
?>
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Create a Database Table: Step 2</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>

```

```
<H1>Define fields for <? echo "$_POST[table_name]"; ?>
<? echo "$form_block"; ?>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

Next, you will modify the final part of the table-creation script.

1. Open `do_createtable.php` in your text editor.
2. Within the `for` loop, the first line appends text to the `$sql` variable, which holds the SQL statement for table creation. Because you've added two check boxes for additional elements of the SQL statement, you need to check for them. Start by creating an `if...else` block that checks whether the `auto_increment` check box has been checked:

```
if ($_POST[auto_increment][$i] == "Y") {
```

3. If the `auto_increment` check box has been checked, create a variable to hold additional SQL options:

```
$additional = "NOT NULL auto_increment";
```

**Note** When you define a field as `auto_increment`, it must also be defined as `NOT NULL`.

4. If the `auto_increment` check box hasn't been checked, create the variable but do not place any text in it, and then close the block. This will assist in resetting the value of the string to an empty value as the looping continues:

```
} else {
    $additional = "";
}
```

5. Create an `if...else` block that checks whether the primary key check box has been checked:

```
if ($_POST[primary][$i] == "Y") {
```

6. If the primary key check box has been checked, append the primary key syntax to the \$additional variable:

```
$additional .= ", primary key (".$_POST[field_n
```

**Note** The syntax for naming a field as a primary key is separated by a comma from the initial field definition. It looks something like this:

```
primary key (field_name)
```

7. If the primary key check box hasn't been checked, append an empty value to the \$additional value, and then close the block:

```
} else {  
    $additional = "";  
}
```

8. The last change is to the preexisting loop that checks for field length and creates part of the SQL statement. Find the line that looks like this:

```
$sql .= " (".$_POST[field_length][$i].") ,";
```

9. Change the line so that it looks like the following. This ensures that the \$additional string is placed in the proper section of the SQL statement:

```
$sql .= " (".$_POST[field_length][$i].") $addit
```

10. Similarly, find a line that looks like this:

```
$sql .= ", ";
```

11. Change the line so that it looks like the following:

```
$sql .= " $additional ,";
```

12. Save the file.

Your modified code for this script should look something like this:

```
<?
//indicate the database you want to use
$db_name = "testDB";

//connect to database
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike", "9s"
    or die(mysql_error()));
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) or die(m

//start creating the SQL statement
$sql = "CREATE TABLE $_POST[table_name] (";

//continue the SQL statement for each new field
for ($i = 0; $i < count($_POST[field_name]); $i++) {
    $sql .= $_POST[field_name][$i]." ".$_POST[field_t

        if ($_POST[auto_increment][$i] == "Y") {
            $additional = "NOT NULL auto_increment";
        } else {
            $additional = "";
        }
        if ($_POST[primary][$i] == "Y") {
            $additional .= ", primary key (". $_POST[fiel
        } else {
            $additional = "";
        }

        if ($_POST[field_length][$i] != "") {
            $sql .= " (".$_POST[field_length][$i].") $ad
        } else {
            $sql .= " $additional ,";
        }
    }
}

//clean up the end of the string
```

```

$sql = substr($sql, 0, -1);
$sql .= ")";

//execute the query
$result = mysql_query($sql,$connection) or die(mysql_error());

//get a good message for display upon success
if ($result) {
    $msg = "<P>".$_POST[table_name]." has been created";
}
?>
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Create a Database Table: Step 3</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<h1>Adding table to <? echo "$db_name"; ?>...</h1>
<? echo "$msg"; ?>
</BODY>
</HTML>

```

In the [next section](#), you use these new scripts to create the my\_contacts table.

## Creating the my\_contacts Table

It's time to create the my\_contacts table, complete with one primary key and auto-incrementing field!

1. Open your web browser and type  
[http://127.0.0.1/show\\_createtable.html](http://127.0.0.1/show_createtable.html).
2. In the Table Name field, type **my\_contacts**.
3. In the Number of Fields field, type **12**.
4. Click on the Go to Step 2 button.

You will see a form with 12 rows, corresponding to the 12 fields you want to create in the `my_contacts` table. Populate the fields in these next steps:

FIELD NAME	FIELD TYPE	FIELD LENGTH	PRIMARY KEY?	AUTO-INCREMENT?
	char	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	char	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	char	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	char	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	char	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	char	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	char	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	char	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	char	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	char	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	char	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

1. In the first row, type `id` for the Field Name, select `int` from the Field Type drop-down menu, check the check box for Primary Key, and check the check box for Auto-Increment.
2. In the second row, type `f_name` for the Field Name, select `varchar` from the Field Type drop-down menu, and specify a Field Length of 75.
3. In the third row, type `l_name` for the Field Name, select `varchar` from the Field Type drop-down menu, and specify a Field Length of 75.
4. In the fourth row, type `address1` for the Field Name, select `varchar` from the Field Type drop-down menu, and specify a Field Length of 100.
5. In the fifth row, type `address2` for the Field Name, select

`varchar` from the Field Type drop-down menu, and specify a Field Length of 100.

6. In the sixth row, type **address3** for the Field Name, select `varchar` from the Field Type drop-down menu, and specify a Field Length of 100.
7. In the seventh row, type **postcode** for the Field Name, select `varchar` from the Field Type drop-down menu, and specify a Field Length of 25.
8. In the eighth row, type **country** for the Field Name, select `varchar` from the Field Type drop-down menu, and specify a Field Length of 100.
9. In the ninth row, type **prim\_tel** for the Field Name, select `varchar` from the Field Type drop-down menu, and specify a Field Length of 35.
10. In the tenth row, type **sec\_tel** for the Field Name, select `varchar` from the Field Type drop-down menu, and specify a Field Length of 35.
11. In the eleventh row, type **email** for the Field Name, select `varchar` from the Field Type drop-down menu, and specify a Field Length of 100.
12. In the twelfth row, type **birthday** for the Field Name and select `date` from the Field Type drop-down menu.

The completed form should look like the following figure.

Click on the Create Table button to create the `my_contacts` table.

Create a Database Table: Step 2 - Netscape

Define fields for my\_contacts

FIELD NAME	FIELD TYPE	FIELD LENGTH	PRIMARY KEY?	AUTO-INCREMENT?
<input type="text" value="id"/>	<input type="button" value="int"/>	<input type="text" value=""/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="text" value="f_name"/>	<input type="button" value="varchar"/>	<input type="text" value="75"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="text" value="l_name"/>	<input type="button" value="varchar"/>	<input type="text" value="75"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="text" value="address1"/>	<input type="button" value="varchar"/>	<input type="text" value="100"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="text" value="address2"/>	<input type="button" value="varchar"/>	<input type="text" value="100"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="text" value="address3"/>	<input type="button" value="varchar"/>	<input type="text" value="100"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="text" value="postcode"/>	<input type="button" value="varchar"/>	<input type="text" value="25"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="text" value="country"/>	<input type="button" value="varchar"/>	<input type="text" value="100"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="text" value="prim_tel"/>	<input type="button" value="varchar"/>	<input type="text" value="35"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="text" value="sec_tel"/>	<input type="button" value="varchar"/>	<input type="text" value="35"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="text" value="email"/>	<input type="button" value="varchar"/>	<input type="text" value="100"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="text" value="birthday"/>	<input type="button" value="date"/>	<input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Create a Database Table: Step 3 - Netscape

Adding table to testDB...

my\_contacts has been created!

**Note** This is a very generic schema for an address book, and obviously you can see where it could be tightened up and made more specific. For example, if you knew your address book was United States-only, you could change the address fields to be two address fields, a two-character state field, and a 10-character ZIP code field. The more you know about the data you want to hold in your table, the more precisely you can define it. In this case, the goal is simply to learn the process in general, and in general this is an adequate—if not a little loose—table structure. After mastering it, branch out on your own!

Congratulations! The table has been created. In the [next chapter](#), you create the record addition interface for this table. You are well on your way to creating a contact management system!

## **Chapter 19: Adding Contacts**

## Overview

You've made it one step down the development path—you have the `my_contacts` table ready, waiting for contacts to be added. In this chapter, you learn how to:

- Create an administrative interface for adding a record
- Create a script to insert the record into your table
- Require session-based authentication before the script can be viewed or the record can be added

## Creating the Record-Addition Form

The HTML form will contain an input field for each column in the `my_contacts` table. In the [previous chapter](#), you created 12 fields, which correspond to 12 columns. Your record-addition interface should have a space for each of these fields, except the ID field, which can be left blank.

**Note** Because the ID field is an auto-incrementing field, if you add a record and leave the field blank, MySQL will place the next-highest available number in that field.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block, and then start a session, or continue a session if it currently exists:

```
<?
session_start();
```

2. Start an `if...else` block that checks the value of `$_SESSION[valid]` and performs a particular action based on the result. If the value is not `yes`, the user didn't go through the proper authentication channels:

```
if ($_SESSION[valid] != "yes") {
```

3. Send the user back to the login form, and exit this script:

```
header("Location: http://127.0.0.1/contact_menu
exit;
```

4. Close your PHP block, and then type this HTML to start building the record-addition form:

```
?>
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>My Contact Management System: Add a Cont.
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<h1>My Contact Management System</h1>
<h2><em>Add a Contact</em></h2>
```

5. Begin your form. Assume that the method is POST and the action is a script called do\_addcontact.php:

```
<FORM METHOD="POST" ACTION="do_addcontact.php">
```

6. Begin an HTML table to assist in layout. Start a new table row, add two column headings, and then close that row:

```
<table cellspacing=3 cellpadding=5>
<tr>
<th>NAME & ADDRESS INFORMATION</th>
<th>OTHER CONTACT/PERSONAL INFORMATION</th>
</tr>
```

7. Start a new table row and table data cell, and then create an input field for the person's first name with a text label:

```
<tr>
<td valign=top>
<P><STRONG>First Name:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="f_name" SIZE=35 MAXLEN=
```

8. In the same table data cell, create an input field for the person's last name with a text label:

```
<P><STRONG>Last Name:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="l_name" SIZE=35 MAXLEN=
```

9. In the same table data cell, create an input field for the person's address (first line) with a text label:

```
<P><STRONG>Address Line 1:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="address1" SIZE=35 MAXLEN=
```

10. In the same table data cell, create an input field for the person's address (second line) with a text label:

```
<P><STRONG>Address Line 2:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="address2" SIZE=35 MAXLEN=
```

11. In the same table data cell, create an input field for the person's

address (third line) with a text label:

```
<P><STRONG>Address Line 3:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="address3" SIZE=35 MAXLEN=32>
```

12. In the same table data cell, create an input field for the person's ZIP/postal code with a text label:

```
<P><STRONG>Zip/Postal Code:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="postcode" SIZE=35 MAXLEN=10>
```

13. In the same table data cell, create an input field for the person's country with a text label. Close the table data cell after this input field:

```
<P><STRONG>Country:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="country" SIZE=35 MAXLEN=50>
</td>
```

14. In a new table data cell, create an input field for the person's primary telephone number with a text label:

```
<td valign=top>
<P><STRONG>Primary Telephone Number:</STRONG><B>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="prim_tel" SIZE=35 MAXLEN=15>
```

15. In the same table data cell, create an input field for the person's secondary telephone number with a text label:

```
<P><STRONG>Secondary Telephone Number:</STRONG>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="sec_tel" SIZE=35 MAXLEN=15>
```

16. In the same table data cell, create an input field for the person's e-mail address with a text label:

```
<P><STRONG>E-mail Address:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="email" SIZE=35 MAXLEN=60>
```

17. In the same table data cell, create an input field for the person's birthday with a text label. Close the table data cell and the table row after this input field:

```
<P><STRONG>Birthday (YYYY-MM-DD) :</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="birthday" SIZE=10 MAXL
</td>
</tr>
```

**Note** The date type used in MySQL uses the YYYY-MM-DD format. An example of a date using this format is 2004-03-20 (March 20, 2004). In this example application, your date-related form fields are designed for you to enter the dates manually, in this format. In [Appendix C](#), "Writing Your Own Functions and Objects," you learn how to create code snippets that enable you to create dynamic lists for things like months, days, and years.

18. Start a new table row and table data cell that spans two columns. Inside, add a submit button as well as a link back to the main menu. Close the table data cell, the table row, and the table itself:

```
<tr>
<td align=center colspan=2><br>
<P><INPUT TYPE="SUBMIT" NAME="submit" VALUE="Add Contact">
<p><a href="contact_menu.php">Return to Main Menu</a>
</TD>
<TR>
</TABLE>
```

19. Close your form and add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</FORM>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

20. Save the file with the name `show_addcontact.php`, and then place this file in the document root of your web server.

Your code should look something like this:

```
<?
//start a session
session_start();

//validate user to see if they are allowed to be here
if ($_SESSION[valid] != "yes") {
    header("Location: http://127.0.0.1/contact_menu.php");
    exit;
}
?>
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>My Contact Management System: Add a Contact</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<h1>My Contact Management System</h1>
<h2><em>Add a Contact</em></h2>
<FORM METHOD="post" ACTION="do_addcontact.php">
<table cellspacing=2 cellpadding=1>
<tr>
<th>NAME & ADDRESS INFORMATION</th>
<th>OTHER CONTACT/PERSONAL INFORMATION</th>
</tr>
<tr>
<td valign=top>
<P><STRONG>First Name:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="f_name" SIZE=35 MAXLENGTH=75>
<P><STRONG>Last Name:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="l_name" SIZE=35 MAXLENGTH=75>
<P><STRONG>Address Line 1:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="address1" SIZE=35 MAXLENGTH=1>
<P><STRONG>Address Line 2:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="address2" SIZE=35 MAXLENGTH=1>
<P><STRONG>Address Line 3:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="address3" SIZE=35 MAXLENGTH=1>
<P><STRONG>Zip/Postal Code:</STRONG><BR>
```

```

<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="postcode" SIZE=35 MAXLENGTH=2
<P><STRONG>Country:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="country" SIZE=35 MAXLENGTH=10
</td>
<td valign=top>
<P><STRONG>Primary Telephone Number:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="prim_tel" SIZE=35 MAXLENGTH=3
<P><STRONG>Secondary Telephone Number:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="sec_tel" SIZE=35 MAXLENGTH=35
<P><STRONG>E-mail Address:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="email" SIZE=35 MAXLENGTH=100>
<P><STRONG>Birthday (YYYY-MM-DD) :</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="birthday" SIZE=10 MAXLENGTH=1
</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td align=center colspan=2><br><br>
<INPUT TYPE="SUBMIT" NAME="submit" VALUE="Add Contact"
<p><a href="contact_menu.php">Return to Main Menu</a><
</TD>
</TR>
</TABLE>
</FORM>
</BODY>
</HTML>

```

In the [next section](#), you create the script that takes the form input, creates a SQL statement, and adds the record to the database table.

# Creating the Record-Addition Script

This script will add your record to the `my_contacts` table, taking into consideration the auto-incrementing ID field.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. Start an `if...else` block that checks for values in `$_POST[f_name]` and `$_POST[l_name]`. If they don't have values, direct the user back to the form and exit the script:

```
if ((!$_POST[f_name]) || (!$_POST[l_name])) {  
    header("Location: http://127.0.0.1/show_add");  
    exit;
```

**Note** You can have as many (or as few) required fields as you want. In this instance, you're only checking for the first and last names.

3. If the required fields have values, start a session, or continue a session if one currently exists. Then close the block:

```
} else {  
    session_start();  
}
```

4. Start an `if...else` block that checks the value of `$_SESSION[valid]` and performs a particular action based on the result. If the value is not `yes`, the user didn't go through the proper authentication channels:

```
if ($_SESSION[valid] != "yes") {
```

5. Send the user back to the login form, and exit this script:

```
header("Location: http://127.0.0.1/contact_menu");  
exit;  
}
```

6. Create a variable to hold the name of the database on which the table resides:

```
$db_name = "testDB";
```

7. Create a variable to hold the name of the table you're populating with this script:

```
$table_name = "my_contacts";
```

8. Add the connection information as you have been:

```
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike"  
    or die(mysql_error()));
```

9. Select the database as you have learned:

```
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) or die
```

10. Create the SQL statement. The first parenthetical statement gives the names of the fields to populate (in order), and the second parenthetical statement sends the actual strings:

```
$sql = "INSERT INTO $table_name  
(id, f_name, l_name, address1, address2, address3,  
prim_tel, sec_tel, email, birthday) VALUES  
(', '$_POST[f_name]', '$_POST[l_name]', '$_POST[  
$_POST[address2]', '$_POST[address3]', '$_POST[  
$_POST[country]', '$_POST[prim_tel]', '$_POST[  
$_POST[email]', '$_POST[birthday]')";
```

**Note** Leaving a blank slot for the ID field will ensure that the field auto-increments on its own.

11. Create a variable to hold the result of the `mysql_query()` function, as you have learned:

```
$result = @mysql_query($sql, $connection) or die
```

12. Close your PHP block and add this HTML:

```
?>
```

```

<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>My Contact Management System: Contact Ad...
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<h1>My Contact Management System</h1>
<h2><em>Add a Contact - Contact Added</em></h2>

```

13. Add a confirmation statement. Mingle HTML and PHP to include the value of the \$table\_name variable:

```

<P>The following information was successfully ad...
<? echo "$table_name"; ?></P>

```

14. Next, you'll re-create the layout used in show\_addcontact.php, only it won't contain form fields. Instead, you'll mingle HTML and PHP to show the values that were entered.

```

<table cellspacing=2 cellpadding=1>
<tr>
<th>NAME & ADDRESS INFORMATION</th>
<th>OTHER CONTACT/PERSONAL INFORMATION</th>
</tr>
<tr>
<td valign=top>
<P><STRONG>First Name:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "$_POST[f_name]"; ?></P>
<P><STRONG>Last Name:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "$_POST[l_name]"; ?></P>
<P><STRONG>Address Line 1:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "$_POST[address1]"; ?></P>
<P><STRONG>Address Line 2:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "$_POST[address2]"; ?></P>
<P><STRONG>Address Line 3:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "$_POST[address3]"; ?></P>
<P><STRONG>Zip/Postal Code:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "$_POST[postcode]"; ?></P>
<P><STRONG>Country:</STRONG><BR>

```

```

<? echo "$_POST[country]"; ?></P>
</td>
<td valign=top>
<P><STRONG>Primary Telephone Number:</STRONG><B>
<? echo "$_POST[prim_tel]"; ?></P>
<P><STRONG>Secondary Telephone Number:</STRONG>
<? echo "$_POST[sec_tel]"; ?></P>
<P><STRONG>E-mail Address:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "$_POST[email]"; ?></P>
<P><STRONG>Birthday (YYYY-MM-DD) :</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "$_POST[birthday]"; ?></P>
</td>
</tr>

```

15. Start a new table row and table data cell that spans two columns. Inside, add a link back to the main menu. Close the table data cell, the table row, and the table itself:

```

<tr>
<td align=center colspan=2><br>
<a href="contact_menu.php">Return to Main Menu<
</TD>
</TR>
</TABLE>

```

16. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```

</BODY>
</HTML>

```

17. Save the file with the name `do_addcontact.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

Go on to the next step and start adding contacts!

## Populating Your Table

To start populating the my\_contacts table, open [http://127.0.0.1/contact\\_menu.php](http://127.0.0.1/contact_menu.php). If you've already logged in, you'll see your administrative menu. Otherwise, log in using the username (`admin`) and password (`abc123`).

The screenshot shows a web page titled "My Contact Management System" with a sub-section "Add a Contact". The page is a form with two main sections: "NAME & ADDRESS INFORMATION" and "OTHER CONTACT/PERSONAL INFORMATION".

- NAME & ADDRESS INFORMATION:**
  - First Name: [Input Field]
  - Last Name: [Input Field]
  - Address Line 1: [Input Field]
  - Address Line 2: [Input Field]
  - Address Line 3: [Input Field]
  - Zip/Postal Code: [Input Field]
  - Country: [Input Field]
- OTHER CONTACT/PERSONAL INFORMATION:**
  - Primary Telephone Number: [Input Field]
  - Secondary Telephone Number: [Input Field]
  - E-mail Address: [Input Field]
  - Birthday (YYYY-MM-DD): [Input Field]

At the bottom of the form are two buttons: "Add Contact to System" and "Return to Main Menu".

1. Select the Add a Contact menu item.

You will see a blank form with numerous fields for adding contact information, as well as a submit button and a link back to the main menu.

2. Now complete the form! Only two fields are required (unless you changed that on your own): the first name and last name. The following figure shows a sample contact.

3. Click on the Add Contact to System button.

You should see a confirmation screen as shown next.

Add several of your own contacts to the system. Feel free to make some mistakes, because in the [next chapter](#), you create a set of record-modification scripts.

## **Chapter 20: Modifying Contacts**

## Overview

Now that you have at least a few contacts in your database table, you need a simple way to modify information. People move, change e-mail accounts—you'll need to update your records sometimes! In this chapter, you learn how to:

- Create an administrative interface for modifying a record
- Create a script to update the record in your table
- Require session-based authentication before the script can be viewed or the record can be modified

## Creating the Record-Selection Form

You have a number of entries in the `my_contacts` table, so you'll need a quick way to select a single record for modification. The next script will create a drop-down menu of all the people in your database, from which you can select one record to modify.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block, and then start a session, or continue a session if one currently exists:

```
<?
session_start();
```

2. Start an `if...else` block that checks the value of `$_SESSION[valid]` and performs a particular action based on the result. If the value is not `yes`, the user didn't go through the proper authentication channels:

```
if ($_SESSION[valid] != "yes") {
```

3. Send the user back to the login form, and exit this script:

```
header("Location: http://127.0.0.1/contact_menu
exit;
}
```

4. Create variables to hold the name of the database on which the table resides, as well as the name of the table itself:

```
$db_name = "testDB";
$table_name = "my_contacts";
```

5. Add the connection information as you have been:

```
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike"
or die(mysql_error()));
```

6. Select the database as you have learned:

```
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) o
```

7. Create the SQL statement. You want to select just the ID

number, first name, and last name of each record in the table:

```
$sql = "SELECT id, f_name, l_name FROM $table_n
```

8. Create a variable to hold the result of the `mysql_query()` function, as you have learned:

```
$result = @mysql_query($sql,$connection) or die
```

9. Check for results using the `mysql_num_rows()` function:

```
c$num = @mysql_num_rows($result);
```

10. Check the value returned by the `mysql_num_rows()` function, and create a variable called `$display_block` to hold an error message if the number is less than 1 (in other words, if there are no rows returned and therefore no records in the table):

```
if ($num < 1) {  
    $display_block = "<P><em>Sorry! No results
```

11. Continue the `if...else` block, so the script continues if the count of rows is one or more:

```
} else {
```

12. Start the `while` loop. The `while` loop will create an array called `$row` for each record in the result set (`$result`):

```
while ($row = mysql_fetch_array($result)) {
```

13. Get the individual elements of the record, and give them good names:

```
$id = $row['id'];  
$f_name = $row['f_name'];  
$l_name = $row['l_name'];
```

14. Create a variable called `$option_block`, which will contain the individual elements in the drop-down menu:

```
$option_block .= "<option value=\"$id\">$l_name
```

15. Close the `while` loop:

```
}
```

16. Create a variable called `$display_block`, which will hold the form. Although this same variable was used to hold an error message in Step 10, it will not be used at that point unless there is an error. If there is an error, the script will never get to this step, so you have no worries about overwriting variables and can begin your form. For the form, assume that the method is `POST` and the action is a script called `show_modcontact.php`:  
`$display_block = "<FORM METHOD=\"POST\" ACTION="`

17. Create a text label for the drop-down menu:

```
<P><strong>Contact:</strong>
```

18. Start the drop-down menu:

```
<select name="id">
```

19. Place the `$option_block` string inside the `<select>` `</select>` tag pair. It should contain at least one `<option>` element:

```
$option_block
```

20. Finish the drop-down menu:

```
</select>
```

21. Add a submit button. Then, close your form, the string, the `if...else` block, and the PHP block:

```
<INPUT TYPE="SUBMIT" NAME="submit" VALUE="">
</form>";
}
```

```
?>
```

22. Add this HTML:

```
<HTML>
```

```
<HEAD>
<TITLE>My Contact Management System: Modify a Contact</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<h1>My Contact Management System</h1>
<h2><em>Modify a Contact - Select from List</em></h2>
<P>Select a contact from the list below, to modify.
```

23. Display the contents of \$display\_block:

```
<? echo "$display_block"; ?>
```

24. Add a link back to the main menu:

```
<br><p><a href="contact_menu.php">Return to Main Menu</a></p>
```

25. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

26. Save the file with the name pick\_modcontact.php, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

Your code should look something like this:

```
<?
//start a session
session_start();

//check validity of user
if ($_SESSION[valid] != "yes") {
    header("Location: http://127.0.0.1/contact_menu.php");
    exit;
}
//set up table and database names
$db_name = "testDB";
$table_name = "my_contacts";

//connect to server and select database
```

```

$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike", "9s
or die(mysql_error());
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) or die(m

//build and issue query
$sql = "SELECT id, f_name, l_name FROM $table_name ORD
$result = @mysql_query($sql,$connection) or die(mysql_
' . $table_name . "' . $order . ' . $limit);

//check the number of results
$num = @mysql_num_rows($result);

if ($num < 1) {
    //if there are no results, display message
    $display_block = "<P><em>Sorry! No results.</em><
} else {
    //if results are found, loop through them
    //and make a form selection block
    while ($row = mysql_fetch_array($result)) {
        $id = $row['id'];
        $f_name = $row['f_name'];
        $l_name = $row['l_name'];
        $option_block .= "<option value=\"$id\">$l_n
    }

    //create the entire form block
    $display_block =
<FORM METHOD=\"POST\" ACTION=\"show_modcontact.php
<P><strong>Contact:</strong>
<select name=\"id\"
$option_block
</select>
<INPUT TYPE=\"SUBMIT\" NAME=\"submit\" VALUE=\"Se
</form>";

}

?>
<HTML>
<HEAD>

```

```
<TITLE>My Contact Management System: Modify a Contact<
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<h1>My Contact Management System</h1>
<h2><em>Modify a Contact - Select from List</em></h2>
<P>Select a contact from the list below, to modify the
<? echo "$display_block"; ?>
<br>
<p><a href="contact_menu.php">Return to Main Menu</a><
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

In the [next section](#), you create the record-modification form, which looks strikingly similar to the record-addition form.

## Creating the Record-Modification Form

The record-modification form is based on the record-addition form you created in the [previous chapter](#). The difference lies in the population of values in the form fields. In other words, if there's already data in a record, you can see what you have before you change it.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. Start an `if...else` block that checks for a value for `$_POST[id]`, the one variable sent from the record-selection form. If a value doesn't exist, the block directs the user back to the selection form and exits the script:

```
if (!$_POST[id]) {  
    header("Location: http://127.0.0.1/pick_mo  
    exit;
```

3. If the required field has a value, you start a session, or continue a session if one currently exists. Then close the block:

```
} else {  
    session_start();  
}
```

4. Start an `if...else` block that checks the value of `$_SESSION[valid]` and performs a particular action based on the result. If the value is not `yes`, the user didn't go through the proper authentication channels:

```
if ($_SESSION[valid] != "yes") {
```

5. Send the user back to the login form, and exit this script:

```
header("Location: http://127.0.0.1/contact_mu  
exit;  
}
```

6. Create variables to hold the name of the database on which the

table resides, as well as the table itself:

```
$db_name = "testDB";
$table_name = "my_contacts";
```

7. Add the connection information as you have been:

```
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike"
    or die(mysql_error()));
```

8. Select the database as you have learned:

```
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) or die(mysql_error());
```

9. Create the SQL statement. You want to select all the fields in the database except ID for the record with an ID equal to the value of `$_POST[id]`:

```
$sql = "SELECT f_name, l_name, address1, address2,
postcode, country, prim_tel, sec_tel, email, bio
FROM $table_name WHERE id = '$_POST[id]'" ;
```

**Note** You could just as easily write `SELECT * FROM $table_name WHERE id = '$_POST[id]'`; and simply don't do anything with the resulting value from the `id` field in the database.

10. Create a variable to hold the result of the `mysql_query()` function, as you have learned:

```
$result = @mysql_query($sql, $connection) or die(mysql_error());
```

11. Start the `while` loop. The `while` loop will create an array called `$row` for each record in the result set (`$result`):

```
while ($row = mysql_fetch_array($result)) {
```

12. Get the individual elements of the record, and give them good names:

```
$f_name = $row['f_name'];
$l_name = $row['l_name'];
```

```
$address1 = $row['address1'];
$address2 = $row['address2'];
$address3 = $row['address3'];
$postcode = $row['postcode'];
$country = $row['country'];
$prim_tel = $row['prim_tel'];
$sec_tel = $row['sec_tel'];
$email = $row['email'];
$birthday = $row['birthday'];
```

**Note** Now that you have the current values for the selected record, you will use them later in the script to populate the form fields.

13. Close the `while` loop, and then close your PHP block:

```
}
```

```
?>
```

14. Type this HTML to start building the record-modification form:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>My Contact Management System: Modify a C
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<h1>My Contact Management System</h1>
<h2><em>Modify a Contact</em></h2>
```

15. Begin your form. Assume that the method is `POST` and the action is a script called `do_modcontact.php`:

```
<FORM METHOD="POST" ACTION="do_modcontact.php">
```

16. Add a hidden field to hold the value of `$_POST[id]` so it will be passed along to the script:

```
<INPUT TYPE="hidden" name="id" value="<? echo "
```

17. Begin an HTML table to assist in layout. Start a new table row, add two column headings, and then close that row:

```
<table cellspacing=3 cellpadding=5>
<tr>
<th>NAME & ADDRESS INFORMATION</th>
<th>OTHER CONTACT/PERSONAL INFORMATION</th>
</tr>
```

18. Create rows and cells to hold input fields for all the items in the record. Use the `value` attribute in each input field, and mingle HTML and PHP to echo the actual value:

```
<tr>
<td valign=top>
<P><STRONG>First Name:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="f_name" VALUE="<? echo
SIZE=35 MAXLENGTH=75></P>
<P><STRONG>Last Name:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="l_name" VALUE="<? echo
SIZE=35 MAXLENGTH=75></P>
<P><STRONG>Address Line 1:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="address1" VALUE="<? echo
SIZE=35 MAXLENGTH=100></P>
<P><STRONG>Address Line 2:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="address2" VALUE="<? echo
SIZE=35 MAXLENGTH=100></P>
<P><STRONG>Address Line 3:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="address3" VALUE="<? echo
SIZE=35 MAXLENGTH=100></P>
<P><STRONG>Zip/Postal Code:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="postcode" VALUE="<? echo
SIZE=35 MAXLENGTH=25></P>
<P><STRONG>Country:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="country" VALUE="<? echo
SIZE=35 MAXLENGTH=100></P>
</td>
<td valign=top>
<P><STRONG>Primary Telephone Number:</STRONG><B>
```

```

<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="prim_tel" VALUE="<? echo
SIZE=35 MAXLENGTH=35></P>
<P><STRONG>Secondary Telephone Number:</STRONG>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="sec_tel" VALUE="<? echo
SIZE=35 MAXLENGTH=35></P>
<P><STRONG>E-mail Address:</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="email" VALUE="<? echo
SIZE=35 MAXLENGTH=100></P>
<P><STRONG>Birthday (YYYY-MM-DD) :</STRONG><BR>
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="birthday" VALUE="<? echo
SIZE=10 MAXLENGTH=10></P>
</td>
</tr>

```

19. Start a new table row and table data cell that spans two columns. Inside, add a submit button as well as a link back to the main menu. Close the table data cell, the table row, and the table itself:

```

<tr>
<td align=center colspan=2><br>
<P><INPUT TYPE="SUBMIT" NAME="submit" VALUE="Upd
<br>
<p><a href="contact_menu.php">Return to Main Me
</TD>
</TR>
</TABLE>

```

20. Close your form and add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```

</FORM>
</BODY>
</HTML>

```

21. Save the file with the name `show_modcontact.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

In the [next section](#), you create the script that takes the form input, creates

a SQL statement, and updates the record in the database table.

# Creating the Record-Modification Script

This script will update the record in the `my_contacts` table, using the value of `$_POST[id]` as the primary key (which it is!).

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. Start an `if...else` block that checks for values in `$_POST[f_name]` and `$_POST[l_name]`. If they don't have values, direct the user back to the selection form, and exit the script:

```
if ((!$_POST[f_name]) || (!$_POST[l_name])) {  
    header("Location: http://127.0.0.1/pick_mo  
    exit;
```

**Note** You can have as many (or as few) required fields as you want, but the requirements should match the required fields from the record-addition form.

3. If the required fields have values, start a session, or continue a session if one currently exists. Then close the block:

```
} else {  
    session_start();  
}
```

4. Start an `if...else` block that checks the value of `$_SESSION[valid]` and performs a particular action based on the result. If the value is not `yes`, the user didn't go through the proper authentication channels:

```
if ($_SESSION[valid] != "yes") {
```

5. Send the user back to the login form, and exit this script:

```
header("Location: http://127.0.0.1/contact_menu  
exit;
```

```
}
```

6. Create variables to hold the name of the database on which the table resides, as well as the table itself:

```
$db_name = "testDB";  
$table_name = "my_contacts";
```

7. Add the connection information as you have been:

```
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spik"  
or die(mysql_error()));
```

8. Select the database as you have learned:

```
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) o
```

9. Create the SQL statement. This statement uses UPDATE to SET fields to specific values:

```
$sql = "UPDATE $table_name SET  
    f_name = '$_POST[f_name]',  
    l_name = '$_POST[l_name]',  
    address1 = '$_POST[address1]',  
    address2 = '$_POST[address2]',  
    address3 = '$_POST[address3]',  
    postcode = '$_POST[postcode]',  
    country = '$_POST[country]',  
    prim_tel = '$_POST[prim_tel]',  
    sec_tel = '$_POST[sec_tel]',  
    email = '$_POST[email]',  
    birthday = '$_POST[birthday]'  
    WHERE id = '$_POST[id]'" ;
```

10. Create a variable to hold the result of the mysql\_query() function, as you have learned:

```
$result = @mysql_query($sql,$connection) or die
```

11. Close your PHP block and add this HTML:

```

?>
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>My Contact Management System: Contact Upd...
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<h1>My Contact Management System</h1>
<h2><em>Modify a Contact - Contact Updated</em>...

```

12. Add a confirmation statement. Mingle HTML and PHP to include the value of the `$table_name` variable:

```

<P>The following information was successfully updated:
<? echo "$table_name"; ?></P>

```

13. Next, you re-create the layout used in `show_modcontact.php`, only it won't contain form fields. Instead, you'll mingle HTML and PHP to show the values that were entered. Start a new table row, add two column headings, and then close that row:

```





```

14. Start a new table row and table data cell, and then display a text label and value for each field:

```

<tr>
<td valign=top>
<P><STRONG>First Name:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "&lt;$_POST[f_name]&gt;"; ?></P>
<P><STRONG>Last Name:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "&lt;$_POST[l_name]&gt;"; ?></P>
<P><STRONG>Address Line 1:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "&lt;$_POST[address1]&gt;"; ?></P>
<P><STRONG>Address Line 2:</STRONG><BR>

```

```

<? echo "$_POST[address2]"; ?></P>
<P><STRONG>Address Line 3:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "$_POST[address3]"; ?></P>
<P><STRONG>Zip/Postal Code:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "$_POST[postcode]"; ?></P>
<P><STRONG>Country:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "$_POST[country]"; ?></P>
</td>
<td valign=top>
<P><STRONG>Primary Telephone Number:</STRONG><B>
<? echo "$_POST[prim_tel]"; ?></P>
<P><STRONG>Secondary Telephone Number:</STRONG>
<? echo "$_POST[sec_tel]"; ?></P>
<P><STRONG>E-mail Address:</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "$_POST[email]"; ?></P>
<P><STRONG>Birthday (YYYY-MM-DD) :</STRONG><BR>
<? echo "$_POST[birthday]"; ?></P>
</td>
</tr>

```

15. Start a new table row and table data cell that spans two columns. Inside, add a link back to the main menu. Close the table data cell, the table row, and the table itself:

```

<tr>
<td align=center colspan=2><br>
<p><a href="contact_menu.php">Return to Main Me<
</TD>
</TR>
</TABLE>

```

16. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```

</BODY>
</HTML>

```

17. Save the file with the name `do_modcontact.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

You can now go on to the next step—modifying some of the contacts in your table.

# Modifying Contacts

To start modifying contacts in the `my_contacts` table, open [http://127.0.0.1/contact\\_menu.php](http://127.0.0.1/contact_menu.php). If you've already logged in, you'll see your administrative menu. Otherwise, log in using the username (`admin`) and password (`abc123`).

1. Select the Modify a Contact menu item.

You will see a drop-down menu of the contacts in the system, ordered by last name, as well as a submit button and a link back to the main menu.



2. Select a contact from the list and click on the Select this Contact button. I selected a sample from my own list. It's a complete example, with a value in every field.

You will see the record modification form, with fields already populated with existing values.

3. Change something in the record. In my sample, I changed Address Line 2 to Suite 92-A and the Primary Telephone Number to 555-444-1111. Click on the Update Contact Record button. You should see a confirmation screen as shown on the next page.

4. Return to the selection form and select your contact again to

see that the value has really changed:

The screenshot shows a web browser window titled "My Contact Management System" with the sub-page "Modify a Contact". The URL in the address bar is "http://127.0.0.1/show\_modcontact.php". The page contains two tabs at the top: "NAME & ADDRESS INFORMATION" and "OTHER CONTACT/PERSONAL INFORMATION". Under the first tab, there are fields for First Name (Jane), Last Name (Doe), Address Line 1 (115 Main Street), Address Line 2 (Suite 92-A), Address Line 3 (Anytown, California), Zip/Postal Code (95405), and Country (USA). Under the second tab, there are fields for Primary Telephone Number (555-444-1111) and Secondary Telephone Number (555-555-5556), along with E-mail Address (jane@doe.com) and Birthday (YYYY-MM-DD) (1970-01-01). At the bottom of the form is a "Update Contact Record" button.

Modify the records of some of your own contacts. In the [next chapter](#), you create the administrative scripts used to delete some records.

## **Chapter 21: Deleting Contacts**

## Overview

There are plenty of times when I want to delete people from my address book, for one reason or another. You should be able to delete people from your online contact management system, too! In this chapter, you learn how to:

- Create an administrative interface for deleting a record
- Create a script to delete the record from your table
- Require session-based authentication before the script can be viewed or the record can be deleted

## Using the Record-Selection Form

The script that creates a selection form for record deletion is virtually identical to the script used to select a record for modification. This section will be very easy for you to skim through. Repetition makes for perfection!

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block. Then, start a session, or continue a session if one currently exists:

```
<?
session_start();
```

2. Start an `if...else` block that checks the value of `$_SESSION[valid]` and performs a particular action based on the result. If the value is not `yes`, the user didn't go through the proper authentication channels:

```
if ($_SESSION[valid] != "yes") {
```

3. Send the user back to the login form, and exit this script:

```
header("Location: http://127.0.0.1/contact_menu
exit;
}
```

4. Create variables to hold the name of the database on which the table resides, as well as the table itself:

```
$db_name = "testDB";
$table_name = "my_contacts";
```

5. Add the connection information as you have been:

```
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike"
or die(mysql_error()));
```

6. Select the database as you have learned:

```
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) or
```

7. Create the SQL statement. You want to select just the ID number, first name, and last name of each record in the table:

```
$sql = "SELECT id, f_name, l_name FROM $table_n
```

8. Create a variable to hold the result of the `mysql_query()` function, as you have learned:

```
$result = @mysql_query($sql,$connection) or die
```

9. Check for results using the `mysql_num_rows()` function:

```
$num = @mysql_num_rows($result);
```

10. Check the value returned by the `mysql_num_rows()` function, and create a variable called `$display_block` to hold an error message if the number is less than 1 (in other words, if there are no rows returned and therefore no records in the table).

```
if ($num < 1) {  
    $display_block = "<P><em>Sorry! No results
```

11. Continue the `if...else` block, so the script continues if the count of rows is one or more:

```
} else {
```

12. Start the `while` loop. The `while` loop will create an array called `$row` for each record in the result set (`$result`):

```
while ($row = mysql_fetch_array($result)) {
```

13. Get the individual elements of the record, and give them good names:

```
$id = $row['id'];  
$f_name = $row['f_name'];  
$l_name = $row['l_name'];
```

14. Create a variable called `$option_block`, which will contain the individual elements in the drop-down menu:

```
$option_block .= "<option value=\"$id\">$l_name
```

15. Close the `while` loop:

```
}
```

16. Create a variable called \$display\_block, which will hold the form. Although this same variable was used to hold an error message in Step 10, it will not be used at that point unless there is an error. If there is an error, the script will never get to this step, so you have no worries about overwriting variables and can begin your form. For the form, assume that the method is post and the action is a script called show\_delcontact.php:

```
$display_block = "<FORM METHOD=\\"POST\\" ACTION=
```

17. Create a text label for the drop-down menu:

```
<P><strong>Contact:</strong>
```

18. Start the drop-down menu:

```
<select name=\"id\">
```

19. Place the \$option\_block string inside the <select> </select> tag pair. It should contain at least one <option> element:

```
$option_block
```

20. Finish the drop-down menu:

```
</select>
```

21. Add a submit button:

```
<INPUT TYPE=\\"SUBMIT\\" NAME=\\"submit\\" VALUE=\\"
```

22. Close your form, the string, the if...else block, and the PHP block:

```
</form>";
}
?>
```

23. Add this HTML:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>My Contact Management System: Delete a Contact</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<h1>My Contact Management System</h1>
<h2><em>Delete a Contact - Select from List</em></h2>
<P>Select a contact from the list below, to delete the record.</P>
```

24. Display the contents of \$display\_block:

```
<? echo "$display_block"; ?>
```

25. Add a link back to the main menu:

```
<br><p><a href="contact_menu.php">Return to Main Menu</a></p>
```

26. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

27. Save the file with the name pick\_delcontact.php, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

Your code should look something like this:

```
<?
//start a session
session_start();

//check validity of user
if ($_SESSION[valid] != "yes") {
    header("Location: http://127.0.0.1/contact_menu.php");
    exit;
}

//set up table and database names
$db_name = "testDB";
$table_name = "my_contacts";
```

```

//connect to server and select database
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike", "9s
    or die(mysql_error());
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) or die(m
    or die(mysql_error());

//build and issue query
$sql = "SELECT id, f_name, l_name FROM $table_name ORD
$result = @mysql_query($sql,$connection) or die(mysql_
    or die(mysql_error());

//check the number of results
$num = @mysql_num_rows($result);

if ($num < 1) {
    //if there are no results, display message
    $display_block = "<P><em>Sorry! No results.</em><
} else {
    //if results are found, loop through them
    //and make a form selection block
    while ($row = mysql_fetch_array($result)) {
        $id = $row['id'];
        $f_name = $row['f_name'];
        $l_name = $row['l_name'];
        $option_block .= "<option value=\"$id\">$l_n
    }

    //create the entire form block
    $display_block =
<FORM METHOD="POST" ACTION="show_delcontact.php">
<P><strong>Contact:</strong>
<select name="id">
$option_block
</select>
<INPUT TYPE="SUBMIT" NAME="submit" VALUE="Se
</form>";

}

?>

```

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>My Contact Management System: Delete a Contact<
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<h1>My Contact Management System</h1>
<h2><em>Delete a Contact - Select from List</em></h2>
<P>Select a contact from the list below, to delete the
<? echo "$display_block"; ?>
<br>
<p><a href="contact_menu.php">Return to Main Menu</a><
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

In the [next section](#), you create a pre-deletion confirmation screen that shows all the current values of the selected record.

## Creating the Record-Deletion Form

The record-deletion form isn't a form in the usual sense of the word—you aren't typing anything into a form field. Instead, this screen will display the existing record in read-only format, and will include hidden form fields and a submit button. By viewing the record before deleting it, you're certain to delete the correct record.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. Start an `if...else` block that checks for a value for `$_POST[id]`, the one variable sent from the record-selection form. If a value doesn't exist, direct the user back to the selection form and exit the script:

```
if (!$_POST[id]) {  
    header("Location: http://127.0.0.1/pick_de  
    exit;
```

3. If the required field has a value, start a session, or continue a session if one currently exists. Then close the block:

```
} else {  
    session_start();  
}
```

4. Start an `if...else` block that checks the value of `$_SESSION[valid]` and performs a particular action based on the result. If the value is not `yes`, the user didn't go through the proper authentication channels:

```
if ($_SESSION[valid] != "yes") {
```

5. Send the user back to the login form and exit this script:

```
header("Location: http://127.0.0.1/contact_menu  
exit;  
}
```

6. Create variables to hold the name of the database on which the table resides, as well as the table itself:

```
$db_name = "testDB";  
$table_name = "my_contacts";
```

7. Add the connection information as you have been:

```
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike"  
    or die(mysql_error()));
```

8. Select the database as you have learned:

```
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) or die
```

9. Create the SQL statement. You want to select all the fields in the database, except id, for the record with an ID equal to the value of \$\_POST[id]:

```
$sql = "SELECT f_name, l_name, address1, address2,  
postcode, country, prim_tel, sec_tel, email, bio  
FROM $table_name WHERE id = '".$_POST[id]'" ;
```

10. Create a variable to hold the result of the mysql\_query() function, as you have learned:

```
$result = @mysql_query($sql,$connection) or die
```

11. Start the while loop. The while loop will create an array called \$row for each record in the result set (\$result):

```
while ($row = mysql_fetch_array($result)) {
```

12. Get the individual elements of the record, and give them good names:

```
$f_name = $row['f_name'];  
$l_name = $row['l_name'];  
$address1 = $row['address1'];  
$address2 = $row['address2'];  
$address3 = $row['address3'];  
$postcode = $row['postcode'];  
$country = $row['country'];
```

```
$prim_tel = $row['prim_tel'];
$sec_tel = $row['sec_tel'];
$email = $row['email'];
$birthday = $row['birthday'];
```

13. Close the `while` loop, and then close your PHP block:

```
}
```

```
?>
```

14. Type this HTML to start building the record-confirmation screen:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>My Contact Management System: Delete a C
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<h1>My Contact Management System</h1>
<h2><em>Delete a Contact</em></h2>
```

15. Begin your form. Assume that the method is `POST` and the action is a script called `do_delcontact.php`:

```
<FORM METHOD="POST" ACTION="do_delcontact.php">
```

16. Add a hidden field to hold the value of `$_POST[id]`:

```
<INPUT TYPE="hidden" name="id" value="<? echo "
```

17. Add two more hidden fields to hold the value of `$f_name` and `$l_name`. You'll use these fields for display purposes in the final confirmation screen, after the deletion has occurred:

```
<INPUT TYPE="hidden" name="f_name" value="<? echo "
<INPUT TYPE="hidden" name="l_name" value="<? echo "
```

18. Next, you'll re-create the layout used in the record-addition and modification forms, mingling HTML and PHP to show the values for the selected record. Start a new table row, add two column headings, and then close that row:

```

<table cellspacing=3 cellpadding=5>
<tr>
<th>NAME & ADDRESS INFORMATION</th>
<th>OTHER CONTACT/PERSONAL INFORMATION</th>
</tr>

```

19. Start a new table row and table data cell, and then display a text label and value for the fields in the record:

```

<tr>
<td valign=top>
<p><strong>First Name:</strong><br>
<? echo "$f_name"; ?></p>
<p><strong>Last Name:</strong><br>
<? echo "$l_name"; ?></p>
<p><strong>Address Line 1:</strong><br>
<? echo "$address1"; ?></p>
<p><strong>Address Line 2:</strong><br>
<? echo "$address2"; ?></p>
<p><strong>Address Line 3:</strong><br>
<? echo "$address3"; ?></p>
<p><strong>Zip/Postal Code:</strong><br>
<? echo "$postcode"; ?></p>
<p><strong>Country:</strong><br>
<? echo "$country"; ?></p>
</td>
<td valign=top>
<p><strong>Primary Telephone Number:</strong><b>
<? echo "$prim_tel"; ?></p>
<p><strong>Secondary Telephone Number:</strong>
<? echo "$sec_tel"; ?></p>
<p><strong>E-mail Address:</strong><br>
<? echo "$email"; ?></p>
<p><strong>Birthday (YYYY-MM-DD) :</strong><br>
<? echo "$birthday"; ?></p>
</td>
</tr>

```

20. Start a new table row and table data cell that spans two columns. Inside, add a submit button and a link back to the main menu. Close the table data cell, the table row, and the table itself:

```
<tr>
<td align=center colspan=2><br>
<p><input type="submit" name="submit" value="De
<p><a href="contact_menu.php">Return to Main Me
</TD>
</TR>
</TABLE>
```

21. Close the form and add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</FORM>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

22. Save the file with the name `show_delcontact.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

In the [next section](#), you create the script that takes the value of `$_POST[id]` (currently held in a hidden form field) and deletes the corresponding record from the database table.

## Creating the Record-Deletion Script

This script will delete the record in the `my_contacts` table, using the value of `$_POST[id]` as the primary key.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. Start an `if...else` block that checks for a value for `$_POST[id]`. If no value is present, direct the user back to the selection form, and exit the script:

```
if (!$_POST[id]) {  
    header("Location: http://127.0.0.1/pick_de  
    exit;
```

3. If the required field has a value, start a session, or continue a session if one currently exists. Then close the block:

```
} else {  
    session_start();  
}
```

4. Start an `if...else` block that checks the value of `$_SESSION[valid]` and performs a particular action based on the result. If the value is not `yes`, the user didn't go through the proper authentication channels: `if ($_SESSION[valid] != "yes") {`

5. Send the user back to the login form, and exit this script:

```
header("Location: http://127.0.0.1/contact_menu  
exit;  
}
```

6. Create variables to hold the name of the database on which the table resides, as well as the table itself:

```
$db_name = "testDB";
```

```
$table_name = "my_contacts";
```

7. Add the connection information as you have been:

```
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike"  
    or die(mysql_error()));
```

8. Select the database as you have learned:

```
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) o
```

9. Create the SQL statement to delete the record:

```
$sql = "DELETE FROM $table_name WHERE id = '$_P'
```

10. Create a variable to hold the result of the `mysql_query()` function, as you have learned:

```
$result = @mysql_query($sql, $connection) or die
```

11. Close your PHP block and add this HTML:

```
?>  
<HTML>  
<HEAD>  
<TITLE>My Contact Management System: Contact De  
</HEAD>  
<BODY>  
<h1>My Contact Management System</h1>  
<h2><em>Delete a Contact - Contact Deleted</em>
```

12. Add a confirmation statement. Mingle HTML and PHP to include the values of the `$_POST[f_name]`, `$_POST[l_name]`, and `$table_name` variables:

```
<P><? echo "$_POST[f_name] $_POST[l_name]"; ?> :  
from <? echo "$table_name"; ?></p>
```

13. Add a link back to the main menu, and then add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
<br><p><a href="contact_menu.php">Return to Mai
```

```
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

14. Save the file with the name do\_delcontact.php, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

Your code should look something like this:

```
<?
//check for required form variables
if ((!$_POST[f_name]) || (!$_POST[l_name])) {
    header("Location: http://127.0.0.1/pick_delcontact.php");
    exit;
} else {
    //if form variables are present, start a session
    session_start();
}

//check for validity of user
if ($_SESSION[valid] != "yes") {
    header("Location: http://127.0.0.1/contact_menu.php");
    exit;
}

//set up table and database names
$db_name = "testDB";
$table_name = "my_contacts";

//connect to server and select database
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike", "9spike");
or die(mysql_error());
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) or die(mysql_error());

//build and issue query
$sql = "DELETE FROM $table_name WHERE id = '$_POST[id]'";

$result = @mysql_query($sql, $connection) or die(mysql_error());
?>
```

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>My Contact Management System: Contact Deleted<('/')
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<h2><em>Delete a Contact - Contact Deleted</em></h2>
<P><? echo "$_POST[f_name] $_POST[l_name]"; ?> has been
from <? echo "$table_name"; ?></p>
<br><p><a href="contact_menu.php">Return to Main Menu<
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

Go on to the next step and delete some of the contacts in your database table.

# Deleting Contacts

To start deleting contacts from the `my_contacts` table, open [http://127.0.0.1/contact\\_menu.php](http://127.0.0.1/contact_menu.php). If you've already logged in, you'll see your administrative menu. Otherwise, log in using the username (`admin`) and password (`abc123`).

1. Select the Delete a Contact menu item.

You will see a drop-down menu of the contacts in the system, as well as a submit button and a link back to the main menu.

2. Select a contact from the list and click on the Select this Contact button. I selected a sample from my own list.



**Note** The birthday in the displayed record shows 0000-00-00 because no date was entered in the original record. MySQL uses a default date for date fields.

3. Click on the Delete this Contact button. You should see a confirmation screen.

My Contact Management System

Delete a Contact

NAME & ADDRESS INFORMATION	OTHER CONTACT/PERSONAL INFORMATION
First Name: John	Primary Telephone Number:
Last Name: Smith	Secondary Telephone Number:
Address Line 1: 1122 Green Street	E-mail Address:
Address Line 2:	Birthday (YYYY-MM-DD): 0000-00-00
Address Line 3: San Jose, CA	
Zip/Postal Code: 95122	
Country: USA	

4. Return to the selection form and select your contact again to see that the record no longer exists in the drop-down menu.

Delete a Contact - Contact Deleted

John Smith has been deleted from my\_contacts

[Return to Main Menu](#)

Delete a record or two, and then move on to the [next chapter](#), where you'll create the read-only contact information screens.

## **Chapter 22: Working with Contacts**

## Overview

You have all this information in a table, but I haven't shown you how to create any scripts for selecting and displaying read-only data. It's time to remedy that! In this chapter, you learn how to:

- Count and display the number of contacts in your system
- Display the current date
- Check for birthdays in the current month and display special text
- Display read-only contact details
- Require session-based authentication before the script can be viewed or the record is deleted

# Modifying Your Administration Menu

The next few sections show some modifications you can make to the original `contact_menu.php` to display elements such as the current date, the number of contacts in the database, and other pieces of information that make your system more customized.

## Showing the Number of Contacts

The following modifications should be made to the `contact_menu.php` script so that it displays the current number of contacts in the `my_contacts` table.

1. Open `contact_menu.php` in your text editor.
2. Find this block of code, highlight it, and cut it out of the file (prepare to paste):

```
//build form block
$form_block = "<h1>Login</h1>
<form method=POST action=\"$_SERVER[PHP_SELF]\">
$msg
<P><strong>username:</strong><br>
<input type=\"text\" name=\"username\" size=15>
<P><strong>password:</strong><br>
<input type=\"password\" name=\"password\" size=15>
<input type=\"hidden\" name=\"op\" value=\"ds\">
<P><input type=\"submit\" name=\"submit\" value=\"Log In\"/>
</FORM>";
```

3. Find the `if...else` block that looks like the following:

```
if ($show_form == "yes") {
    $display_block = $form_block;
} else if ($show_menu == "yes") {
    $display_block = $menu_block;
}
```

4. Replace the following line with the section you cut in step 2:

```
$display_block = $form_block;
```

The if...else block should now look like this:

```
if ($show_form == "yes") {
    $form_block = "<h1>Login</h1>
<form method=POST action=\"$_SERVER[PHP_SE
    $msg
    <P><strong>username:</strong><br>
    <input type=\"text\" name=\"username\" siz
    <P><strong>password:</strong><br>
    <input type=\"password\" name=\"password\""
    <input type=\"hidden\" name=\"op\" value=
    <P><input type=\"submit\" name=\"submit\" "
    </FORM>";
} else if ($show_menu == "yes") {
    $display_block = $menu_block;
}
```

5. Change the name of the variable from \$form\_block to \$display\_block.

6. The if...else block should look like this:

```
if ($show_form == "yes") {
    //build form block
    $display_block = "<h1>Login</h1>

    <form method=POST action=\"$_SERVER[PHP_SE
        $msg
        <P><strong>username:</strong><br>
        <input type=\"text\" name=\"username\" siz
        <P><strong>password:</strong><br>
        <input type=\"password\" name=\"password\""
        <input type=\"hidden\" name=\"op\" value=
        <P><input type=\"submit\" name=\"submit\" "
        </FORM>";
} else if ($show_menu == "yes") {
```

```
    $display_block = $menu_block;  
}
```

7. Find the following block of code, highlight it, and cut it out of the file (prepare to paste):

```
$menu_block = "<h1>My Contact Management System</h1>  
<P><strong>Administration</strong></P>  
<ul>  
<li><a href=\"show_addcontact.php\">Add a Contact</a>  
<li><a href=\"pick_modcontact.php\">Modify a Contact</a>  
<li><a href=\"pick_delcontact.php\">Delete a Contact</a>  
</ul>  
<P><strong>View Records</strong></P>  
<ul>  
<li><a href=\"show_contactsbyname.php\">Show Contacts by Name</a>  
</ul>";
```

8. Find the if...else block that contains the following:

```
} else if ($show_menu == "yes") {  
    $display_block = $menu_block;  
}
```

9. Replace the following line with the section you cut in step 7:

```
$display_block = $menu_block;
```

The if...else block should now look like this:

```
if ($show_form == "yes") {  
    $display_block = "<h1>Login</h1>  
<form method=POST action=\"$_SERVER[PHP_SELF]\">  
$msg  
<P><strong>username:</strong><br>  
<input type=\"text\" name=\"username\" size=20>  
<P><strong>password:</strong><br>  
<input type=\"password\" name=\"password\" size=20>  
<input type=\"hidden\" name=\"op\" value=\"login\">  
<P><input type=\"submit\" name=\"submit\" value=\"Submit\" />
```

```

        </FORM>";
    } else if ($show_menu == "yes") {
        $menu_block = "<h1>My Contact Administration</h1>
                      <P><strong>Administration</strong>
                      <ul>
                      <li><a href=\"show_addcontact.php\">Add a new contact</a>
                      <li><a href=\"pick_modcontact.php\">Modify existing contact</a>
                      <li><a href=\"pick_delcontact.php\">Delete contact</a>
                      </ul>
                      <P><strong>View Records</strong>
                      <ul>
                      <li><a href=\"show_contactsbyname.php\">Search by Name</a>
                      </ul>";
    }
}

```

10. Change the name of the variable from \$menu\_block to \$display\_block.

11. The complete if...else block should look like this:

```

if ($show_form == "yes") {
    $display_block = "
                      <h1>Login</h1>

                      <form method=POST action=\"$_SERVER[PHP_SELF]\">
                      $msg
                      <P><strong>username:</strong><br>
                      <input type=\"text\" name=\"username\" size=20>
                      <P><strong>password:</strong><br>
                      <input type=\"password\" name=\"password\" size=20>
                      <input type=\"hidden\" name=\"op\" value=\"login\">
                      <P><input type=\"submit\" name=\"submit\" value=\"Log In\" />
                      </FORM>";

} else if ($show_menu == "yes") {
    $display_block = "<h1>My Contact Administration</h1>
                      <P><strong>Administration</strong>
                      <ul>

```

```

<li><a href=\"show_addcontact.php\">Add a new contact</a>
<li><a href=\"pick_modcontact.php\">Modify existing contact</a>
<li><a href=\"pick_delcontact.php\">Delete contact</a>
</ul>
<p><strong>View Records</strong></p>
<ul>
<li><a href=\"show_contactsbyname.php\">Show contacts by name</a>
</ul>";
}

```

## 12. Save your changes before going any further.

None of those changes modified the display in any way. They simply organized your code a little bit better in preparation for the next changes.

These next changes will all take place within the second part of the `if...else` block you just modified.

1. Find this line, because the rest of the changes go right after it:

```
} else if ($show_menu == "yes") {
```

2. Create variables to hold the name of the database on which the table resides, as well as the table itself:

```
$db_name = "testDB";
$table_name = "my_contacts";
```

3. Add the connection information as you have been:

```
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike", "spike");
or die(mysql_error());
```

4. Select the database as you have learned:

```
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) or die(mysql_error());
```

5. Create a SQL statement that counts the number of entries in the `id` field:

```
$sql = "SELECT count(id) FROM $table_name";
```

6. Create a variable to hold the result of the `mysql_query()` function, as you have learned:

```
$result = @mysql_query($sql,$connection) or die
```

7. Create a variable to hold the specific value within the result:

```
$count = @mysql_result($result,0,"count(id)") or die
```

**Note** If you're working with a one-field result, the `mysql_result()` function is simpler than fetching an entire row. This function requires the result of a valid query, a row (starting at 0), and the field name.

8. The next modification is primarily aesthetic. Take the string within `$display_block` and replace it with the following HTML, creating a two-column table for menu options:

```
$display_block = "<h1>My Contact Management System</h1>

<table cellspacing=3 cellpadding=3>
<tr>
<td valign=top>
<p><strong>Administration</strong>
<ul>
<li><a href=\"show_addcontact.php\">Add a Contact</a>
<li><a href=\"pick_modcontact.php\">Modify a Contact</a>
<li><a href=\"pick_delcontact.php\">Delete a Contact</a>
</ul>
<p><strong>View Records</strong>
<ul>
<li><a href=\"show_contactsbyname.php\">Show Contacts by Name</a>
</ul>
</td>
<td valign=top>
<p><strong>Miscellaneous</strong></p>
</td>
</tr>
```

```
</table>";
```

9. In the new `$display_block` string, find the section for Miscellaneous. Start a bulleted list, and then print a list item with a text label and a bold representation of the value of `$count`. After that list item, close the list itself:

```
<ul>
<li>Contacts in system: <strong>$count</strong>
</ul>
```

10. Save your changes.

Your new code should look like this:

```
<?
//start a session
session_start();
//check if user is coming from a form
if ($_POST[op] == "ds") {
    //check username and password
    if (( $_POST[username] != "admin" ) || ( $_POST[pass]
        //handle bad login
        $msg = "<P><font color=\\"#FF0000\\">
        <strong>Bad Login - Try Again</strong>
        </font></P>";
        $show_form = "yes";
    } else {
        //handle good login
        $_SESSION[valid] = "yes";
        $show_menu = "yes";
    }
} else {
    //determine what to show
    if ( $_SESSION[valid] == "yes" ) {
        $show_menu = "yes";
    } else {
        $show_form = "yes";
    }
}
```

```

}

//assign the block to show to the $display_block variable
if ($show_form == "yes") {
    //build form block
    $display_block = "<h1>Login</h1>
<form method=POST action=\"$_SERVER[PHP_SELF]\">
$msg
<P><strong>username:</strong><br>
<input type=\"text\" name=\"username\" size=15 maxl
<P><strong>password:</strong><br>
<input type=\"password\" name=\"password\" size=16>
<input type=\"hidden\" name=\"op\" value=\"ds\">
<P><input type=\"submit\" name=\"submit\" value=\"
</FORM>";

} else if ($show_menu == "yes") {
    //set up table and database names
    $db_name = "testDB";
    $table_name = "my_contacts";

    //connect to server and select database
    $connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike"
        or die(mysql_error()));
    $db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) or die(m
        or die(mysql_error()));

    //build and issue query
    $sql = "SELECT count(id) FROM $table_name";
    $result = @mysql_query($sql, $connection) or die(m
    $count = @mysql_result($result, 0, "count(id)") or die(m

    //build menu block
    $display_block = "<h1>My Contact Management System</h1>
<table cellspacing=3 cellpadding=3>
<tr>
<td valign=top>
<P><strong>Administration</strong>
<ul>
<li><a href=\"show_addcontact.php\">Add a Contact</a>
</li>
</ul>
</td>
<td>
<table border=1>
<tr>
<td>First Name</td>
<td>Last Name</td>
<td>Address</td>
<td>City</td>
<td>State</td>
<td>Zip Code</td>
<td>Phone Number</td>
<td>Email Address</td>
</tr>
</table>
</td>
</tr>
</table>
<script>
function validateForm()
{
    var f = document.forms["myForm"];
    if (f.username.value == "" || f.password.value == "") {
        alert("Please enter both a username and password");
        return false;
    }
    return true;
}
</script>
<form name="myForm" onsubmit="return validateForm();">
<input type="text" name="username" value="" />
<input type="password" name="password" value="" />
<input type="submit" value="Log In" />
</form>";
}

```

```

<li><a href=\"pick_modcontact.php\">Modify a Cont.
<li><a href=\"pick_delcontact.php\">Delete a Cont.
</ul>
<P><strong>View Records</strong>
<ul>
<li><a href=\"show_contactsbyname.php\">Show Cont.
    Name</a>
</ul>
</td>
<td valign=top>
<P><strong>Miscellaneous</strong></P>
<ul>
<li>Contacts in system: <strong>$count</strong>
</ul>
</td>
</tr>
</table>";
}

?>
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>My Contact Management System</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<? echo "$display_block"; ?>
</BODY>
</HTML>

```

Open [http://127.0.0.1/contact\\_menu.php](http://127.0.0.1/contact_menu.php). If you've already logged in, you'll see your administrative menu. Otherwise, log in using the username (`admin`) and password (`abc123`). You should now see a new layout for the menu, as well as the number of contacts in the table, in the appropriate places.



In the [next section](#), you'll display the current date on your menu.

## Displaying Today's Date

Compared to the [previous section](#), the changes needed to display the current date are a snap! The `date()` function is highly customizable once you know all the options.

**Note** You can find a list of `date()` function options in [Appendix B](#), "Basic PHP Language Reference."

1. Open `contact_menu.php` in your text editor.
2. Find this line, because the rest of the changes go in this block:

```
    } else if ($show_menu == "yes") {
```
3. After the line that assigns a value to the `$count` variable, add this line to create a variable called `$today`, containing a formatted date string:

```
$today = date("l, F jS, Y");
```
4. Find this line in the `$display_block` string:

```
<h1>My Contact Management System</h1>
```

5. After it, add the following to print the date string:

```
<p><em>Today is $today</em></p>
```

6. Save your file.

The date format options are interpreted as shown in [Table 22.1](#).

**Table 22.1: Date Formatting Example**

Format Option	Description
l,	Long name of day (literal comma)
F	Long name of month
j	Day of month (2-digit)
S	Ordinal suffix
Y	Year (4-digit)

Open [http://127.0.0.1/contact\\_menu.php](http://127.0.0.1/contact_menu.php). If you've already logged in, you'll see your administrative menu. Otherwise, log in using the username (`admin`) and password (`abc123`). You should now see a line of text that says "Today is [your date here]."



In the [next section](#), you'll do some neat SQL to find the number of contacts whose birthdays occur during the current month, and you'll print their names in a list. This is helpful for people like me, who can't remember their mother's birthday, let alone anyone else's!

## Showing the Birthdays in the Current Month

One of the fields in your database is a field for the person's birthday. It's not required, but if you take the time to enter someone's birthday, chances are good that you actually want to remember it. This [next section](#) will print the number of contacts who have birthdays in the current month, as well as the person's name and birthday and a link to his or her contact details. Nifty!

1. Open `contact_menu.php` in your text editor.
2. Find this line, because the rest of the changes go in this block:

```
} else if ($show_menu == "yes") {
```

3. Now find the line that assigns a value to the `$today` variable, because you'll start typing things after this line:

```
$today = date("l, F jS Y");
```

4. Create a SQL statement that gets the number of people who have birthdays in the current month:

```
$get_birthday_count = "SELECT count(id) FROM $t  
WHERE MONTH(birthday) = MONTH(NOW())";
```

**Note** `MONTH()` and `NOW()` are MySQL functions used to get the month out of a date string (in this case, the value of the birthday field) and the current date, respectively. You can learn more about MySQL functions in [Appendix D](#), "Database Normalization and SQL Reference."

5. Create a variable to hold the result of the `mysql_query()` function, as you have learned:

```
$birthday_count_res = @mysql_query($get_birthday_count)  
or die(mysql_error());
```

6. Create a variable to hold the specific value within the result:

```
$birthday_count = mysql_result($birthday_count_res, 0);
```

Next, you'll have more fun with SQL. If the number of contacts who have birthdays in the current month is one or more, you'll create a string that includes the person's name, birthday, and a link to his or her contact details.

1. Find the line in `contact_menu.php` that assigns a value to the `$birthday_count` variable, and after it, create an `if` statement that will be executed if the value is true. In this case, it's looking for a positive value for `$birthday_count`:

```
if ($birthday_count > 0) {
```

2. You'll create a bulleted list within a `while` block in a moment. Start the bulleted list outside the `while` block:

```
$bd_string = "<ul>";
```

3. Create a SQL statement that selects the ID, first name, last name, month of the birthday, and day of the birthday. This SQL statement also orders the result set by birthday:

```
$get_contacts_bd = "SELECT id, f_name, l_name,
    MONTH(birthday) as month, DAYOFMONTH(birthda
    FROM $table_name WHERE
    MONTH(birthday) = MONTH(NOW()) ORDER BY birthd
```

**Note** You can select fields or parts of fields and assign a new name to them using `as [new name]` within your SQL statement. In the previous statement, you're extracting the month of a birthday and giving it a name of `month`, and you're extracting the day of a birthday and giving it a name of `date`.

4. Create a variable to hold the result of the `mysql_query()` function, as you have learned:

```
$contacts_bd_res = @mysql_query($get_contacts_bd)
    or die(mysql_error());
```

5. Start the `while` loop. The `while` loop will create an array called `$contacts_bd` for each record in the result set (`$contacts_bd_res`):

```
while ($contacts_bd = mysql_fetch_array($contac
```

6. Get the individual elements of the record, and give them good names:

```
$contact_id = $contacts_bd['id'];
$contact_fname = $contacts_bd['f_name'];
$contact_lname = $contacts_bd['l_name'];
$contact_bd_month = $contacts_bd['month'];
$contact_bd_date = $contacts_bd['date'];
```

7. Append a list item to `$bd_string` that contains the person's name and birthday. Create a link to a script called

`show_contact.php`, which you'll create in the [next section](#):

```
$bd_string .= "<li><a href=\"show_contact.php?id=$contact_id\">$contact_lname</a> ($contact_bd_month\".\"$co
```

8. Close the `while` loop, and then the bulleted list, and finally the `if` statement:

```
}
```

```
$bd_string .= "</ul>";
```

```
}
```

9. Inside `$display_block`, within the bulleted list under the Miscellaneous heading, and under a "Birthdays this month" list item, add the following:

```
$bd_string
```

10. Save your file.

The final `contact_menu.php` script should look like this, with all modifications so far in this chapter:

```
<?
//start a session
session_start();

//check if user is coming from a form
if ($_POST[op] == "ds") {

    //check username and password
    if (( $_POST[username] != "admin" ) || ( $_POST[pass
        //handle bad login
        $msg = "<P><font color=\"#FF0000\">
        <strong>Bad Login - Try Again</strong>
        </font></P>";
        $show_form = "yes";
} else {
```

```

        //handle good login
        $_SESSION[valid] = "yes";
        $show_menu = "yes";
    }
} else {
    //determine what to show
    if ($_SESSION[valid] == "yes") {
        $show_menu = "yes";
    } else {
        $show_form = "yes";
    }
}

//assign the block to show to the $display_block variable
if ($show_form == "yes") {
    //build form block
    $display_block = "<h1>Login</h1>
<form method=POST action=\"$_SERVER[PHP_SELF]\">
$msg
<P><strong>username:</strong><br>
<input type=\"text\" name=\"username\" size=15 maxl
<P><strong>password:</strong><br>
<input type=\"password\" name=\"password\" size=15 maxl
<input type=\"hidden\" name=\"op\" value=\"ds\">
<P><input type=\"submit\" name=\"submit\" value=\"
</FORM>";

} else if ($show_menu == "yes") {
    //set up table and database names
    $db_name = "testDB";
    $table_name = "my_contacts";

    //connect to server and select database
    $connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike"
        or die(mysql_error()));
    $db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) or die("Error
        //build and issue query

```

```

$sql = "SELECT count(id) FROM $table_name";
$result = @mysql_query($sql,$connection) or die(mysql_error());
$count = @mysql_result($result,0,"count(id)") or die(mysql_error());

//get current date
$today = date("l, F jS, Y");

//get birthday count
$get_birthday_count = "SELECT count(id) FROM $table_name
WHERE MONTH(birthday) = MONTH(NOW())";
$birthday_count_res = @mysql_query($get_birthday_count);
or die(mysql_error());
$birthday_count = mysql_result($birthday_count_res,0);

//create a list, based on a positive result
if ($birthday_count > 0) {
    $bd_string = "<ul>";
    $get_contacts_bd = "SELECT id, f_name, l_name,
MONTH(birthday) as month, DAYOFMONTH(birthday) as date
FROM $table_name
WHERE MONTH(birthday) = MONTH(NOW()) ORDER BY birthday";
$contacts_bd_res = @mysql_query($get_contacts_bd);
or die(mysql_error());

    while ($contacts_bd = mysql_fetch_array($contacts_bd_res)) {
        $contact_id = $contacts_bd['id'];
        $contact_fname = $contacts_bd['f_name'];
        $contact_lname = $contacts_bd['l_name'];
        $contact_bd_month = $contacts_bd['month'];
        $contact_bd_date = $contacts_bd['date'];

        $bd_string .= "<li>
< a href=\"show_contact.php?id=$contact_id\">
$contact_fname $contact_lname</a>
($contact_bd_month"."-".$contact_bd_date)" ;
    }
}

```

```

    $bd_string .= "</ul>";
}

//build menu block
$display_block = "<h1>My Contact Management System</h1>
<p><em>Today is $today</em></p>
<table cellspacing=3 cellpadding=3>
<tr>
<td valign=top>
<P><strong>Administration</strong>
<ul>
<li><a href=\"show_addcontact.php\">Add a Contact</a>
<li><a href=\"pick_modcontact.php\">Modify a Contact</a>
<li><a href=\"pick_delcontact.php\">Delete a Contact</a>
</ul>
<P><strong>View Records</strong>
<ul>
<li><a href=\"show_contactsbyname.php\">Show Contacts,
      Name</a>
      </ul>
    </td>
    <td valign=top>
      <P><strong>Miscellaneous</strong></P>
      <ul>
        <li>Contacts in system: <strong>$count</strong>
        <li>Birthdays this month: <strong>$birthday_count</strong>
      $bd_string
      </ul>
    </td>
  </tr>
</table>";
}

?>
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>My Contact Management System</TITLE>
</HEAD>
```

```
<BODY>
<? echo "$display_block"; ?>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

Open [http://127.0.0.1/contact\\_menu.php](http://127.0.0.1/contact_menu.php). If you've already logged in, you'll see your administrative menu. Otherwise, log in using the username (`admin`) and password (`abc123`). If you have any contacts in your database table whose birthdays are in the current month, you should see their names and birthdays listed.

In the [next section](#), you'll create the contact details script to display all the contact information you've been putting in the `my_contacts` table.



# Selecting Data From the my\_contacts Table

Now that all the difficult scripting is out of the way, it's time to do some simple SQL selects to display the data in the `my_contacts` table. You'll start by listing the contacts, and then you'll show the contact details.

## Displaying the Record List

The goal of this script is to display a bulleted list of the contacts in your database table, complete with a link to the `show_contact.php` script.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block. Then, start a session, or continue a session if one currently exists:

```
<?
session_start();
```

2. Start an `if...else` block that checks the value of `$_SESSION[valid]` and performs a particular action based on the result. If the value is not `yes`, the user didn't go through the proper authentication channels:

```
if ($_SESSION[valid] != "yes") {
```

3. Send the user back to the login form and exit this script:

```
header ("Location: http://127.0.0.1/contact_menu
exit;
}
```

4. Create variables to hold the name of the database on which the table resides, as well as the table itself:

```
$db_name = "testDB";
$table_name = "my_contacts";
```

5. Add the connection information as you have been:

```
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spik
or die(mysql_error());
```

6. Select the database as you have learned:

```
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) or die
```

7. Create the SQL statement. You want to select just the ID number, first name, and last name of each record in the table:

```
$sql = "SELECT id, f_name, l_name FROM $table_n
```

8. Create a variable to hold the result of the mysql\_query() function, as you have learned:

```
$result = @mysql_query($sql, $connection) or die
```

9. You'll create a bulleted list within a while block in a moment. Start the bulleted list outside the while block:

```
$contact_list = "<ul>";
```

10. Start the while loop. The while loop will create an array called \$row for each record in the result set (\$result):

```
while ($row = mysql_fetch_array($result)) {
```

11. Get the individual elements of the record and give them good names:

```
$id = $row['id'];
$f_name = $row['f_name'];
$l_name = $row['l_name'];
```

12. Append a list item to \$contact\_list that contains the person's name within a link to a script called show\_contact.php:

```
$contact_list .= "<li><a href=\"show_contact.php?>
    $f_name</a>";
```

13. Close the while loop, the bulleted list, and the PHP block:

```
}
```

```
$contact_list .= "</ul>";
```

```
?>
```

**14. Add this HTML:**

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>My Contact Management System: Contacts L
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<h1>My Contact Management System</h1>
<P>Select a contact from the list below, to vie
record.</P>
```

**15. Display the contents of \$contact\_list:**

```
<? echo "$contact_list"; ?>
```

**16. Add a link back to the main menu:**

```
<br><p><a href="contact_menu.php">Return to Mai
```

**17. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:**

```
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

**18. Save the file with the name show\_contactsbyname.php, and place this file in the document root of your web server.**

Your code should look something like this:

```
<?
//start a session
session_start();

//check for validity of user
if ($_SESSION[valid] != "yes") {
    header("Location: http://127.0.0.1/contact_menu.p
    exit;
}
```

```

//set up table and database names
$db_name = "testDB";
$table_name = "my_contacts";

//connect to server and select database
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike", "9s";
or die(mysql_error());
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) or die(m

//build and issue query
$sql = "SELECT id, f_name, l_name FROM $table_name ORDER BY l_name";
$result = @mysql_query($sql,$connection) or die(mysql_error());

//create list block of results
$contact_list = "<ul>";
while ($row = mysql_fetch_array($result)) {
    $id = $row['id'];
    $f_name = $row['f_name'];
    $l_name = $row['l_name'];
    $contact_list .= "<li>
        <a href=\"show_contact.php?id=$id\">$l_name, $f_name</a>
    </li>";
}
$contact_list .= "</ul>";
?>
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>My Contact Management System: Contacts Listed by Last Name</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<h1>My Contact Management System</h1>
<P>Select a contact from the list below, to view the contact details</P>
<? echo "$contact_list"; ?>
<br><p><a href="contact_menu.php">Return to Main Menu</a></p>
</BODY>
</HTML>

```

Open [http://127.0.0.1/contact\\_menu.php](http://127.0.0.1/contact_menu.php). If you've already logged in,

you'll see your administrative menu. Otherwise, log in using the username (`admin`) and password (`abc123`). Select the Show Contacts, Ordered by Name link.



In the [next section](#), you'll create the contact display page, `show_contact.php`.

## Displaying Read-Only Records

It's the moment of truth: displaying your contacts!

1. Open a new file in your text editor, and start a PHP block:  
`<?`
2. Start an `if...else` block that checks for a value for `$_GET[id]`, the one variable sent in the link's query string. If a value doesn't exist, direct the user back to the menu and exit the script:  

```
if (!$_GET[id]) {  
    header("Location: http://127.0.0.1/contact");  
    exit;
```
3. If the required field has a value, start a session or continue a

session if one currently exists, and then close the block:

```
} else {
    session_start();
}
```

4. Start an `if...else` block that checks the value of `$_SESSION[valid]` and performs a particular action based on the result. If the value is not `yes`, the user didn't go through the proper authentication channels:

```
if ($_SESSION[valid] != "yes") {
```

5. Send the user back to the login form, and exit this script:

```
header("Location: http://127.0.0.1/contact_menu");
exit;
}
```

6. Create variables to hold the name of the database on which the table resides, as well as the table itself:

```
$db_name = "testDB";
$table_name = "my_contacts";
```

7. Add the connection information as you have been:

```
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike"
    or die(mysql_error());
```

8. Select the database as you have learned:

```
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) or die(mysql_error());
```

9. Perform some validation on the value of `$_GET[id]`. You want to make sure that the number really exists in the system before you run SQL queries using a bad key!

```
$chk_id = "SELECT id FROM $table_name WHERE id = " .
```

10. Create a variable to hold the result of the `mysql_query()` function, as you have learned:

```
$chk_id_res = @mysql_query($chk_id,$connection)
```

11. Create a variable to count the number of rows within the result. There should be one row:

```
$chk_id_num = mysql_num_rows($chk_id_res);
```

12. Start an `if...else` block to deal with the results of the validation. The first section checks the row count. You want there to be one and only one row:

```
if ($chk_id_num != 1) {
```

13. If the row count is anything other than 1, the `id` was invalid. Redirect the user to the menu, and exit the script:

```
header("Location: http://127.0.0.1/contact_menu  
exit;
```

14. Continue the `if...else` statement, now preparing to act on a valid result:

```
} else {
```

15. Create the SQL statement. You want to select all the fields in the database except `id` for the record that has an ID equal to the value of `$_GET[id]`:

```
$sql = "SELECT f_name, l_name, address1, address2,  
country, prim_tel, sec_tel, email, birthday  
FROM $table_name WHERE id = '".$_GET[id]'" ;
```

16. Create a variable to hold the result of the `mysql_query()` function, as you have learned:

```
$result = @mysql_query($sql,$connection) or die
```

17. Start the `while` loop. The `while` loop will create an array called `$row` for each record in the result set (`$result`):  
`while ($row = mysql_fetch_array($result)) {`

18. Get the individual elements of the record and give them good names:

```
$f_name = $row['f_name'];
$l_name = $row['l_name'];
$address1 = $row['address1'];
$address2 = $row['address2'];
$address3 = $row['address3'];
$postcode = $row['postcode'];
$country = $row['country'];
$prim_tel = $row['prim_tel'];
$sec_tel = $row['sec_tel'];
$email = $row['email'];
$birthday = $row['birthday'];
```

19. Close the while loop, the if...else loop, and the PHP block:

```
}
```

}

?>

20. Type this HTML to start building the record details screen:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>My Contact Management System: Read-Only !
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<h1>My Contact Management System</h1>
```

21. Mingle HTML and PHP to show a nice title with the contact's full name:

```
<h2>Contact Details for <? echo "$f_name $l_name"; ?>
```

22. Start a paragraph with a text label:

```
<P><strong>Name & Address:</strong><br>
```

23. Display all the individual elements for name and address:

```
<? echo "$f_name $l_name"; ?><br>
<? echo "$address1"; ?><br>
<? echo "$address2"; ?><br>
<? echo "$address3"; ?><br>
<? echo "$postcode"; ?><br>
<? echo "$country"; ?></P>
```

24. Start a paragraph, and print text labels and results for the telephone and e-mail fields:

```
<P><strong>Tel 1:</strong> <? echo "$prim_tel";
<strong>Tel 2:</strong> <? echo "$sec_tel"; ?><
<strong>E-Mail:</strong> <? echo "<a href=\"$mai
$email</a>"; ?></P>
```

25. Start a paragraph, and print a text label and result for the birthday:

```
<P><strong>Birthday:</strong> <? echo "$birthda
```

26. Add a link back to the main menu, and then add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
<p><a href="contact_menu.php">Return to Main Me
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

27. Save the file with the name `show_contact.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

Open [http://127.0.0.1/contact\\_menu.php](http://127.0.0.1/contact_menu.php). If you've already logged in, you'll see your administrative menu. Otherwise, log in using the username (`admin`) and password (`abc123`). Select the Show Contacts, Ordered by Name link, and then select one of your contacts from the list.

Looks good! This is a contact in my database table that's complete. But the next figure shows what happens when the contact isn't complete.



Pretty ugly! Now you can make some modifications to `show_contact.php` to take into account the fact that only two fields (first name and last name) are required.

1. Open `show_contact.php`.
2. Scroll down to the Name & Address section.



3. Delete this section:

```

<? echo "$address1"; ?><br>
<? echo "$address2"; ?><br>
<? echo "$address3"; ?><br>
<? echo "$postcode"; ?><br>
<? echo "$country"; ?></P>
<P><strong>Tel 1:</strong> <? echo "$prim_tel"; ?><br>
<strong>Tel 2:</strong> <? echo "$sec_tel"; ?><br>
<strong>E-Mail:</strong> <? echo "<a href=\"$mai
    $email</a>"; ?></P>
<P><strong>Birthday:</strong> <? echo "$birthda

```

4. Type the following series of `if` statements, which look for a value of the specific variable and print the line only if a value is present:

```

<?
    if ($address1 != "") {
        echo "$address1 <br>";
    }
    if ($address2 != "") {
        echo "$address2 <br>";
    }
    if ($address3 != "") {
        echo "$address3 <br>";
    }
    if ($postcode != "") {
        echo "$postcode <br>";
    }
    if ($country != "") {
        echo "$country <br>";
    }
?
>
</P>
<P>
<?
    if ($prim_tel != "") {
        echo "<strong>Tel 1:</strong> $prim_t
    }

```

```

        if ($sec_tel != "") {
            echo "<strong>Tel 2:</strong> $sec_te
        }
        if ($email != "") {
            echo "<strong>E-Mail:</strong>
<a href=\"mailto:$email\">$email</a>
        }
    ?>
</P>
<?
    if ($birthday != "0000-00-00") {
        echo "<P><strong>Birthday:</strong> $b
    }
?>

```

## 5. Save this file.

Now when you view an incomplete record, you don't see all that white space.



So there you have it—a complete online contact-management system utilizing sessions and user authentication. There are plenty of areas for

modification and additional validation checks, so take some time and play with these scripts until you are comfortable with the concepts. For example, you might want a different set of fields to be required, or you might want to add more fields to your table (and thus your forms and display scripts). These simple concepts will help you to understand and build larger applications.

## **Part VII: Additional Project Examples**

## **Chapter List**

[Chapter 23:](#) Managing a Simple Mailing List

[Chapter 24:](#) Creating Custom Logs and Reports

[Chapter 25:](#) Working with XML

## **Chapter 23: Managing a Simple Mailing List**

## Overview

Eventually, your website will have visitors, and someday you might even want to send a newsletter to them. You can create a very simple subscription and publication mechanism using PHP and MySQL. In this chapter, you learn how to:

- Create a subscribe/unsubscribe script
- Create a front end to sending a newsletter
- Create a script that mails your newsletter to all recipients in your database

## A Brief Word About Mailing List Software

Several very good mailing list applications are available to send mail to large numbers of e-mail addresses. The type of system you'll build in this chapter should be used only for small lists of less than a few hundred e-mail addresses.

The system described in this chapter was born from my own laziness one day, when I didn't want to download and install any third-party software. I just made some very simple files that performed a task. That's the beauty of PHP: It's such a simple language that sometimes it's easier to write a few scripts than to download or install something. However, when your mailing list grows large enough, please move to a more robust mailing list application that's a bit easier on your outgoing mail server, and also on you, the administrator.

# Developing a Subscription Mechanism

Before you can start sending mail to a mailing list, you need to build up that subscriber base. A simple subscribe/unsubscribe script will take care of that! All this script does is add or delete records in a MySQL database table, called `subscribers`, which you'll create in the [next section](#).

## Creating the `subscribers` Table

My `subscribers` table has three fields, as shown in [Table 23.1](#). You can have as many or as few fields as you want.

**Table 23.1: Fields for the `subscribers` Table**

Field Name	Description
<code>id</code>	A primary key that holds the subscriber's auto-incrementing ID number
<code>email_addr</code>	Holds the subscriber's e-mail address
<code>date_added</code>	The date the user subscribed

Next, you'll actually create this table, using the table-creation scripts you're familiar with at this point!

1. Open your web browser and type  
[http://127.0.0.1/show\\_createtable.html](http://127.0.0.1/show_createtable.html).
2. In the Table Name field, type `subscribers`.
3. In the Number of Fields field, type 3.
4. Click on the Go to Step 2 button, where you will see three rows, corresponding to the three fields you want to create in the `subscribers` table.

FIELD NAME	FIELD TYPE	FIELD LENGTH	PRIMARY KEY?	AUTO-INCREMENT?
<input type="text"/>	char	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="text"/>	char	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="text"/>	char	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Populate the fields in these next steps:

1. In the first row, type `id` for Field Name, select `int` from the Field Type drop-down menu, check the check box for Primary Key, and check the check box for Auto-Increment.
2. In the second row, type `email_addr` for Field Name, select `varchar` from the Field Type drop-down menu, and specify a Field Length of 100.
3. In the third row, type `date_added` for Field Name and select `date` from the Field Type drop-down menu.

The completed form should look like the figure on the next page.

FIELD NAME	FIELD TYPE	FIELD LENGTH	PRIMARY KEY?	AUTO-INCREMENT?
id	int		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
email_addr	varchar	100	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
date_added	date		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**Create Table**

4. Click on the Create Table button to create the subscribers table.

You will see a confirmation of the table's creation.

**Adding table to testDB...**

subscribers has been created!

In the [next section](#), you will create the subscribe/unsubscribe form mechanism.

## Creating the Subscription Form

Like the "all-in-one" mail form in [Chapter 8](#), "Sending E-Mail," the subscription form will be used for subscribing, unsubscribing, and error checking.

1. Open a new file in your text editor, and start a PHP block:  
<?
2. Create variables to hold the name of the database on which the table resides, as well as the table itself:

```
$db_name = "testDB";  
$table_name = "subscribers";
```

Next, you'll check for a variable you haven't yet created. When you create the actual HTML form, you'll add a hidden field called `op` with a value of `ds`. The `$_POST[op]` variable will be present only if the form has been submitted.

3. Start an `if...else` block, and first check if the value of `$_POST[op]` is `ds`:

```
if ($_POST[op] != "ds") {
```

4. If the value of `$_POST[op]` is not `ds`, the user hasn't seen the form. If the user hasn't seen the form, you need to show it. Create a variable called `$text_block` that will hold the entire form. Start with the form action, and assume that the method is `POST` and the action is `$_SERVER[PHP_SELF]`:

```
$text_block = "  
<form method=POST action=\"$_SERVER[PHP_SELF]\">
```

5. Add the hidden field:

```
<input type=hidden name=op value=ds>
```

6. Create an input field for the user's e-mail address with a text label:

```
<p><strong>Your E-Mail Address:</strong><br>  
<input type=text name=\"email_addr\" size=25 ma:
```

7. Create a set of radio buttons so that the user can select an action of subscribe or unsubscribe. The default should be the subscribe radio button:

```
<p><strong>Action:</strong><br>
<input type=radio name=\"action\" value=\"sub\" checked
<input type=radio name=\"action\" value=\"unsub\"
```

8. Add a submit button, and then close the form and string:

```
<p><input type=submit name=\"submit\" value=\"Submit\">
</form>;
```

9. Continue the `if...else` block to check for a value of `ds` for `$_POST[op]`, as well as a value of `sub` for the `$_POST[action]` variable. This means that the user is attempting to subscribe:

```
} else if (($_POST[op] == "ds") && ($_POST[action] == "sub")) {
```

10. But what if someone clicks on the button and doesn't enter an e-mail address? Add an `if` block that checks for a value in `$_POST[email_addr]`. If a value is not found, redirect the user to the original form:

```
if ($_POST[email_addr] == "") {
    header("Location: http://127.0.0.1/manage.");
    exit;
}
```

11. You'll need to check that the user isn't already subscribed, so open a database connection as you have learned:

```
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike");
or die(mysql_error());
```

12. Select the database as you have learned:

```
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) or die(mysql_error());
```

13. Create a SQL statement that looks for records matching the user's e-mail address:

```
$check = "select X_POST[email_addr] '";
```

14. Create a variable to hold the result of the `mysql_query()` function, as you have learned:

```
$check_result = @mysql_query($check, $connection)
```

15. Create a variable to count the number of rows in the result set:

```
$check_num = mysql_num_rows($check_result);
```

16. Create an inner `if...else` block that performs an action based on the value of `$check_num`. If `$check_num` is less than 1, no entries in the `subscribers` table have the user's e-mail address, so it's safe to insert one:

```
if ($check_num < 1) {
```

17. Create a SQL statement to insert the e-mail address and the MySQL function `now()`, which inserts the current date (leave a blank entry for the auto-incrementing `id`):

```
$sql = "insert into $table_name values('', '$P  
now())";
```

18. Execute the query, as you have learned:

```
$result = @mysql_query($sql, $connection) or die
```

19. Create a message string so that the user knows the result:

```
$text_block = "<P>Thanks for signing up!</P>";
```

20. Finish the `if...else` block by creating a message string that tells the user she has already signed up. Then close the inner `if...else` block:

```
} else {  
    $text_block = "<P>You're already subscribe  
}
```

21. Continue the outer `if...else` block to check for a value of `ds` for

`$_POST[op]`, as well as a value of `unsub` for the `$_POST[action]` variable. This means that the user is attempting to unsubscribe.

```
} else if (($_POST[op] == "ds") && ($_POST[acti
```

22. Again, add the validation that checks for a value in `$_POST[email_addr]`. If a value is not found, redirect the user to the original form:

```
if ($_POST[email_addr] == "") {  
    header("Location: http://127.0.0.1/manage.");  
    exit;  
}
```

23. You'll need to check that the user is in fact subscribed, so open a database connection and select the database:

```
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike"  
    or die(mysql_error());  
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) o
```

24. Create a SQL statement that looks for records matching the user's e-mail address. Also select the `id` field, because you'll use it to unsubscribe if you find a match:

```
$check = "select id, email_addr from $table_name  
email_addr = '$_POST[email_addr]'";
```

25. Execute the query:

```
$check_result = @mysql_query($check, $connection);
```

26. Create a variable to count the number of rows in the result set:

```
$check_num = mysql_num_rows($check_result);
```

27. Create an inner `if...else` block that performs an action based on the value of `$check_num`. If `$check_num` is less than 1, no entries in the `subscribers` table have the user's e-mail address, so you can't unsubscribe the user.

```
if ($check_num < 1) {
```

28. Create a message string so that the user knows the result:

```
$text_block = "<P>Couldn't find your e-mail on  
<P>You haven't been unsubscribed, because the e  
is not in the database.</P>";
```

29. Continue the inner if...else block:

```
} else {
```

30. Create a variable to hold the specific value of `id`, from the previous result set:

```
$id = @mysql_result($check_result, 0, "id");
```

31. Create a SQL statement that deletes the user's e-mail address from the `subscribers` table:

```
$sql = "delete from $table_name where id = '$_P'
```

32. Execute the query:

```
$result = @mysql_query($sql,$connection) or die
```

33. Create a message string so that the user knows the result:

```
$text_block = "<P>You're unsubscribed!</p>";
```

34. Close the inner if...else block, the outer if...else block, and the PHP block:

```
}
```

```
}
```

```
?>
```

35. Add the following HTML:

```
<HTML>  
<HEAD>  
<TITLE>Subscribe/Unsubscribe</TITLE>  
</HEAD>
```

```
<BODY>
<h1>Subscribe/Unsubscribe</h1>
```

36. Display the contents of \$text\_block:

```
<?php echo "$text_block"; ?>
```

37. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

38. Save the file with the name manage.php, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

Your entire code should look something like this:

```
<?
//set up table and database names
$db_name = "testDB";
$table_name = "subscribers";

//determine if they need to see the form or not
if ($_POST[op] != "ds") {
    //create form block
    $text_block =
        <form method=POST action=\"$_SERVER[PHP_SELF]\">
        <input type=hidden name=op value=ds>
        <p><strong>Your E-Mail Address:</strong><br>
        <input type=text name=email_addr" size=25 maxl...
        <p><strong>Action:</strong><br>
        <input type=radio name="action" value="sub" c...
        <input type=radio name="action" value="unsub">
        <p><input type=submit name="submit" value="Sub...
        </form>;
} else if (($_POST[op] == "ds") && ($_POST[action] ==
    //trying to subscribe; validate email address
    if ($_POST[email_addr] == "") {
        header("Location: http://127.0.0.1/manage.ph...
        exit;
```

```

}

//connect to server and select database
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike"
    or die(mysql_error());
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) or

//check that email is not already in list
$check = "select email_addr from $table_name
where email_addr = '$_POST[email_addr]'";
$check_result = @mysql_query($check,$connection)
$check_num = mysql_num_rows($check_result);

//get number of results and do action
if ($check_num < 1) {
    //add record
    $sql = "insert into $table_name
values('', '$_POST[email_addr]', now())";
    $result = @mysql_query($sql,$connection) or
    $text_block = "<P>Thanks for signing up!</P>
} else {
    //print failure message
$text_block = "<P>You're already subscribed!</P>
}

} else if (($_POST[op] == "ds") && ($_POST[action] ==
//trying to unsubscribe; validate email address
if ($_POST[email_addr] == "") {
    header("Location: http://127.0.0.1/manage.ph
    exit;
}

//connect to server and select database
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike"
or die(mysql_error());
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) or

```

```

//check that email is in list
$ccheck = "select id, email_addr from $table_name
where email_addr = '".$_POST[email_addr]'";
$ccheck_result = @mysql_query($check, $connection)
$ccheck_num = mysql_num_rows($check_result);

//get number of results and do action
if ($check_num < 1) {
    //print failure message
    $text_block = "<P>Couldn't find your e-mail .
    <P>You haven't been unsubscribed, because the
    you entered is not in the database.</P>";
} else {
    //unsubscribe the address
    $id = @mysql_result($check_result, 0, "id");
    $sql = "delete from $table_name where id = '$id'";
    $result = @mysql_query($sql,$connection) or
    $text_block = "<P>You're unsubscribed!</p>";
}
?>
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Subscribe/Unsubscribe</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<h1>Subscribe/Unsubscribe</h1>
<?php echo "$text_block"; ?>
</BODY>
</HTML>

```

In the [next section](#), you subscribe and unsubscribe sample users and see how all the address validation works out.

## Testing the Subscription Form

Now that you've made it through all those steps in creating the

subscription form, it's time to test it!

1. Open your web browser and type  
<http://127.0.0.1/manage.php>.



You will see a form containing a text field for the person's e-mail address, two radio buttons for either subscribing or unsubscribing, and a button that says Submit Form.

2. Type your e-mail address in the Your E-Mail Address field, select the Subscribe radio button, and then submit the form.



You will see a confirmation that your subscription was successful.

3. Return to the form using your web browser's Back button, and type the same e-mail address in the Your E-Mail Address field.
4. Select the Subscribe radio button (again), and then submit the form.



You will see a message indicating that you've already subscribed.

5. Return to the form using your web browser's Back button, and type the same e-mail address in the Your E-Mail Address field. This time, select the Unsubscribe radio button and submit the form.



You will see a confirmation that you have unsubscribed.

6. Return to the form using your web browser's Back button, and attempt to unsubscribe the same e-mail address.



You will see a confirmation that your e-mail address wasn't in the database, so you haven't been unsubscribed.

Continue adding a few of your own e-mail addresses because in the [next section](#) you create the form and script to send a newsletter to a list of people, and it would be great to have a real list of people.

# Developing the Mailing Mechanism

Now that you have the subscribe/unsubscribe mechanism in place, you can create a very basic form interface to a mailing script. This mailing mechanism will take the contents of your form and send them to every address in your subscribers table.

## Creating the Newsletter Form

I wasn't kidding when I said you'd create a "simple" form. I just use a text field for the subject of the newsletter and a text area for the newsletter's body. You can use as many form fields as you like, as long as you modify the form and script appropriately.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and type the following HTML:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Send a Newsletter</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<h1>Send a Newsletter</h1>
```

2. Begin your form. Assume that the method is `POST` and the action is a script called `do_send_newsletter.php`:

```
<FORM METHOD="POST" ACTION="do_send_newsletter.php">
```

3. Create an input field for the newsletter subject with a text label:

```
<P><strong>Give it a subject:</strong><br>
<input type="text" name="subject" size=30></p>
```

4. Create a text area for the newsletter body with a text label:

```
<P><strong>Newsletter body:</strong><br>
<textarea name="newsletter" cols=50 rows=10 wrap>
```

5. Add a submit button:

```
<p><input type="submit" name="submit" value="Send Newsletter"></p>
```

6. Close your form, and add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</FORM>  
</BODY>  
</HTML>
```

7. Save the file with the name `send_newsletter.html`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.
8. Open your web browser and type  
[http://127.0.0.1/send\\_newsletter.html](http://127.0.0.1/send_newsletter.html).



You will see a form containing a text field for the newsletter's subject, a text area for the message, and a button that says Send Newsletter.

In the [next section](#), you create the back-end script. That script will expect two variables: `$_POST[subject]` and `$_POST[newsletter]`.

## Creating the Script to Mail Your Newsletter

According to the form action in `send_newsletter.html`, you need a script called `do_send_newsletter.php`. The goal of this script is to accept the text in `$_POST[subject]` and `$_POST[newsletter]` and then send it off in the form of an e-mail to everyone listed in your

subscribers table.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and begin a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. Start an if...else block, and check that a value has been entered for `$_POST[subject]` and `$_POST[newsletter]`. If either variable is empty, direct the user back to the form:

```
if (($_POST[subject] == "") || ($_POST[newslette  
header("Location: http://127.0.0.1/send_ne  
exit;
```

3. Continue the if...else block:

```
} else {
```

4. Create variables to hold the name of the database on which the table resides, as well as the table itself:

```
$db_name = "testDB";  
$table_name = "subscribers";
```

5. Connect to the database server and select the database, as you have learned:

```
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spik  
or die(mysql_error());  
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) o
```

6. Create a SQL statement that selects all the e-mail addresses in your `subscribers` table:

```
$sql = "select email_addr from $table_name";
```

7. Execute the query:

```
$result = @mysql_query($sql, $connection) or die
```

8. Create a variable to hold a From: mail header.

```
$headers = "From: Your Mailing List <you@yourdo
```

9. Start the `while` loop. The `while` loop will send an e-mail message to each record in the table, and then print a confirmation that the mail was sent:

```
while ($row = mysql_fetch_array($result)) {
```

10. Get the e-mail address for the record:

```
$email_addr = $row['email_addr'];
```

11. Format the call to the `mail()` function. Use the `stripslashes()` function on the value of the `$_POST[subject]` and `$_POST[newsletter]` variables. This will remove any slashes automatically entered in your text by PHP to escape special characters:

```
mail("$email_addr", stripslashes($_POST[subject])  
     stripslashes($_POST[newsletter]), $headers
```

12. Print a confirmation:

```
echo "newsletter sent to: $email_addr<br>";
```

13. Close the `while` loop, the `if...else` block, and the PHP block:

```
}  
}  
?>
```

14. Save the file with the name `do_send_newsletter.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

Your code should look something like this:

```
<?  
//check for required fields  
if (( $_POST[subject] == "") || ( $_POST[newsletter] == "" ))  
    header("Location: http://127.0.0.1/send_newsletter");  
    exit;  
} else {  
    //set up table and database names
```

```

$db_name = "testDB";
$table_name = "subscribers";

//connect to server and select database
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike"
    or die(mysql_error());
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) or die("Error selecting db");

//build and issue query
$sql = "select email_addr from $table_name";
$result = @mysql_query($sql,$connection) or die(mysql_error());
//create a From: mailheaders
$headers = "From: Your Mailing List <you@yourdomain.com>";
//loop through results and send mail
while ($row = mysql_fetch_array($result)) {
    $email_addr = $row['email_addr'];
    mail("$email_addr", stripslashes($_POST[subject]),
        stripslashes($_POST[newsletter]), $headers);
    echo "newsletter sent to: $email_addr<br>";
}
}

?>

```

In the [next section](#), you'll create a sample newsletter and send it to your subscribers.

## Testing Your Mailing List Mechanism

In this section, you put your script to the test and send a newsletter to all of your subscribers. Be sure your own e-mail address is in the list, otherwise you won't be absolutely sure that the system worked.

1. With your web browser already open to the form for sending the newsletter, type a subject in the subject field and a chunk of text in the text area to represent the newsletter.

**Note** The figures show sample text that I typed and e-mail addresses on my sample subscriber list. Your results

will differ, although the sequence of events remains the same.

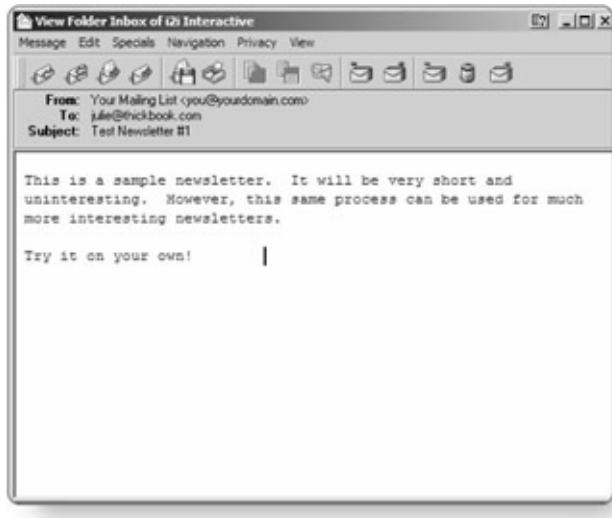
2. Submit the form by clicking the Send Newsletter button.



You will see a confirmation of the e-mail addresses to which your newsletter was sent.



3. Check your e-mail if your address is in the `subscribers` table.



You should have a nicely formatted newsletter in your mailbox!

## Troubleshooting Your Mailing List Mechanism

If you receive an error such as "Warning: Can't connect", you must make sure you modified the value of SMTP in your `php.ini` file. This topic is covered in [Chapter 8](#), "Sending E-Mail," and is a simple fix.

Another common problem when using this type of mailing list mechanism is that the script will time out eventually, if your list is long enough. This is one of the reasons not to use this type of mechanism for sending newsletters to large lists of recipients. Because all this script does is execute the `mail()` function numerous times, it does not take into account the queuing factors in real mailing list software, which are designed to ease the burden on your outgoing mail server.

To get around a problem with the script timing out, you can reset the timer within the execution of the script. Essentially, by inserting the following line within your `while` loop, you are setting the timer to 0 before each call to the `mail()` function:

```
set_time_limit(0);
```

Your `while` loop would now look like this:

```
while ($row = mysql_fetch_array($result)) {
```

```
set_time_limit(0);
$email_addr = $row['email_addr'];
mail("$email_addr", stripslashes($_POST[$subject])
    stripslashes($_POST[newsletter]), $headers);
echo "newsletter sent to: $email_addr<br>";
}
```

Remember, this does not ease the burden on your outgoing mail server. It just allows the script to continue to run, when it might have timed out before.

In the [next chapter](#), you tackle another project. When you create a website, you will want to know some numbers regarding visitors—who, what, where, and how. Your next project will be to build a custom reporting mechanism for these sorts of metrics.

## **Chapter 24: Creating Custom Logs and Reports**

## Overview

If you're building a website for public use, chances are good that you'll want to know which part of your site is most popular, least popular, what types of web browsers are used, and so on. Although Apache keeps a generic log file of accesses and errors, you can create a few code snippets to store specific information in your MySQL database. In this chapter, you learn how to:

- Create a simple access-counting mechanism with MySQL
- Display the access counts on a page and in a report
- Track form submissions
- Create a synopsis report of the form submissions

## A Note About Apache Log Files

The Apache web server automatically logs specific information regarding user accesses and errors. These log files are found in the logs directory. A file called `access.log` handles the accesses, and the `error.log` file handles errors.

The default display for the access log looks something like the following (this was taken from my own access log):

```
127.0.0.1 [22/Feb/2004:05:27:10] "GET /show_createtable"
127.0.0.1 [22/Feb/2004:05:27:46] "POST /do_showfieldde
127.0.0.1 [22/Feb/2004:05:28:49] "POST /do_createtable
127.0.0.1 [22/Feb/2004:05:43:33] "GET /manage.php HTTP
```

This looks rather cryptic, I know. You can set the format in your `httpd.conf` file like so:

```
LogFormat "%h %l %u %t \"%r\" %s %b"
```

In this case, the format maps to the descriptions listed in [Table 24.1](#).

**Table 24.1: Apache Log File Settings**

Symbol	Description
%h	Remote host name of the machine making the request, or IP if <code>HostnameLookup = off</code>
%l	Remote log name (usually empty)
%u	URL path requested by the user
%t	Time of access
"%r"	First line of request, inside quotation marks
%s	Status of the request
%b	Number of bytes sent, excluding headers

**Note** You can also log elements such as the user agent (web

browser) within the Apache access log.

Although many log analysis packages are available to purchase or download, the all-encompassing Apache access log might be overkill for simple tasks. This chapter shows you some methods of tracking specific accesses and actions, which have more relevance to you than "all access, all information, all the time."

# Simple Access Counting with MySQL

To capture access information for specific subsections of your website, or even just the main page, you can create a simple database table and accompanying PHP code snippet.

Using the now-familiar process of table creation, first you'll create a simple database table to hold all your access records.

## Creating the Database Table

In this example, you will log four elements: page name, page description, user agent, and date accessed. First, create the database table.

1. Open your web browser and type  
[http://127.0.0.1/show\\_createtable.html](http://127.0.0.1/show_createtable.html).
2. In the Table Name field, type `page_track`.
3. In the Number of Fields field, type 5.
4. Click on the Go to Step 2 button. You should see a form with five rows, corresponding to the five fields you want to create in the `page_track` table.

Populate the fields in these next steps:

1. In the first row, type `id` for the Field Name, select `int` from the Field Type drop-down menu, and check the Primary Key and Auto-Increment boxes.
2. In the first row, type `page_name` for the Field Name, select `varchar` from the Field Type drop-down menu, and specify a Field Length of 50.
3. In the second row, type `page_desc` for the Field Name and select `text` from the Field Type drop-down menu.
4. In the third row, type `user_agent` for the Field Name and

select text from the Field Type drop-down menu.

5. In the fourth row, type `date_added` for the Field Name and select date from the Field Type drop-down menu.

The completed form should look like the following figure.

6. Click on the Create Table button to create the `page_track` table.

FIELD NAME	FIELD TYPE	FIELD LENGTH	PRIMARY KEY?	AUTO-INCREMENT?
id	int		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
page_name	varchar	50	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
page_desc	text		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
user_agent	text		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
date_added	date		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

In the [next section](#), you create a code snippet that writes tracking information to the `page_track` table.

## Creating the Code Snippet

"Code snippet" is a highly technical term that means "a little bit of code." I'm kidding about the "highly technical" part, but a code snippet is usually something that doesn't qualify as a long script. Rather, it just serves a simple purpose. In this case, your code snippet will write some basic information to the `page_track` table and then merrily finish displaying some rather boring HTML.

1. Open a new file in your text editor, and start a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. Create four variables, corresponding to the four non-ID fields in the `page_track` table, and give them some values:

```
$page_name = "sample 1";  
$page_desc = "This is a sample page of no use."  
$user_agent = getenv("HTTP_USER_AGENT");  
$date_added = date("Y-m-d");
```

3. Create variables to hold the name of the database on which the table resides, as well as the table itself:

```
$db_name = "testDB";  
$table_name = "page_track";
```

4. Add the connection information as you have been:

```
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike"  
    or die(mysql_error()));
```

5. Select the database as you have learned:

```
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) o
```

6. Create a SQL statement that inserts the values into four fields in the `page_track` table, leaving the ID field blank so that it increments automatically:

```
$sql = "insert into $table_name values  
    ('', '$page_name', '$page_desc', '$user_agenc
```

7. Execute the query, and then close the PHP block:

```
$result = @mysql_query($sql, $connection) or die  
?>
```

You've just created the code snippet, which should look something like this:

```
<?  
//set up static variables  
$page_name = "sample 1";
```

```

$page_desc = "This is a sample page of no use.";
$user_agent = getenv("HTTP_USER_AGENT");
$date_added = date("Y-m-d");

//set up table and database names
$db_name = "testDB";
$table_name = "page_track";

//connect to server and select database
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike", "9s"
    or die(mysql_error()));
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) or die(mysql_
?>

//build and issue query
$sql = "insert into $table_name values
('', '$page_name', '$page_desc', '$user_agent', '$date_
$result = @mysql_query($sql,$connection) or die(mysql_
?>

```

Now create a bit of filler HTML, directly after the code snippet:

```

<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Sample Page #1</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<h1>Useless Sample Page #1</h1>
<p>This sample page serves no real purpose!</p>
</BODY>
</HTML>

```

Save the file with the name `sample_page1.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server. To make things a little more interesting in your reports, make another one of these sample files so that you've got something more to count than just this one file.

Copy `sample_page1.php` to `sample_page2.php`, and change the first two variables in `sample_page2.php` to the following:

```
$page_name = "sample 2";
$page_desc = "Another useless sample page.";
```

Replace the HTML block in `sample_page2.php` with this:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Sample Page #2</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<h1>Useless Sample Page #2</h1>
<p>I can't believe how useless this page is!</p>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

Now save this file and place it in the document root of your web server as well.

Next, you'll access these pages a few times to get the internal counting going.

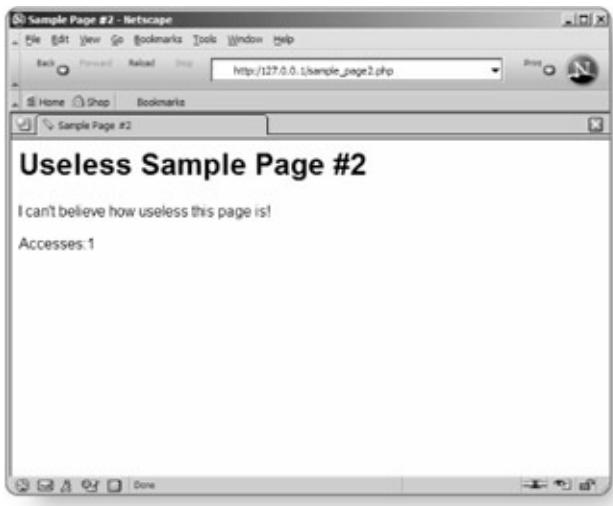
1. Open your web browser and type  
[http://127.0.0.1/sample\\_page1.php](http://127.0.0.1/sample_page1.php).

You will see the HTML page, with a heading and some text.

2. Open your web browser and type  
[http://127.0.0.1/sample\\_page2.php](http://127.0.0.1/sample_page2.php).



You will see the HTML page with a different heading and some different text.



Keep reloading these pages a few times, and then move on to the [next section](#), where the count will be displayed.

## Displaying the Count

Displaying the count on each of these pages is a snap. You just need to add three lines to your code snippet and one line inside your HTML block.

1. Open `sample_page1.php` in your text editor.

2. Directly before the end of the PHP block, create a SQL statement that gets the number of accesses for this particular page:

```
$count_sql = "select count(page_name) from $tab  
where page_name = '$page_name'";
```

**Note** Place the counting code after the insertion code to be sure that you're counting the current access as well!

3. Execute the query:

```
$count_res = @mysql_query($count_sql,$connection);
```

4. Create a variable to hold the specific count within the context of the current result set:

```
$count = @mysql_result($count_res, 0, "count(pa
```

5. In your HTML block, mingle HTML with PHP to print the value of \$count:

```
<P>Accesses: <? echo "$count"; ?></p>
```

Your new `sample_page1.php` script should look like this:

```
<?  
//set up static variables  
$page_name = "sample 1";  
$page_desc = "This is a sample page of no use.";  
$user_agent = getenv("HTTP_USER_AGENT");  
$date_added = date("Y-m-d");  
  
//set up table and database names  
$db_name = "testDB";  
$table_name = "page_track";  
  
//connect to server and select database  
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike", "9s
```

```

        or die(mysql_error());
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) or die(m
//build and issue query
$sql = "insert into $table_name values
      ('', '$page_name', '$page_desc', '$user_agent', '$d
$result = @mysql_query($sql,$connection) or die(mysql_
//get count
$count_sql = "select count(page_name) from $table_name
    where page_name = '$page_name'";
$count_res = @mysql_query($count_sql,$connection) or d
$count = @mysql_result($count_res, 0, "count(page_name
?>
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Sample Page #1</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<h1>Useless Sample Page #1</h1>
<P>This sample page serves no real purpose!</p>
<P>Accesses: <? echo "$count"; ?></p>
</BODY>
</HTML>

```

Make the same types of changes to `sample_page2.php`, and make sure you save both files.

Next, you access these pages again and see the count displayed on the page.

1. Open your web browser and type  
[http://127.0.0.1/sample\\_page1.php](http://127.0.0.1/sample_page1.php).



You will see the HTML page, with a heading and some text, followed by the access count you've reached. In this example, I've accessed this sample page five times.

2. Open your web browser and type  
[http://127.0.0.1/sample\\_page2.php](http://127.0.0.1/sample_page2.php).

You will see the HTML page, with a heading and some text, followed by the access count you've reached. In this example, I've accessed this sample page seven times.



In the [next section](#), you create an access report page, which you can use to check the status of the pages you're tracking in the `page_track`

table.

## Creating Your Personal Access Report

You have all this great data in your `page_track` table, so now it's time to create a simple page that counts it all up for you. There's no need to weed through cryptic Apache access logs or install additional software packages to display statistics for you, when it's this simple!

Start by creating a simple count of the total hits to your tracked pages (all-inclusive).

1. Open a new file in your text editor, and start a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. Create variables to hold the name of the database on which the table resides, as well as the table itself:

```
$db_name = "testDB";  
$table_name = "page_track";
```

3. Add the connection information as you have been:

```
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spik"  
    or die(mysql_error()));
```

4. Select the database as you have learned:

```
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) o
```

5. Create a SQL statement that counts all the entries in the `page_track` table:

```
$count_sql = "select count(page_name) from $tab
```

6. Execute the query:

```
$count_res = @mysql_query($count_sql, $connecti
```

7. Create a variable to hold the specific count within the context of the current result set, and then close the PHP block:

```
$all_count = @mysql_result($count_res, 0, "count");
?>
```

8. Add this HTML:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>My Access Report</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<h1>My Access Report</h1>
```

9. Mingle HTML and PHP to print the name of the table, as well as the number of accesses tracked in the table:

```
<P><strong>Total Accesses Tracked in
<? echo "$table_name"; ?>:</strong> <? echo "$a
```

10. Add some more HTML so that the document is valid:

```
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

11. Save the file with the name `access_report.php`, and place this file in the document root of your web server.

Your code should look something like this:

```
<?
//set up table and database names
$db_name = "testDB";
$table_name = "page_track";

//connect to server and select database
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike", "9s
    or die(mysql_error()));
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) or die(m

//issue query and select results
$count_sql = "select count(page_name) from $table_name
$count_res = @mysql_query($count_sql, $connection) or
```

```

$all_count = @mysql_result($count_res, 0, "count(page_
?>
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>My Access Report</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<h1>My Access Report</h1>
<P><strong>Total Accesses Tracked in <? echo "$table_n
?>:</strong> <? echo "$all_count"; ?></p>
</BODY>
</HTML>

```

Next, test it! Open your web browser and type  
[http://127.0.0.1/access\\_report.php](http://127.0.0.1/access_report.php).

You will see the HTML page with a heading and some text, followed by the access count you've reached for all pages. In this example, I've accessed the two sample pages a total of 12 times.



## Displaying the User Agents

In this section, you make some minor additions to the `access_report.php` script to display and count the different web browsers used by those accessing your pages.

1. Open `access_report.php` in your text editor.
2. Before the closing PHP tag, create a SQL statement that finds all distinct entries in the `user_agent` field of the `page_track` table, counts these entries, and returns the results in descending order:

```
$user_agent_sql = "select distinct user_agent,  
from $table_name group by user_agent order by c
```

3. Execute the query:

```
$user_agent_res = @mysql_query($user_agent_sql,  
or die(mysql_error()));
```

4. You'll create a bulleted list within a `while` block in a moment. Start the bulleted list outside the `while` block:

```
$user_agent_block = "<ul>";
```

5. Start the `while` loop. The `while` loop will create an array called `$row_ua` for each record in the result set (`$user_agent_res`):

```
while ($row_ua = mysql_fetch_array($user_agent_
```

6. Get the individual elements of the record and give them good names:

```
$user_agent = $row_ua['user_agent'];  
$user_agent_count = $row_ua['count'];
```

7. Add to `$user_agent_block` by creating one bulleted item and one additional bulleted list. The bulleted item will show the name of the user agent. Then, the second bulleted list will show the number of accesses by that particular user agent. After adding to `$user_agent_block`, close the `while` loop:

```
$user_agent_block .= "  
    <li>$user_agent  
        <ul>
```

```
    <li><em>accesses per browser: $user_agent_
    </ul>";
}


```

8. Close the bulleted list you created in \$user\_agent\_block:

```
$user_agent_block .= "</ul>";
```

9. In the HTML section, add the following, and then save the file:

```
<P><strong>Web Browsers Used:</strong>
<? echo "$user_agent_block"; ?>
```

Your new code should look something like this:

```
<?
//set up table and database names
$db_name = "testDB";
$table_name = "page_track";

//connect to server and select database
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike", "9s
    or die(mysql_error());
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) or die(m
//issue query and select results for counts
$count_sql = "select count(page_name) from $table_name"
$count_res = @mysql_query($count_sql, $connection) or (
$count_all = @mysql_result($count_res, 0, "count(page_"

//issue query and select results for user agents
$user_agent_sql = "select distinct user_agent, count(u
from $table_name group by user_agent order by count de
$user_agent_res = @mysql_query($user_agent_sql, $connection
    or die(mysql_error()));

//start user agent display block
$user_agent_block = "<ul>";

//loop through results
while ($row_ua = mysql_fetch_array($user_agent_res)) {
```

```

$user_agent = $row_ua['user_agent'];
$user_agent_count = $row_ua['count'];
$user_agent_block .= "
<li>$user_agent
<ul>
<li><em>accesses per browser: $user_agent_count</em>
</ul>";
}

//finish up the user agent block
$user_agent_block .= "</ul>";
?>
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>My Access Report</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<h1>My Access Report</h1>
<P><strong>Total Accesses Tracked in
<? echo "$table_name"; ?></strong> <? echo "$all_count"; ?>

<P><strong>Web Browsers Used:</strong>
<? echo "$user_agent_block"; ?>

</BODY>
</HTML>

```

Let's see which user agents have been accessing your pages. Open your web browser and type [http://127.0.0.1/access\\_report.php](http://127.0.0.1/access_report.php).



You will see the HTML page, with a heading and some text, followed by the access count you've reached for all pages. You will also see a list of user agents and the total accesses for each type. In this example, I've accessed the two sample pages a total of 17 times, with two different web browsers.

In the [next section](#), you make the final modifications to the `access_report.php` script, displaying the individual page breakdowns.

## Displaying Specific Page Breakdowns

In this section, you make some minor additions to the `access_report.php` script to provide a breakdown of the specific pages that you're tracking in the `page_track` table.

1. Open `access_report.php` in your text editor.
2. Before the closing PHP tag, create a SQL statement that finds all distinct entries in the `page_name` field of the `page_track` table, counts these entries, and returns the results in descending order:

```
$page_name_sql = "select distinct page_name, pa  
count(page_name) as count from $table_name  
group by page_name order by count desc";
```

3. Execute the query:

```
$page_name_res = @mysql_query($page_name_sql, $connection);
or die(mysql_error());
```

4. You'll create a bulleted list within a `while` block in a moment.

Start the bulleted list outside the `while` block:

```
$page_name_block = "<ul>";
```

5. Start the `while` loop. The `while` loop will create an array called `$row_pn` for each record in the result set (`$page_name_res`):

```
while ($row_pn = mysql_fetch_array($page_name_res)) {
```

6. Get the individual elements of the record and give them good names:

```
$page_name = $row_pn['page_name'];
$page_desc = $row_pn['page_desc'];
$page_count = $row_pn['count'];
```

7. Add to `$page_name_block` by creating one bulleted item and one additional bulleted list. The bulleted item will show the name of the page accessed. Then, the second bulleted list will show the number of accesses to that page. After adding to `$page_name_block`, close the `while` loop:

```
$page_name_block .= "
<li>$page_name (\\"$page_desc\\")
<ul>
<li><em>accesses per page: $page_count</em>
</ul>";
}
```

8. Close the bulleted list you created in `$page_name_block`:

```
$page_name_block .= "</ul>";
```

9. In the HTML section, add the following, and then save the file:

```
<P><strong>Individual Pages:</strong>
<? echo "$page_name_block"; ?>
```

Your new code should look something like this:

```
<?
//set up table and database names
$db_name = "testDB";
$table_name = "page_track";
//connect to server and select database
$connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike", "9s
or die(mysql_error());
$db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection) or die(m

//issue query and select results for counts
$count_sql = "select count(page_name) from $table_name
$count_res = @mysql_query($count_sql, $connection) or
$count_all = @mysql_result($count_res, 0, "count(page_"

//issue query and select results for user agents
$user_agent_sql = "select distinct user_agent, count(u
from $table_name group by user_agent order by count de
$user_agent_res = @mysql_query($user_agent_sql, $conn
or die(mysql_error()));

//start user agent display block
$user_agent_block = "<ul>";

//loop through results
while ($row_ua = mysql_fetch_array($user_agent_res)) {
    $user_agent = $row_ua['user_agent'];
    $user_agent_count = $row_ua['count'];
    $user_agent_block .= "
<li>$user_agent
<ul>
<li><em>accesses per browser: $user_agent_count</
</ul>";
}
```

```

//finish up the user agent block
$user_agent_block .= "</ul>";

//issue query and select results for pages
$page_name_sql = "select distinct page_name, page_desc
count(page_name) as count from $table_name
group by page_name order by count desc";
$page_name_res = @mysql_query($page_name_sql, $connect
    or die(mysql_error()));

//start page name display block
$page_name_block = "<ul>";
//loop through results
while ($row_pn = mysql_fetch_array($page_name_res)) {
    $page_name = $row_pn['page_name'];
    $page_desc = $row_pn['page_desc'];
    $page_count = $row_pn['count'];
    $page_name_block .= "
<li>$page_name (\\"$page_desc\\")
<ul>
<li><em>accesses per page: $page_count</em>
</ul>";
}
//finish up the page name block
$page_name_block .= "</ul>";
?>
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>My Access Report</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<h1>My Access Report</h1>
<P><strong>Total Accesses Tracked in
<? echo "$table_name"; ?></strong> <? echo "$all_coun

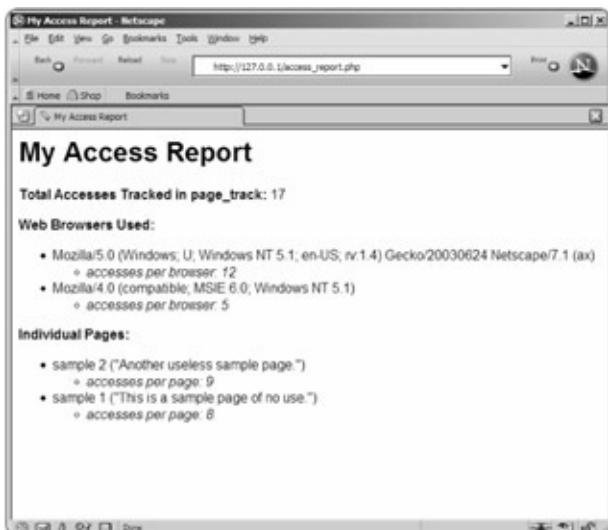
<P><strong>Web Browsers Used:</strong>
<? echo "$user_agent_block"; ?>

```

```
<P><strong>Individual Pages:</strong>  
<? echo "$page_name_block"; ?>  
  
</BODY>  
</HTML>
```

It's time to check the final results. Open your web browser and type [http://127.0.0.1/access\\_report.php](http://127.0.0.1/access_report.php).

You will see the HTML page with a heading and some text, followed by the access count you've reached for all pages. You will also see a list of user agents and the total accesses for each type. Finally, you'll see a list of all pages accessed, as well as the short description and individual access count for each.



This is a lot easier than wading through Apache access logs, but I wouldn't recommend completely replacing your access logs with a database-driven system. That's a bit too much database-connection overhead, even if MySQL is particularly nice on your system. Instead, target your page tracking to something particularly important to you.

In the [next chapter](#), you tackle another project. You are introduced to the wonderful world of XML and how to use XML and PHP together for

storage and display of data.

## **Chapter 25: Working with XML**

## Overview

This chapter will give you a hands-on introduction to using XML and PHP, but in no way should this be considered a definitive guide to the subject! Use this chapter as a primer for a subject you might decide to explore further on your own. In PHP 5, all things XML-related have been completely rewritten, so that the functionality, efficiency, and overall integration is much more reliable and full-featured. In this chapter, you learn how to:

- Create a basic XML document structure
- Use XML with PHP
- Parse and display content from XML files

## What is XML?

The name XML comes from the full name of the language, Extensible Markup Language. Although "markup" is in its name, do not think of XML like you do HTML. Aside from the fact that both languages are based on tag pairs, there are no similarities. XML is a method of data exchange, in that it holds well-defined content within its boundaries. HTML, on the other hand, couldn't care less what is contained in the content or how it is structured—its only purpose is to display the content to the browser. XML is used to define and carry the content, whereas HTML is used to make it "pretty."

This is not to say that XML data cannot be made pretty, or that you cannot display XML data in your web browser. In fact, this is exactly what you do when using Extensible Style Language (XSL) and Cascading Style Sheets (CSS) to render your content into a format your web browser can understand, while still preserving the content categorization. For example, say you have an area on your website reserved for recent system messages, and those items each contain the following:

- Title
- Message
- Author
- Date of message

You might want to display the title in bold, the message as a paragraph, the author's name in italics, and the date in a small font. For this, you would use HTML. XML, on the other hand, only cares that there are four distinct content elements. By separating the data and its structure from the presentation elements, you can use the content however you want, and you're not limited to the particular marked-up style that static HTML has forced on you.

## Basic XML Document Structure

Before moving forward into working with XML documents, you need to know exactly how to create them! XML documents contain two major elements, the *prolog* and the *body*. The prolog contains the XML declaration statement (much like an HTML document type definition statement), and any processing instructions and comments you want to add.

**Note** For a complete definition of XML documents, read the XML specification at <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml>.

Using the system message example from the previous section, open a text editor and create a file called `messages.xml`. Type the following:

```
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<!-- Sample XML document -->
```

Next, the fun begins in the body area of the document, where the content structure is contained. XML is hierarchical, like a book—books have titles and chapters, each of which contain paragraphs, and so forth. There is only one root element in an XML document. Using the book example, the element might be called `Book`, and the tags `<Book></Book>` surround all other information.

But I am using the system messages example here, so call the root element `SystemMessage`, and add an open tag to your `messages.xml` document:

```
<SystemMessage>
```

Next, add any subsequent elements—called *children*—to your document. Using the system messages example, you need title, body, author, and date information. Call the children elements `MessageTitle`, `MessageBody`, `MessageAuthor`, and `MessageDate`. But what if you want both the name and an e-mail address for the author? Not a problem—you just create another set of child elements within your parent element (which also just happens to be a child element of the root element). For example, just the `<MessageAuthor>` element could look like this:

```
<MessageAuthor>
```

```
<MessageAuthorName>Joe SystemGod</MessageAuthorName>
<MessageAuthorEmail>systemgod@someserver.com</MessageA<
</MessageAuthor>
```

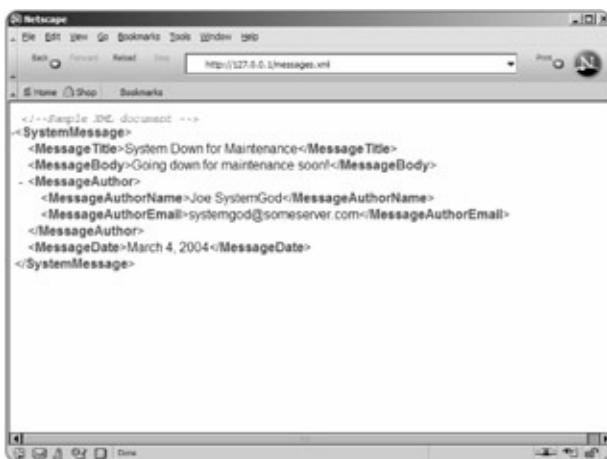
All together, your sample `messages.xml` document could look something like this:

```
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<!--Sample XML document -->
<SystemMessage>
    <MessageTitle>System Down for Maintenance</Mes
        <MessageBody>Going down for maintenance soon!<
            <MessageAuthor>
<MessageAuthorName>Joe SystemGod</MessageAuthorName>
<MessageAuthorEmail>systemgod@someserver.com</MessageA<
            </MessageAuthor>
            <MessageDate>March 4, 2004</MessageDate>
</SystemMessage>
```

Here are two very important rules to keep in mind for creating valid XML documents:

- XML is case-sensitive, so `<Book>` and `<book>` are different elements.
- All XML tags must be properly closed, XML tags must be properly nested, and no overlapping tags are allowed.

Put the `messages.xml` file (or one like it) in the document root of your web server for use in later examples. As a side note, current versions of some browsers, such as Microsoft Internet Explorer and Netscape, allow you to view your XML document in a tree-like format, using their own internal style sheets. The first figure shows the original view of the `messages.xml` file with all elements opened, whereas the next figure shows the `messages.xml` file with the `MessageAuthor` element collapsed.



A screenshot of a Netscape browser window displaying an XML document. The URL in the address bar is <http://127.0.0.1/messages.xml>. The document content is:

```
<!--Sample XML document -->
<SystemMessage>
<MessageTitle>System Down for Maintenance</MessageTitle>
<MessageBody>Going down for maintenance soon!</MessageBody>
- <MessageAuthor>
  <MessageAuthorName>Joe SystemGod</MessageAuthorName>
  <MessageAuthorEmail>systemgod@someserver.com</MessageAuthorEmail>
</MessageAuthor>
<MessageDate>March 4, 2004</MessageDate>
</SystemMessage>
```



A screenshot of a Netscape browser window displaying an XML document. The URL in the address bar is <http://127.0.0.1/messages.xml>. The document content is identical to the one above, but includes a minus sign (-) before the <MessageAuthor> element, indicating it has been deleted or is collapsed.

```
<!--Sample XML document -->
<SystemMessage>
<MessageTitle>System Down for Maintenance</MessageTitle>
<MessageBody>Going down for maintenance soon!</MessageBody>
- <MessageAuthor></MessageAuthor>
<MessageDate>March 4, 2004</MessageDate>
</SystemMessage>
```

# Preparing to Use XML with PHP

XML functionality in PHP is based on the `libxml2` library, and it's enabled by default at the time of PHP configuration and installation—on both Linux/Unix and Windows platforms.

You can determine whether XML support is enabled in your installation of PHP by looking at the output of the `phpinfo()` function. The following figure shows some of the XML-related entries you will see in an XML-enabled installation.



**Note** You won't see these items listed in this order in your `phpinfo()` output, as there will be several entries in between, in the alphabetical display of enabled elements.

Once you have confirmed that XML support is enabled within PHP, you can move on to parsing, transforming, and even generating XML on your system. All of the examples used in this chapter are very basic, and again, I recommend reading additional books or entries in the PHP manual (<http://www.php.net/manual/>) if you're interested in working with XML to any great extent.

## Parsing XML with PHP

In this section, you'll see a few examples of how PHP can parse a valid XML document using the `messages.xml` file created earlier in this chapter. These basic scripts show you the stepwise methods used to parse XML files with PHP. As with everything in this book, it's all about gaining a foundation for learning.

The first example script will simply load the `messages.xml` file into the XML parser and then have the parser display back the distinct elements it finds.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. Use the `simplexml_load_file()` function to load contents of the `messages.xml` file into an object called `$xml`:

```
$xml = simplexml_load_file('messages.xml');
```

**Note** Objects are introduced in [Appendix C](#), "Writing Your Own Functions and Objects," but for now think of an object as a big container, go with the flow, and grasp the overall concept of what's occurring.

3. Use the `var_dump()` function to print all the element names in the object and their values, and then close the PHP block:

```
var_dump($xml);  
?>
```

4. Save the file as `xmlload.php` and place it in the document root of your web server, with the `messages.xml` file.

When you access this file with your browser, you will see something like the following figure.



This rather unattractive output shows that the XML parser has read the file, identified elements such as `MessageTitle` and so forth, and read the values of these elements. In the [next section](#), you'll see how to map XML elements to specific types of HTML markup, eventually displaying the information in presentation formation.

## Parse and Display Content From XML Files

In this section, you create a script that will map HTML markup to XML elements, eventually displaying what you'd normally see in a web browser. This example uses an XML file called `books.xml`, which stores a list of books and publication information. In this example, the list is of three of my books, and the elements are as follows:

- BookStore
- Book
- BookTitle
- BookAuthor
- BookPublisher
- BookISBN

## ■ BookPrice

Before you move on to the coding aspect, create a `books.xml` file and put the following into it (or any books of your choice; just follow the same structure):

```
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<BookStore>
    <Book>
        <BookTitle>PHP5 Fast & Easy Web Development <
        <BookAuthor>Julie Meloni</BookAuthor>
        <BookPublisher>Premier Press</BookPublisher>
        <BookISBN>1592004733</BookISBN>
        <BookPrice>29.99</BookPrice>
    </Book>
    <Book>
        <BookTitle>PHP Essentials, 2nd edition</BookTitle>
        <BookAuthor>Julie Meloni</BookAuthor>
        <BookPublisher>Premier Press</BookPublisher>
        <BookISBN>1931841349</BookISBN>
        <BookPrice>39.99</BookPrice>
    </Book>
    <Book>
        <BookTitle>PHP Fast & Easy Web Development, 2<
        <BookAuthor>Julie Meloni</BookAuthor>
        <BookPublisher>Premier Press</BookPublisher>
        <BookISBN>193184187X</BookISBN>
        <BookPrice>29.99</BookPrice>
    </Book>
</BookStore>
```

The goal of the XML parsing script is to display each XML element in a consistent HTML markup. During the process by which you loop through the elements, you will wrap HTML around their values—much like you do when looping through a MySQL result set from a database query!

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. Use the `simplexml_load_file()` function to load contents of the `books.xml` file into an object called `$xml`:

```
$xml = simplexml_load_file('books.xml');
```

3. Begin a `for` loop that looks for each `Book` element in the just-parsed XML file and allows it to be accessible via `$Book`:

```
foreach($xml->Book as $Book) {
```

4. Start to `echo` the output from the `for` loop:

```
echo "
```

5. Output the book's title, wrapping it in HTML:

```
<p><strong>" . $Book->BookTitle . "</strong><br>
```

6. Output the book's author information, wrapping it in HTML:

```
<em>by " . $Book->BookAuthor . "</em><br>
```

7. Output the book's publisher information, wrapping it in HTML:

```
(Published by " . $Book->BookPublisher . ",
```

8. Output the book's ISBN, wrapping it in HTML:

```
ISBN: " . $Book->BookISBN . ")<br>
```

9. Output the book's price, wrapping it in HTML:

```
<font color=red>price:</font> \$" . $Book->BookPr.
```

10. Finish the `for` loop by adding a separator, closing the braces, and then closing the PHP block:

```
<hr noshade>";
}
?>
```

Save this file as `xmlparse.php`, and place it in the document root of your web server. The entire script should look something like this:

```

<?
$xml = simplexml_load_file("books.xml");
foreach($xml->Book as $Book) {
    echo "
<p><strong>".$Book->BookTitle."</strong><br>
<em>by ".$Book->BookAuthor."</em><br>
(Published by ".$Book->BookPublisher.", 
ISBN: ".$Book->BookISBN.")<br>
<font color=red>price:</font> \$".$Book->BookPrice
<hr noshade>";
}
?>

```

When you access this file with your browser, you will see something like the following figure.



The `xmlparse.php` script provides a basic example of reading an XML document and working with its content. To take this concept further, have a look at the examples in the PHP manual:

- DOM XML functions are documented at:

<http://www.php.net/domxml>

- SimpleXML functions are documented at:  
<http://www.php.net/simplexml>

Although this chapter ends the lessons and projects, this book also has six appendixes full of useful information. General PHP reference items can be found in the first two appendixes, and a lesson on functions and objects is in [Appendix C](#). Database normalization and a basic SQL reference can be found in [Appendix D](#), and a new element in PHP5—SQLite—is covered in [Appendix E](#). These appendixes wrap up with [Appendix F](#), "Getting Help," which points you in the right direction to additional resources and tutorials.

## **Part VIII: Appendixes**

## **Appendix List**

[Appendix A:](#) Additional Configuration Options

[Appendix B:](#) Basic PHP Language Reference

[Appendix C:](#) Writing Your Own Functions and Objects

[Appendix D:](#) Database Normalization and SQL Reference

[Appendix E:](#) Using SQLite

[Appendix F:](#) Getting Help

## Appendix A: Additional Configuration Options

The installation instructions at the beginning of this book detailed a simple configuration of PHP. If you feel like venturing out on your own by adding additional extensions (on Windows) or recompiling PHP (on Linux), this appendix gives you a brief rundown of some of your options. PHP can be as powerful or as streamlined as you want it to be, but a general rule of thumb is only to add functionality that you really need. For example, if you have no plans for connecting to an Oracle database, you do not need to enable support for the Oracle functions. But PHP is very extendable, meaning you can add functionality whenever you want—like if your company decides to buy an Oracle license!

## Windows Extensions

Basic functionality is already built into PHP binary distributions for Windows, including:

- Regular expression support
- Dynamic library support
- Internal sendmail support
- Perl-compatible regular expression support
- ODBC support
- Session support
- XML support
- MySQL support

and much more!

To get additional functionality, you must use additional extensions (.dll files), over 40 of which are included with the distribution. Some of the more popular extensions are listed in [Table A.1](#).

**Table A.1: Windows Extensions**

Filename	Description
php_cpdf.dll	Enables ClibPDF functions
php_curl.dll	Enables CURL-related functions
php_gd2.dll	Enables GD library image functions
php_ifx.dll	Enables Informix functions
php_ldap.dll	Enables LDAP functions

php_mhash.dll	Enables mhash functions
php_ming.dll	Enables Ming-related Macromedia Flash functions
php_mssql.dll	Enables Microsoft SQLServer functions
php_oci8.dll	Enables Oracle 8+ functions
php_openssl.dll	Enables OpenSSL functions
php_pgsql.dll	Enables PostgreSQL functions
php_sybase_ct.dll	Enables Sybase functions

To turn an extension "on," you must modify your `php.ini` file.

1. Open `php.ini` in a text editor and find the following lines:

```
; Directory in which the loadable extensions (m
extension_dir = ./
```

2. Change the second line so that it points to the directory containing your extensions, such as

```
extension_dir = /php/extensions
```

3. Next, find a section that starts like this:

```
;Windows Extensions
```

4. For each extension you want to use, take away the semicolon before the name of the file in the list.

5. If the file is not in the list, add it:

```
extension=[your_extension_name].dll
```

6. After changing anything in the `php.ini` file, restart the web server and then check the output of `phpinfo()` to verify your changes.

For more information on the Windows configuration options in PHP, please see the PHP manual's section on installation and configuration.

# Linux Configuration Options

Here is the configuration line used in [Chapter 3](#) to build PHP:

```
./configure --with-mysql/  
--with-apxs2=/usr/local/apache2/bin/apxs
```

This line tells PHP to include support for MySQL and to build as a dynamic module. Many other extensions and other configurations are available to you, many of which you'll never use (I know I don't). [Table A.2](#) lists some of the more popular extensions in case you want to fiddle with your installation. However, for a complete list of extensions, configuration options, and more, you can use the following command at your shell prompt when in the PHP source directory:

```
./configure --help
```

**Table A.2: Some Available Extensions**

Extension	Description
--disable-all	Disable all extensions enabled by default.
--disable-libxml	Disable new LIBXML support.
--with-openssl [=DIR]	Include OpenSSL support (requires OpenSSL >= 0.9.6).
--with-zlib [=DIR]	Include ZLIB support (requires zlib >= 1.0.9).
--enable-bcmath	Enable bc style precision math functions.
--with-curl [=DIR]	Include CURL support.
--enable-dbase	Enable the bundled dbase library.
--disable-dom	Disable new DOM support.
--enable-ftp	Enable FTP support.

--with-gd[=DIR]	Include GD support where DIR is GD install prefix.
--with-jpeg-dir[=DIR]	GD: Set the path to libjpeg install prefix.
--with-png-dir[=DIR]	GD: Set the path to libpng install prefix.
--with-zlib-dir[=DIR]	GD: Set the path to libz install prefix.
--with-xpm-dir[=DIR]	GD: Set the path to libXpm install prefix.
--with-ttf[=DIR]	GD: Include FreeType 1.x support.
--with-freetype-dir[=DIR]	GD: Set the path to FreeType 2 install prefix.
--with-informix[=DIR]	Include Informix support.
--with-ldap[=DIR]	Include LDAP support.
--enable-mbstring	Enable multibyte string support.
--with-mcrypt[=DIR]	Include mcrypt support.
--with-mhash[=DIR]	Include mhash support.
--with-mssql[=DIR]	Include MSSQL-DB support. DIR is the FreeTDS home directory.
--with-mysql[=DIR]	Include MySQL support. DIR is the MySQL base directory.

--with-oci8 [=DIR]	Include Oracle-oci8 support. Default DIR is ORACLE_HOME.
--with-ibm-db2 [=DIR]	Include IBM DB2 support. DIR is the DB2 base.
--with-custom-odbc [=DIR]	Include a user-defined ODBC support. DIR is ODBC base directory.
--with-iodbc [=DIR]	Include iODBC support. DIR is the iODBC base directory.
--disable-posix	Disable POSIX-like functions.
--disable-session	Disable session support.
--without-sqlite	Do not include SQLite support.
--with-sybase [=DIR]	Include Sybase-DB support. DIR is the Sybase home directory.

This will list all available configuration options.

Remember, because PHP is an Apache dynamic module, you don't have to recompile Apache when making changes to PHP!

For more information on Linux/Unix configuration options in PHP, please see the PHP manual's section on installation and configuration.

## Appendix B: Basic PHP Language Reference

This appendix is nowhere near as comprehensive as the PHP manual (found at <http://www.php.net/manual/>), which contains descriptions of every PHP function that exists, plus user-submitted comments and code samples. Instead, this appendix serves as a basic, or "essential" reference—it contains the elements of PHP that (in my opinion) you can't live without. The PHP development team and all of the documentation contributors have done a wonderful job with the entire PHP manual, and there's no need to reinvent the wheel. However, because this appendix touches on only a small percentage of all there is to know about PHP, please check the PHP manual before asking a question on one of the PHP mailing lists.

### Note

In all of these examples, when something like `string` or `int` appears in a function, it is a placeholder for your own string or integer.

## PHP Start and End Tags

To combine PHP code with HTML, the PHP code must be *escaped*, or set apart, from the HTML. The PHP engine will consider anything within the tag pairs shown in [Table B.1](#) to be PHP code.

**Table B.1: Basic PHP Start and End Tags**

Opening Tag	Closing Tag
<?php	?>
<?	?>
<script language="php">	</script>

## Variables

You create variables to represent data. For instance, the following variable holds a value for sales tax:

```
$sales_tax = 0.0875;
```

This variable holds a SQL statement:

```
$sql = "SELECT * FROM MY_TABLE";
```

You can refer to the values of other variables when determining the value of a new variable:

```
$tax_total = $sales_tax * $sub_total;
```

The following are true of variable names:

- They begin with a dollar sign (\$).
- They cannot begin with a numeric character.
- They can contain numbers and the underscore character (\_).

- They are case-sensitive.

Here are some common variable types:

- floats
- integers
- strings

These types are determined by PHP, based on the context in which they appear.

## Floats

Each of the following variables is a float, or floating-point number. Floats are also known as numbers with decimal points.

```
$a = 1.552;  
$b = 0.964;  
$sales_tax = 0.875;
```

## Integers

Integers are positive or negative whole numbers, zero, or numbers without decimal points. Each of the following variables is an integer:

```
$a = 15;  
$b = -521;
```

## Strings

A series of characters grouped within double quotation marks is considered a string:

```
$a = "I am a string.";  
$b = "<P>This book is <strong>cool</strong>!";
```

You can also reference other variables within your string, which will be replaced when your script is executed. For example:

```
$num = 57; // an integer  
$my_string = "I read this book $num times!"; // a string
```

When you run the script, `$my_string` becomes "I read this book 57 times!"

## Variables From HTML Forms

Depending on the method of your HTML form (GET or POST), the variables will be part of the `$_POST` or `$_GET` superglobal associative array. The name of the input field will become the name of the variable. For example, when a form is sent using the POST method, the following input field produces the variable `$_POST['first_name']`:

```
<input type="text" name="first_name" size="20">
```

If the method of this form were GET, this variable would be `$_GET['first_name']`.

## Variables From Cookies

Like variables from forms, variables from cookies are kept in a superglobal associative array called `$_COOKIE`. If you set a cookie called `user` with a value of Joe Smith, like so

```
SetCookie ("user", "Joe Smith", time() + 3600);
```

a variable called `user` is placed in `$_COOKIE`, with a value of Joe Smith. You then refer to `$_COOKIE['user']` to get that value.

## Environment Variables

When a web browser makes a request of a web server, it sends along with the request a list of extra variables called *environment variables*. They can be very useful for displaying dynamic content or authorizing users.

By default, environment variables are available to PHP scripts as

`$VAR_NAME`. However, to be absolutely sure that you're reading the correct value, you can use the `getenv()` function to assign a value to a variable of your choice. The following are some common environment variables.

`REMOTE_ADDR` gets the IP address of the machine making the request.  
For example:

```
$remote_address = getenv("REMOTE_ADDR");  
echo "Your IP address is $remote_address.";
```

`HTTP_USER_AGENT` gets the browser type, browser version, language encoding, and platform. For example:

```
$browser_type = getenv("HTTP_USER_AGENT");  
echo "You are using $browser_type.;"
```

For a list of HTTP environment variables and their descriptions, visit <http://hoohoo.ncsa.uiuc.edu/cgi/env.html>.

## Arrays

Simply put, arrays are sets of variables that are contained as a group. In the following example, `$fave_colors` is an array that contains strings representing array elements. In this case, the array elements (0 to 3) are names of colors:

```
$fave_colors[0] = "red";  
$fave_colors[1] = "blue";  
$fave_colors[2] = "black";  
$fave_colors[3] = "white";
```

Array elements are counted with 0 as the first position in the numerical index.

# Operators

An operator is a symbol that represents a specific action. For example, the + arithmetic operator adds two values, and the = assignment operator assigns a value to a variable.

## Arithmetic Operators

Arithmetic operators bear a striking resemblance to simple math, as shown in [Table B.2](#).

**Table B.2: Arithmetic Operators**

Operator	Example	Action
+	<code>\$b = \$a + 3;</code>	Adds values together
-	<code>\$b = \$a - 3;</code>	Subtracts values
*	<code>\$b = \$a * 3;</code>	Multiplies values
/	<code>\$b = \$a / 3;</code>	Divides values
%	<code>\$b = \$a % 3;</code>	Returns the modulus, or remainder

## Assignment Operators

The = is the basic assignment operator:

```
$a = 124; // the value of $a is 124
```

Other assignment operators are shown in [Table B.3](#).

**Table B.3: Assignment Operators**

Operator	Example	Action
----------	---------	--------

<code>+=</code>	<code>\$a += 3;</code>	Changes the value of a variable to the current value plus the value on the right side
<code>-=</code>	<code>\$a -= 3</code>	Changes the value of the variable to the current value minus the value on the right side
<code>.=</code>	<code>\$a .= "string";</code>	Concatenates (adds on to) the value on the right side with the current value

## Comparison Operators

It should come as no surprise that comparison operators compare two values. A value of true or false is returned by the comparison. The comparison operators are shown in [Table B.4](#).

**Table B.4: Comparison Operators**

Operator	Definition
<code>==</code>	Equal to
<code>!=</code>	Not equal to
<code>&gt;</code>	Greater than
<code>&lt;</code>	Less than
<code>&gt;=</code>	Greater than or equal to
<code>&lt;=</code>	Less than or equal to

## Increment/Decrement Operators

The increment/decrement operators do just what their name implies: add or subtract from a variable (see [Table B.5](#)).

**Table B.5: Increment/Decrement Operators**

Operator	Usage	Definition
<code>++\$a</code>	Pre-increment	Increments by 1 and returns \$a
<code>\$a++</code>	Post-increment	Returns \$a and then increments \$a by 1
<code>--\$a</code>	Pre-decrement	Decrements by 1 and returns \$a
<code>\$a--</code>	Post-decrement	Returns \$a and then decrements \$a by 1

## Logical Operators

Logical operators allow your script to determine the status of conditions and, in the context of your `if...else` or `while` statements, execute certain code based on which conditions are true and which are false (see [Table B.6](#)).

**Table B.6: Logical Operators**

Operator	Example	Result
<code>!</code>	<code>! \$a</code>	TRUE if \$a is not true
<code>&amp;&amp;</code>	<code>\$a &amp;&amp; \$b</code>	TRUE if both \$a and \$b are true
<code>  </code>	<code>\$a    \$b</code>	TRUE if either \$a or \$b is true

# Control Structures

Programs are essentially a series of statements. Control structures, as their name implies, control how those statements are executed. They're usually built around a series of conditions, such as "If the sky is blue, go outside and play." In this example, the condition is "If the sky is blue" and the statement is "go outside and play."

Control structures utilize curly braces ({} ) to separate the groups of statements from the remainder of the program. Examples of common control structures follow; memorizing them will make your life much easier.

## **if...else if...else**

The `if...else if...else` construct executes a statement based on the value of the expression being tested. In the following sample `if` statement, the expression being tested is "\$a is equal to 10."

```
if ($a == "10") {  
    // execute some code  
}
```

After \$a is evaluated, if it is found to have a value of 10 (that is, if the condition is true), the code inside the curly braces will execute. If \$a is found to be something other than 10 (if the condition is false), the code will be ignored, and the program will continue.

To offer an alternative series of statements, should \$a not have a value of 10, add an `else` statement to the structure to execute a section of code when the condition is false:

```
if ($a == "10") {  
    echo "a equals 10";  
} else {  
    echo "a does not equal 10";  
}
```

The `else if` (or one word: `elseif`) statement can be added to the

structure to evaluate an alternative expression before heading to the final `else` statement. For example, the following structure first evaluates whether `$a` is equal to 10. If that condition is false, the `else if` statement is evaluated. If it is found to be true, the code within its curly braces executes. Otherwise, the program continues to the final `else` statement:

```
if ($a == "10") {  
    echo "a equals 10";  
} else if ($b == "8") {  
    echo "b equals 8";  
} else {  
    echo "a does not equal 10 and b does not equal 8.  
}
```

You can use `if` statements alone or as part of an `if...else` or `if...else if...else` statement. Whichever you choose, you will find this structure to be an invaluable element in your programs!

## **while**

Unlike the `if...else if...else` structure, in which each expression is evaluated once and an action is performed based on its value of true or false, the `while` statement continues to loop until an expression is false. In other words, the `while` loop continues while the expression is true.

For example, in the following `while` loop, the value of `$a` is printed on the screen and is incremented by 1 as long as the value of `$a` is less than or equal to 3:

```
$a = 0 // set a starting point  
while ($a <= "3") {  
    echo "a equals $a<br>";  
    $a++;  
}
```

## **for**

Like `while` loops, `for` loops evaluate the set of conditional expressions at the beginning of each loop. Here is the syntax of the `for` loop:

```
for (expr1; expr2; expr3) {  
    // code to execute  
}
```

At the beginning of each loop, the first expression is evaluated, followed by the second expression. If the second expression is true, the loop continues by executing the code and then evaluating the third expression. If the second expression is false, the loop does not continue, and the third expression is never evaluated.

Take the counting example used in the `while` loop, and rewrite it using a `for` loop:

```
for ($a = 0; $a <= "3"; $a++) {  
    echo "a equals $a<br>";  
}
```

# Built-In Functions

All of the following functions are part of the numerous functions that make up the PHP language. These really are just a small number of the PHP functions; they are the ones I use on a regular basis. Depending on the types of things you'll be doing with PHP, you might not need more functions, but please visit the PHP manual at <http://www.php.net/manual/> and familiarize yourself with what is available.

## Array Functions

Numerous PHP functions are available for use with arrays. Only a few are noted here—those that I find absolutely essential, and those that form a foundation of knowledge for working with arrays.

### **array()**

The `array()` function allows you to manually assign values to an array. Here is the syntax of the `array()` function:

```
$array_name = array("val1", "val2", "val3", ...);
```

### **array\_push()**

The `array_push()` function allows you to add one or more elements to the end of an existing array. Its syntax is

```
array_push($array_name, "element 1", "element 2", ...)
```

### **array\_pop()**

The `array_pop()` function allows you to take (pop) off the last element of an existing array. Its syntax is

```
array_pop($array_name);
```

### **array\_unshift()**

The `array_unshift()` function allows you to add elements to the

beginning of an existing array. Its syntax is

```
array_unshift($array_name, "element 1", "element 2", . . .)
```

### **array\_shift()**

The `array_shift()` function allows you to take (pop) off the first element of an existing array. Its syntax is

```
array_shift($array_name);
```

### **array\_merge()**

The `array_merge()` function allows you to combine two or more existing arrays. Its syntax is

```
array_merge($array1, $array2, . . .);
```

### **array\_keys()**

The `array_keys()` function returns an array of all the key names in an existing array. Its syntax is

```
array_keys($array_name);
```

### **array\_values()**

The `array_values()` function returns an array of all the values in an existing array. Its syntax is

```
array_values($array_name);
```

### **count()**

The `count()` function counts the number of elements in a variable. It's normally used to count the number of elements in an array, because any variable that is not an array has only one element—itself.

In the following example, `$a` is assigned a value equal to the number of elements in the `$colors` array:

```
$a = count($colors);
```

If \$colors contains the values blue, black, red, and green, \$a will be assigned a value of 4.

## each() and list()

The each() and list() functions usually appear together, in the context of stepping through an array and returning its keys and values. Here is the syntax for these functions:

```
each(arrayname);  
list(val1, val2, val3, ...);
```

For example, when you submit an HTML form via the GET method, each key/value pair is placed in the global variable \$\_GET. If your form input fields are named first\_name and last\_name and the user enters values of Joe and Smith, the key/value pairs are first\_name/Joe and last\_name/Smith. In the \$\_GET array, these variables are represented as the following:

```
$_GET["first_name"] // value is "Joe"  
$_GET["last_name"] // value is "Smith"
```

You can use the each() and list() functions to step through the array in this fashion, printing the key and value for each element in the array:

```
while (list($key, $val) = each($_GET)) {  
    echo "$key has a value of $val<br>";  
}
```

## reset()

The reset() function rewinds the pointer to the beginning of the array. Its syntax is

```
reset($array_name);
```

## shuffle()

The shuffle() function randomizes the elements of a given array. Its syntax is

```
shuffle($array_name);
```

### **sizeof()**

The `sizeof()` function counts the number of elements in an array. In the following example, `$a` is assigned a value equal to the number of elements in the `$colors` array:

```
$a = sizeof($colors);
```

If `$colors` contains the values blue, black, red, and green, `$a` is assigned a value of 4.

## **Database Connectivity Functions for MySQL**

Numerous PHP functions exist for connecting to and querying a MySQL server. Following are some basic functions and their syntax. See the PHP manual at <http://www.php.net/manual/> for a complete listing of MySQL functions—there are plenty!

### **mysql\_connect()**

This function opens a connection to MySQL. It requires a server name, username, and password:

```
$connection = mysql_connect("servername", "username", "password");
```

### **mysql\_select\_db()**

This function selects a database on the MySQL server for use by subsequent queries. It requires a valid established connection:

```
$db = mysql_select_db("myDB", $connection);
```

### **mysql\_query()**

This function issues the SQL statement. It requires an open connection to the database:

```
$sql_result = mysql_query("SELECT * FROM SOMETABLE", $connection);
```

## **mysql\_error()**

This function returns a meaningful error message when something goes wrong with your connection or query. It's normally used in the context of the `die()` function, like this:

```
$sql_result = mysql_query("SELECT * FROM SOMETABLE", $connection);
    or die(mysql_error());
```

## **mysql\_fetch\_array()**

This function automatically places the SQL statement result row into an array:

```
$row = mysql_fetch_array($sql_result);
```

## **mysql\_num\_rows()**

This function returns the number of rows in a result set:

```
$num = mysql_num_rows($sql_result);
```

# **Date and Time Functions**

The basic PHP date and time functions let you easily format timestamps for use in database queries and calendar functions, as well as for simply printing the date on an order form receipt.

## **date()**

The `date()` function returns the current server timestamp, formatted according to a given set of parameters. Its syntax is

```
date(format, [timestamp]);
```

If the timestamp parameter is not provided, the current timestamp is assumed. [Table B.7](#) shows the available formats.

**Table B.7: `date()` Function Formats**

Character	Meaning
-----------	---------

a	Prints "am" or "pm"
A	Prints "AM" or "PM"
h	Hour in 12-hour format (01 to 12)
H	Hour in 24-hour format (00 to 23)
g	Hour in 12-hour format without a leading zero (1 to 12)
G	Hour in 24-hour format without a leading zero (0 to 23)
i	Minutes (00 to 59)
s	Seconds (00 to 59)
Z	Time zone offset in seconds (-43200 to 43200)
U	Seconds since the Epoch (January 1, 1970 00:00:00 GMT)
d	Day of the month in two digits (01 to 31)
j	Day of the month in two digits without a leading zero (1 to 31)
D	Day of the week in text (Mon to Sun)
l	Day of the week in long text (Monday to Sunday)
w	Day of the week in numeric, Sunday to Saturday (0 to 6)
F	Month in long text (January to December)
m	Month in two digits (01 to 12)
n	Month in two digits without a leading zero (1 to 12)
M	Month in three-letter text (Jan to Dec)
Y	Year in four digits (2000)
y	Year in two digits (00)

<code>z</code>	Day of the year (0 to 365)
<code>t</code>	Number of days in the given month (28 to 31)
<code>S</code>	English ordinal suffix (th, nd, st)

## **checkdate()**

The `checkdate()` function validates a given date. Successful validation means that the year is between 0 and 32767, the month is between 1 and 12, and the proper number of days is in each month (leap years are accounted for). Its syntax is

```
checkdate(month, day, year);
```

## **mkttime()**

The `mkttime()` function returns the Unix timestamp as a long integer (in the format of seconds since the Epoch, or January 1, 1970) for a given date. Thus, the primary use of `mkttime()` is to format dates in preparation for mathematical functions and date validation. Its syntax is

```
mkttime(hour, minute, second, month, day, year);
```

## **time() and microtime()**

The `time()` function returns the current system time, measured in seconds since the Epoch. The syntax of `time()` is simply

```
time();
```

You could get a result such as 958950466.

Using `microtime()` adds a count of microseconds, so instead of just receiving a result like 958950466, you would get a result like 0.93121600 958950466, at the exact moment you asked for the time since the Epoch (this includes both seconds and microseconds).

# **File System Functions**

The built-in file system functions can be very powerful tools—or weapons, if used incorrectly. Be very careful when using file system functions, especially if you have PHP configured to run as root or some other system-wide user. For example, using a PHP script to issue an `rm -R` command while at the root level of your directory structure would be a very bad thing.

### **chmod(), chgrp(), and chown()**

Like the shell commands of the same name, the `chmod()`, `chgrp()`, and `chown()` functions modify the permissions, group, and owner of a directory or file. Here is the syntax of these functions:

```
chmod("filename", mode);  
chgrp("filename", newgroup);  
chown("filename", newowner);
```

In order to change permissions, groups, and owners, the PHP user must be the owner of the file, or the permissions must already be set to allow such changes by that user.

### **copy()**

The `copy()` function works much like the `cp` shell command: It needs a filename and a destination in order to copy a file. The syntax of `copy()` is

```
copy("source filename", "destination");
```

The PHP user must have permission to write into the destination directory, or the `copy()` function will fail.

### **fopen()**

The `fopen()` function opens a specified file or URL for reading and/or writing. The syntax of `fopen()` is

```
fopen("filename", "mode")
```

To open a URL, use `http://` or `ftp://` at the beginning of the

filename string. You can open URLs only for reading, not writing.

If the filename begins with anything else, the file is opened from the file system and a file pointer to the opened file is returned. Otherwise, the file is assumed to reside on the local file system.

The specified mode determines whether the file is opened for reading, writing, or both. [Table B.8](#) lists the valid modes.

**Table B.8: `fopen()` Function Modes**

Mode	Description
r	Read-only. The file pointer is at the beginning of the file.
r+	Reading and writing. The file pointer is at the beginning of the file.
w	Write-only. The file pointer is at the beginning of the file, and the file is truncated to zero length. If the file does not exist, attempt to create it.
w+	Reading and writing. The file pointer is at the beginning of the file, and the file is truncated to zero length. If the file does not exist, attempt to create it.
a	Write-only. The file pointer is at the end of the file (it appends content to the file). If the file does not exist, attempt to create it.
a+	Reading and writing. The file pointer is at the end of the file (it appends content to the file). If the file does not exist, attempt to create it.
x	Create and open a file for writing only. The file pointer is at the beginning of the file. Will fail if the file already exists.
x+	Create and open a file for reading and writing. The file pointer is at the beginning of the file. Will fail if the file already exists.

## **fread()**

Use the `fread()` function to read a specified number of bytes from an open file pointer. Its syntax is

```
fread(filepointer, length);
```

## **fputs()**

The `fputs()` function writes to an open file pointer. Its syntax is

```
fputs(filepointer, content, [length]);
```

The file pointer must be open in order to write to the file. The `length` parameter is optional. If it isn't specified, all specified content is written to the file.

## **fclose()**

Use the `fclose()` function to close an open file pointer. Its syntax is

```
fclose(filepointer);
```

## **mkdir()**

Like the `mkdir` shell command, the `mkdir()` function creates a new directory on the file system. Its syntax is

```
mkdir("pathname", mode);
```

The PHP user must have write permission in the specified directory.

## **rename()**

As its name suggests, the `rename()` function attempts to give a new name to an existing file. Its syntax is

```
rename("oldname", "newname");
```

The PHP user must have permission to modify the file.

## **rmdir()**

Like the `rmdir` shell command, the `rmdir()` function removes a directory from the file system. Its syntax is

```
rmdir("pathname");
```

The PHP user must have write permission in the specified directory.

### **symlink()**

The `symlink()` function creates a symbolic link from an existing file or directory on the file system to a specified link name. Its syntax is

```
symlink("targetname", "linkname");
```

The PHP user must have write permission in the specified directory.

### **unlink()**

The `unlink()` function deletes a file from the file system. Its syntax is

```
unlink("filename");
```

The PHP user must have write permission for this file.

## **HTTP Functions**

The built-in functions for sending specific HTTP headers and cookie data are crucial aspects of developing large web-based applications in PHP. Luckily, the syntax for these functions is quite easy to understand and implement.

### **header()**

The `header()` function outputs an HTTP header string, such as a location redirection. This output must occur before any other data is sent to the browser, including HTML tags.

**Note** This information bears repeating: Do not attempt to send information of any sort to the browser before sending a `header()`. You can perform any sort of database manipulations or other calculations before the `header()`, but

you cannot print anything to the screen—not even a newline character.

For example, to use the `header()` function to redirect a user to a new location, use this code:

```
header("Location: http://www.newlocation.com");  
exit;
```

**Tip** Follow a `header()` statement with the `exit` command. This ensures that the code does not continue to execute.

## **setcookie()**

The `setcookie()` function sends a cookie to the user. Cookies must be sent before any other header information is sent to the web browser. The syntax for `setcookie()` is

```
setcookie("name", "value", "expire", "path", "domain",
```

For example, you would use the following code to send a cookie called `username` with a value of `joe` that is valid for one hour within all directories on the `testcompany.com` domain:

```
setcookie("username", "joe", time() + 3600, "/", ".testco
```

## **Mail Function**

The PHP mail function makes the interface between your HTML forms and your server's outgoing mail program a snap!

If your server has access to sendmail or an external SMTP server, the `mail()` function sends mail to a specified recipient. Its syntax is

```
mail("recipient", "subject", "message", "mail headers"
```

For example, the following code sends mail to [julie@thickbook.com](mailto:julie@thickbook.com), with a subject of "I'm sending mail!" and a message body saying "PHP is cool!" The `From` line is part of the

additional mail headers:

```
mail("julie@thickbook.com", "I'm sending mail!",  
     "PHP is cool!", "From: youremail@yourdomain.com\n")
```

## Mathematical Functions

Because I have very little aptitude for mathematics, I find PHP's built-in mathematical functions to be of the utmost importance! In addition to all the functions, the value of pi (3.14159265358979323846) is already defined as a constant in PHP (`M_PI`).

### **ceil()**

The `ceil()` function rounds a fraction up to the next higher integer. Its syntax is

```
ceil(number);
```

### **decbin() and bindec()**

The `decbin()` and `bindec()` functions convert decimal numbers to binary numbers and binary numbers to decimal numbers, respectively. The syntax of these functions is

```
decbin(number);  
bindec(number);
```

### **dechex() and hexdec()**

The `dechex()` and `hexdec()` functions convert decimal numbers to hexadecimal numbers and hexadecimal numbers to decimal numbers, respectively. The syntax of these functions is

```
dechex(number);  
hexdec(number);
```

### **decoct() and octdec()**

The `decoct()` and `octdec()` functions convert decimal numbers to

octal numbers and octal numbers to decimal numbers, respectively. The syntax of these functions is

```
decoct(number);  
octdec(number);
```

### **floor()**

The `floor()` function rounds a fraction down to the next lower integer. Its syntax is

```
floor(number);
```

### **number\_format()**

The `number_format()` function returns the formatted version of a specified number. Its syntax is

```
number_format("number", "decimals", "dec_point", "thou
```

For example, to return a formatted version of the number 12156688 with two decimal places and a comma separating each group of thousands, use

```
echo number_format("12156688", "2", ".", ",");
```

The result is 12,156,688.00.

If only a number is provided, the default formatting does not use a decimal point and puts a comma between every group of thousands.

### **pow()**

The `pow()` function returns the value of a given number raised to the power of a given exponent. Its syntax is

```
pow(number, exponent);
```

### **rand()**

The `rand()` function generates a random value from a specific range of numbers. Its syntax is

```
rand(min, max);
```

### round()

The `round()` function rounds a fraction to the next higher or next lower integer. Its syntax is

```
round(number);
```

### sqrt()

The `sqrt()` function returns the square root of a given number. Its syntax is

```
sqrt(number);
```

### srand()

The `srand()` function provides the random number generator with a set of possible values. Its syntax is

```
srand(seed);
```

A common practice is to seed the random number generator by using a number of microseconds:

```
srand((double)microtime() *1000000);
```

## Miscellaneous Functions

The `die()` and `exit` functions provide useful control over the execution of your script, offering an escape route for programming errors. Other functions have found their way into this miscellaneous category.

### die()

The `die()` function outputs a given message and terminates the script when a returned value is false. Its syntax is

```
die("message");
```

For example, you would use the following code to print a message and stop the execution of your script upon failure to connect to your database:

```
$connection = mysql_connect("servername", "username",
    or die ("Can't connect to database.");
```

## exit

The `exit` statement terminates the execution of the current script at the point where the `exit` statement is made.

## sleep() and usleep()

The `sleep()` and `usleep()` functions put a pause, or a delay, at a given point in the execution of your PHP code. The syntax of these functions is

```
sleep(seconds);
usleep(microseconds);
```

The only difference between `sleep()` and `usleep()` is that the given wait period for `sleep()` is in seconds, and the wait period for `usleep()` is in microseconds.

## uniqid()

The `uniqid()` function generates a unique identifier with a prefix if you want one. Its syntax is

```
uniqid("prefix");
```

That's boring, though. Suppose you want a unique ID with a prefix of `phpuser`. You would use

```
$id = uniqid("phpuser");
echo "$id";
```

and you would get something like `phpuser38b320a6b5482`.

But if you use something really cool like

```
$id = md5(uniqid(rand()));
```

```
echo "$id";  
you would get an ID like 999d8971461bedfc7caadcab33e65866.
```

## Program Execution Functions

You can use PHP's built-in program execution functions to use programs residing on your system, such as encryption programs, third-party image manipulation programs, and so forth. For all program execution functions, the PHP user must have permission to execute the given program.

### exec()

The `exec()` function executes an external program. Its syntax is

```
exec(command, [array], [return_var]);
```

If an array is specified, the output of the `exec()` function will append to the array. If `return_var` is specified, it will be assigned a value of the program's return status.

For example, you would use the following code to perform a ping of a server five times and print the output:

```
$command = "ping -c5 www.thickbook.com";  
exec($command, $result, $rval);  
for ($i = 0; $i < sizeof($result); $i++) {  
    echo "$result[$i]<br>";  
}
```

### passthru()

Like the `exec()` function, the `passthru()` function executes an external program. The difference between the two is that `passthru()` returns the raw output of the action. The syntax of `passthru()` is

```
passthru(command, return_var);
```

If `return_var` is specified, it will be assigned a value of the program's return status.

## **system()**

The `system()` function executes an external program and displays output as the command is being executed. Its syntax is

```
system(command, [return_var]);
```

If `return_var` is specified, it will be assigned a value of the program's return status.

For example, you would use the following code to perform a ping of a server five times and print the raw output:

```
$command = "ping -c5 www.thickbook.com";
system($command);
```

## **Regular Expression Functions**

### **ereg\_replace() and eregi\_replace()**

The `ereg_replace()` and `eregi_replace()` functions replace instances of a pattern within a string and return the new string. The `ereg_replace()` function performs a case-sensitive match, and `eregi_replace()` performs a case-insensitive match. Here is the syntax for both functions:

```
ereg_replace(pattern, replacement, string);
eregi_replace(pattern, replacement, string);
```

For example, you would use the following code to replace "ASP" with "PHP" in the string "I really love programming in ASP!"

```
$old_string = "I really love programming in ASP!";
$new_string = ereg_replace("ASP", "PHP", $old_string);
echo "$new_string";
```

If "ASP" is mixed case, such as "aSp", use the `eregi_replace()` function:

```
$old_string = "I really love programming in aSp!";
```

```
$new_string = eregi_replace("ASP", "PHP", $old_string)  
echo "$new_string";
```

## **split()**

The `split()` function splits a string into an array using a certain separator (comma, colon, semicolon, and so on). Its syntax is

```
split(pattern, string, [limit]);
```

The limit is optional. If a limit is specified, the `split()` function stops at the named position—for example, at the tenth value in a comma-delimited list.

## *Session-Handling Functions*

Session handling is a way of holding on to data as a user navigates your website. Data can be variables or entire objects. These simple functions are just a few of the session-related functions in PHP; see the PHP manual at <http://www.php.net/> manual/ for more.

## **session\_start()**

The `session_start()` function starts a session if one has not already been started, or it resumes a session if the session ID is present for the user. This function takes no arguments and is called simply by placing the following at the beginning of your code:

```
session_start();
```

## **session\_destroy()**

The `session_destroy()` function effectively destroys all the variables and values registered for the current session. This function takes no arguments and is called simply by placing the following in your code:

```
session_destroy();
```

## **String Functions**

This section only scratches the surface of PHP's built-in string

manipulation functions, but if you understand these common functions, your programming life will be quite a bit easier!

## **addslashes() and stripslashes()**

The `addslashes()` and `stripslashes()` functions are very important when inserting and retrieving data from a database. Often, text inserted into a database will contain special characters (single quotes, double quotes, backslashes, NULL) that must be escaped before being inserted. The `addslashes()` function does just that, using this syntax:

```
addslashes(string);
```

Similarly, the `stripslashes()` function returns a string with the slashes taken away, using this syntax:

```
stripslashes(string);
```

## **chop(), ltrim(), and trim()**

All three of these functions remove errant white space from a string. The `chop()` function removes white space from the end of a string, and `ltrim()` removes white space from the beginning of a string. The `trim()` function removes both leading and trailing white space from a string. Here is the syntax of these functions:

```
chop(string);
ltrim(string);
trim(string);
```

## **echo()**

The `echo()` function returns output. The syntax of `echo()` is

```
echo (parameter 1, parameter 2, ...)
```

For example:

```
echo "I'm using PHP!";           // output is: I'm using PH
echo 2+6;                         // output is: 8
```

The parentheses are not required when using echo.

## explode() and implode()

The explode() function splits a string using a given separator and returns the values in an array. The syntax of explode() is

```
explode("separator", "string");
```

For example, the following code takes a string called \$color\_list, containing a comma-separated list of colors, and places each color into an array called \$my\_colors:

```
$color_list = "blue,black,red,green,yellow,orange";  
$mycolors = explode(", ", $color_list);
```

Conversely, the implode() function takes an array and makes it into a string, using a given separator. The syntax of implode() is

```
implode("separator", "string");
```

For example, the following code takes an array called \$color\_list and then creates a string called \$mycolors, containing the values of the \$color\_list array, separated by commas:

```
$mycolors = implode(", ", $color_list);
```

## htmlspecialchars() and htmlentities()

The htmlspecialchars() and htmlentities() functions convert special characters and HTML entities within strings into their acceptable entity representations. The htmlspecialchars() function converts only the less-than sign (< becomes &lt;), greater-than sign (> becomes &gt;), double quotes (" becomes &quot;), and the ampersand (& becomes &amp;).

The htmlentities() function converts the characters in the ISO-8859-1 character set to the proper HTML entity. Here is the syntax of these functions:

```
htmlspecialchars(string);
```

```
htmlentities(string);
```

## nl2br()

The `nl2br()` function replaces all ASCII newlines with the HTML line break (`<BR>`). The syntax of the `nl2br()` function is

```
nl2br(string);
```

## sprintf()

The `sprintf()` function returns a string that has been formatted according to a set of directives, as listed in [Table B.9](#). The syntax of `sprintf()` is

**Table B.9: `sprintf()` Function Formatting Directives**

Directive	Result
%	Adds a percent sign
b	Considers the string an integer and formats it as a binary number
c	Considers the string an integer and formats it with that ASCII value
d	Considers the string an integer and formats it as a decimal number
f	Considers the string a double and formats it as a floating-point number
o	Considers the string an integer and formats it as an octal number
s	Considers and formats the string as a string
x	Considers the string an integer and formats it as a hexadecimal number (lowercase letters)
X	Considers the string an integer and formats it as a

## || hexadecimal number (uppercase letters) ||

```
sprintf(directives, string);
```

For example, to turn the number 5 into \$5.00 (five dollars), use:

```
$newnumber = sprintf("%0.02f", 5);
```

### **strlen()**

The `strlen()` function returns the length of a given string. Its syntax is

```
strlen(string);
```

### **strtolower()**

The `strtolower()` function returns a given string with all alphabetic characters in lowercase. Its syntax is

```
strtolower(str);
```

### **strtoupper()**

The `strtoupper()` function returns a given string with all alphabetic characters in uppercase. Its syntax is

```
strtoupper (str);
```

### **substr()**

The `substr()` function returns a portion of a string, given a starting position and optional ultimate length. Its syntax is

```
substr(string, start, [length]);
```

If the start position is a positive number, the starting position is counted from the beginning of the string. If the start position is negative, the starting position is counted from the end of the string.

Similarly, if the optional length parameter is used and is a positive number, the length is counted from the beginning of the string. If the length parameter is used and is a negative number, the length is counted

from the end of the string.

For example:

```
$new_string = substr("PHP is great!", 1);      // retu
$new_string = substr("PHP is great!", 0, 7);    // retu
$new_string = substr("PHP is great!", -1);       // retu
$new_string = substr("PHP is great!", -6, 5);   // retu
```

### **ucfirst()**

The `ucfirst()` function changes the first alphabetic character in a string to an uppercase character. Its syntax is

```
ucfirst(string);
```

### **ucwords()**

The `ucwords()` function changes the first letter of each word in a string to uppercase. Its syntax is

```
ucwords(string);
```

## **Variable Functions**

The two basic variable functions, `isset()` and `unset()`, help you manage your variables within the scope of an application.

The `isset()` function determines whether a variable exists. The `unset()` function explicitly destroys the named variable. Here is the syntax of each:

```
isset(var);
unset(var);
```

The `isset()` function returns true if the variable exists and false if it does not.

## Appendix C: Writing Your Own Functions and Objects

As you become more comfortable with writing code, you might realize that many times you will write the same bits of code over and over again. A prime example of this is the database connection code used throughout this book. How many times did you think to yourself, "This is really repetitive!" Quite often, I'm sure. This is where writing your own functions comes into play.

When you program in PHP, you will use predefined functions to achieve certain results. For example, the `mail()` function is a predefined function that sends mail. The `mysql_connect()` function is a predefined function that connects to a MySQL database. The code that makes up these functions is built into the PHP scripting engine, so you never see it. However, you can write your own functions and use them in your scripts, even storing your own functions in external files for use only when you need them.

# The Structure of Functions

Functions have a very specific structure, as you can see in the following code, where [function name] and [arguments] should be replaced with your own function name and any arguments you might want to use:

```
function [function_name] ([arguments]) {  
    // code  
}
```

When you create a function, you precede the name of the function with the literal word `function`. After that and the name of your function comes the list of arguments inside a set of parentheses. The arguments—which are optional, because you don't have to pass any arguments to a function if you don't want to—are separated by commas, and hold values that your function needs in order to complete its task or tasks.

After the arguments, you open a set of curly braces, type all of your code, and finally close the set of braces. For example, the following function (called `multiplier`) takes an argument called `$num` and multiplies the value by 5.

```
function multiplier ($num) {  
    $answer = $num * 5;  
}
```

Say you have already determined that `$num` equals 8, and that's what you're passing to the `multiplier` function. Using your own math skills, you know that `$answer` will equal 40. To get that number back to your script, outside of the function, you must return the value.

## Returning Values From Functions

The basic method for returning values from your functions is to use the `return` statement. Usually, this statement comes at the end of the function, like so:

```
function multiplier ($num) {
```

```
$answer = $num * 5;  
return $answer;  
}
```

**Note** A `return` statement can be anywhere in a function, but when used, it ends the execution of the function. This means the code that is executed is the line of your script from which the `return` statement was called.

When you use a `return` statement, you can then call the function in your code like so:

```
echo multiplier(5);
```

This usage would result in the following on your screen:

```
40
```

Because you are passing 8 as the `$num` argument to the `multiplier()` function, `$answer` becomes 40. Because `$answer` is being returned as the result of the function's actions, and you are using `echo` followed by the function call, you're telling PHP to print the result of the code within the function. In this case, that result is the number 40.

**Note** You can also use the `return` statement to get multiple values, but only if they are part of an array or an object.

Using a `return` statement to pass results from your functions to your main script is a simple and safe method, and one of the most common. If you do not use a `return` statement, you must declare as global any variables you want to pass back to your main script. For example:

```
function multiplier($num) {  
    global $answer;  
    $answer = $num * 5;  
}
```

In this case, you call the `multiplier()` function and then use the name of the variable in the `echo` statement, because it's not returned directly from your function. For example, using the modified function, the following code will print the number 40 to your screen:

```
multiplier(5);  
echo $answer;
```

If you had not declared `$answer` as a global variable, the result would have been a blank screen.

**Note** Use some thought to determine which variables you really want to make globally available to your scripts. Each time you declare something as global, you must employ additional programming constraints in order to maintain the integrity of the data. In other words, you have to be careful and watch what you do. If you have declared a variable as global, but you use a variable of the same name in another part of your script, you will overwrite one or the other. A good rule of thumb is to keep a handle on your global variables, and keep them local to the procedures that directly use them.

## Using Functions in Your Code

So far, you've learned the basic structure of a user-defined function, but not how it fits within your own scripts. In the case of the `multiplier()` function, it does seem awfully time-consuming to create a script like the following just to print a number on the screen:

```
<?
function multiplier($num) {
    $answer = $num * 5;
    return $answer;
}
echo multiplier(5);
?>
```

Instead, imagine a function called `db_connect()`, which contains your database connection and selection code:

```
function db_connect() {
    $connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike"
        or die(mysql_error()));
    $db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection)
        or die(mysql_error());
}
```

Instead of typing those two lines over and over in every script, imagine simply typing this:

```
db_connect();
```

If your host name, username, password, or database name change, you have to change this information in only one place—the `db_connect()` function code. Now the only trick is where to put this function. Obviously, if you are creating a function in order to reuse the code within it, you don't want the function to be part of the script. Instead, you place the function in a file of its own (or a file containing other functions) and use `include()` or `require()` to pull the information into your script as appropriate.

## Using `include()` and `require()`

The `include()` and `require()` functions do essentially the same thing: When called, the code in the included file becomes part of the script calling it. From that point forward, anything in the included file can be used in the script calling it.

The difference between `include()` and `require()` pops up when the file to be included cannot be opened. This can occur because of incorrect permissions, or perhaps the file isn't in the location specified. When a failure occurs using `include()`, you get a warning, but the code continues to execute as best it can, which is to say, not very well if it needs a function that's in some other file! When `require()` cannot find or open the file, you will get a fatal error and PHP will stop processing the code altogether.

Included files look just like any other PHP files, starting with an opening PHP tag and ending with a closing PHP tag. For example, suppose you have a file called `myfunctions.php`, containing the following code:

```
<?
/* The multiplier() function multiplies a number by 5 .
function multiplier($num) {
    $answer = $num * 5;
return $answer;
}

/* The db_connect() function connects to my database.
function db_connect() {
    $connection = @mysql_connect("localhost", "spike"
        or die(mysql_error());
    $db = @mysql_select_db($db_name, $connection)
        or die(mysql_error());
}
?>
```

Then, in your actual PHP script, which needs to connect to a database, you would have the following:

```
<?
//include the file that has the function you need
include("/path/to/myfunctions.php");

//call a function
db_connect();

//now you can do things like issue queries and get res
?>
```

Obviously, this is a very simple example of using included files as function libraries, but you probably can already see the benefits! Anywhere you have repetitive code, think about using your own function to replace it. You can have multiple files full of function libraries named appropriately for their tasks. You can easily optimize your code when you go through the exercise of determining where functions can be used. Try it yourself—there is plenty of repetitive code used in this book, which you can quickly turn into your own tightly wound application!

## Working with Objects

Occasionally in this book, I've mentioned "object-oriented programming" in reference to a more complex type of programming, beyond the procedural scripts on which this book is based. An object is sort of a theoretical box of things—variables, functions, and so forth—that exists in a templated structure called a *class*. Although it's easy to visualize a simple variable, such as `$color`, with a value of `red`, or an array called `$rainbow` with three or four elements inside it, some people have a difficult time visualizing objects.

For now, try to think of an object like a little box with inputs and outputs on either side. The input mechanisms are called *methods*, and methods have *properties*. Throughout this section, you'll take a look at how classes, methods, and properties all work together to produce various outputs. This will give you a good picture of what object-oriented programming is all about, should you want to go that route when building your applications. To learn plenty more on the topic, check the PHP manual chapter called "Classes and Objects" at <http://www.php.net/manual/en/language.oop.php>.

An object has a structure, called a class. In a class, a set of characteristics is defined. For example, say that you have created a `house` class. In the `house` class, you might have architectural type, square footage, and color characteristics. Each `house` object uses all of the characteristics, but they are initialized to different values, such as ranch, 1500, and white aluminum siding, or condominium, 786, and tan stucco.

Because classes are so tightly structured but self-contained and independent of one another, they can be reused from one application to another. For example, suppose you write some text-formatting classes on one project and decide you can use that class in another project. Because a class is just a set of characteristics, you can pick up the code and use it in the second project, reaching into it with methods specific to the second application, but using the inner workings of the existing code to achieve new results.

## **Creating an Object**

Creating an object is quite simple; you simply declare it to be in existence:

```
class myClass {  
    //code will go here  
}
```

Now that you have a class, you can create a new instance of an object:

```
$object1 = new myClass();
```

The following code snippet shows you that your object exists:

```
<?php  
class myClass {  
    //code will go here  
}  
$object1 = new myClass();  
echo "\$object1 is an ".gettype($object1);  
?>
```

If you save this code as `objtest.php`, place it in your document root, and access it with your web browser, you will see the following on your screen:

```
$object1 is an object
```

Next, you learn about object properties and methods.

## **Properties of Objects**

The variables declared inside an object are called properties. It is standard practice to declare your variables at the top of the class. These properties can be values, arrays, or even other objects. The following snippet uses simple scalar variables inside the class, prefaced with the `var` keyword:

```
class myHouse {  
    var $type = "condo";
```

```
    var $sqfootage = "786";
    var $color = "tan stucco";
}
```

Now, when you create a `myHouse` object, it will always have these three properties, which you can reference. The following shows how this works:

```
<?
class myHouse {
    var $type = "condo";
    var $sqfootage = "786";
    var $color = "tan stucco";
}
$house = new myHouse();
echo "I live in a ".$house -> color." ".$house -> sqfo-
square foot ".$house -> type;
?>
```

If you save this code as `myHouse.php`, place it in your document root, and access it with your web browser, you will see the following on your screen:

```
I live in a tan stucco 786 square foot condo
```

## Object Methods

Methods add functionality to your objects; instead of simply containing properties, the objects will actually do something useful. For example, the following class outputs a string:

```
<?
class anotherClass {
    function sayHello() {
        echo "HELLO!";
    }
}
$object1 = new anotherClass();
$object1 -> sayHello();
?>
```

If you save a file containing this code in your document root and access it with your web browser, you will see the following on your screen:

HELLO!

So, a method looks and acts like a normal function but is defined within the framework of a class. The `->` operator is used to call the object method in the context of your script. Had there been any variables stored in the object, the method would have been capable of accessing them for its own purposes. For example:

```
<?
class anotherClass {
    var $name = "Joe";
    function sayHello() {
        echo "HELLO! My name is ".$this->name;
    }
}
$object1 = new anotherClass();
$object1 -> sayHello();
?>
```

If you save this code and place it in your document root, and then access it with your web browser, you will see the following on your screen:

HELLO! My name is Joe

The special variable `$this` is used to refer to the currently instantiated object. Anytime an object refers to itself, you must use the `$this` variable. Using the `$this` variable in conjunction with the `->` operator enables you to access any property or method in a class, within the class itself.

## Constructors

A constructor is simply a function that lives within a class and, given the same name as the class, is automatically called when a new instance of the class is created using `new classname`. Using constructors enables you to provide arguments to your class, to be processed immediately when it is first called. You will see constructors in action in the [next](#)

section.

## Object Inheritance

Having learned the very basics of objects, properties, and methods, you can start to look at object inheritance. Inheritance with regard to classes is just what it sounds like: One class inherits the functionality from its parent class. An example is shown here:

```
<?
class myClass {
    var $name = "Joe";
    function myClass($n) {
        $this->name = $n;
    }
    function sayHello() {
        echo "HELLO! My name is ".$this->name;
    }
}
class childClass extends myClass {
//code goes here
}
$object1 = new childClass("Child of Joe");
$object1 -> sayHello();
?>
```

If you save this code, place it in your document root, and access it with your web browser, you will see the following on your screen:

HELLO! My name is Child of Joe

These lines make up the constructor:

```
function myClass($n) {
    $this->name = $n;
}
```

This function is named the same as the class in which it is contained: `myClass`. You then see that the `childClass` is defined, but it contains no code. In this example, it's meant to demonstrate only inheritance from

the parent class. The inheritance occurs through the use of the `extends` clause, as in

```
class childClass extends myClass {
```

The second class inherits the elements of the first class because this clause is used. Like most elements of object-oriented programming, inheritance is useful when attempting to make your code flexible.

Suppose you created a text-formatting class that organized and stored data, formatted it in HTML, and output the result to a browser—your own personal masterpiece. Now suppose you had a client who wanted to use that concept, but instead of formatting the content into HTML and sending it to a browser, he wanted to format it for plain text and save it to a text file. No problem—you just add a few methods and properties, and away you go. Finally, the client comes back and says that he really wants the data to be formatted and sent as an e-mail—and then, what the heck, why not create XML-formatted files as well?

If you separate the compilation and storage classes from the formatting classes—one for each of the various delivery methods (HTML, text, e-mail, and XML)—you essentially have a parent-child relationship.

Consider the parent class to be the one that holds the compilation and storage methods. The formatting classes are the children—they inherit the information from the parent and output the result based on their own functionality.

In no way has this brief appendix covered all the aspects of object-oriented programming—universities teach entire series of courses devoted to this topic. However, you did learn how to create classes and instantiate objects from them, how to create and access the properties and methods of a class, how to build new classes, and how to inherit features from parent classes. You should now be able to pick up a book on object-oriented programming and not feel completely lost.

## **Appendix D: Database Normalization and SQL Reference**

The database tables used in this book were designed for simplicity's sake, to help you understand the basic interaction between PHP and MySQL. These are not "normalized" databases. "Normalization" is a word you'll hear a lot when you begin to create detailed database-driven applications, and it requires a different type of thought process—thinking in relational terms before seeing the relationships in front of you. In this appendix, you learn the basics of database normalization, along with some key elements of the SQL language.

# Understanding Database Normalization

Database normalization is essentially a set of rules that allows you to organize your database in such a way that your tables are related, where appropriate, and flexible for future growth and relationships. The sets of rules used in normalization are called *normal forms*. If your database design follows the first set of rules, it's considered in the *first normal form*. If the first three sets of rules of normalization are followed, your database is said to be in the third normal form. This appendix goes through the normal forms, using the concept of students and courses in a school, and shows you how to normalize the `my_contacts` table used previously in the book.

## Applying the Normal Forms

Before explaining the first normal form, let's start with something that needs to be normalized. In the case of a database, a *flat table* is a prime example of something needing to be normalized. A flat table is like a spreadsheet with many columns of data. In a flat table, there are no relationships between multiple tables, as all the data you could possibly want is right there in that single flat table. This scenario is not the most efficient design and will consume more physical space on your hard drive than a set of normalized database tables.

Suppose you have a table that holds student and course information for a school. You might have the following fields in your flat table, as shown in [Table D.1](#).

**Table D.1: The Student and Courses Table**

Field Name	Description
StudentName	Name of the student
CourseID1	ID of the first course taken by the student

CourseDescription1	Description of the first course taken by the student
CourseInstructor1	Instructor of the first course taken by the student
CourseID2	ID of the second course taken by the student
CourseDescription2	Description of the second course taken by the student
CourseInstructor2	Instructor of the second course taken by the student

You might then repeat CourseID, CourseDescription, and CourseInstructor columns many more times to account for all the classes a student can take during their academic career. Although redundant, this is the method used when creating a single flat table to store information. Eliminating this redundancy is the first step in database normalization, so next you'll take this flat table to first normal form. If your table remained in its flat format, you could have a lot of unclaimed space and a lot of space being used unnecessarily—not an efficient table design!

## Taking a Table to First Normal Form

The main rules for the first normal form are as follows:

- Eliminate repeating information
- Create separate tables for related data

Looking at the flat table design, with its many repeated sets of fields for students and courses, you can identify students and courses as its two distinct topics. Taking your student and courses flat table to the first normal form would mean that you create two tables: one for students (call it `students`) and one for students plus courses (call it `students_courses`). You can see the new table designs in [Tables D.2](#) and [D.3](#).

**Table D.2: The students Table**

Field Name	Description
StudentID	A unique ID for the student. This new field is now a primary key.
StudentName	Name of the student.

**Table D.3: The students\_courses Table**

Field Name	Description
StudentID	Unique ID of the student, matching an entry in the students table.
CourseID	ID of the course being taken by the student.
CourseDescription	Description of the course taken by the student.
CourseInstructor	Instructor of the course taken by the student.

Your two new tables now represent a one-to-many relationship of one student to many courses. Students can take as many courses as they want, and are not limited to the number of CourseID/CourseDescription/CourseInstructor groupings that exist in the flat table.

You still have some work to do, and the next step is to put these tables into second normal form.

## Taking Tables to Second Normal Form

The basic rule for the second normal form is

- No non-key attributes depend on a portion of the primary key

In plain English, this means that if fields in your table are not entirely

related to a primary key, you have to keep working on them. In the students and courses example, this means breaking out the courses into their own table so that the original flat table is now just a table full of unique students.

CourseID, CourseDesc, and CourseInstructor can become a table called courses with a primary key of CourseID. The students\_courses table should then just contain two fields: StudentID and CourseID. You can see the new table designs in [Tables D.4](#) and [D.5](#).

**Table D.4: The courses Table**

Field Name	Description
CourseID	Unique ID of the course
CourseDescription	Description of the course
CourseInstructor	Instructor of the course

**Table D.5: The New students\_courses Table**

Field Name	Description
StudentID	Unique ID of the student, matching an entry in the students table.
CourseID	Unique ID of the course being taken, matching an entry in the courses table.

Believe it or not, you can go even further with this example, to the third normal form.

## Taking Tables to Third Normal Form

The rule for the third normal form is

- No attributes depend on other non-key attributes

This rule simply means that you need to look at your tables and determine whether more fields exist that can be broken down further and that aren't dependent on a key. Think about removing repeated data and you'll find your answer—`instructors`. Usually, an instructor will teach more than one class. However, the `CourseInstructor` field in the `courses` table is not a key of any sort. So if you break out this information and create a separate table purely for the sake of efficiency and maintenance, that's the third normal form. Take a look at the new `courses` table, and the `instructors` table, in [Tables D.6](#) and [D.7](#).

**Table D.6: The `courses` Table**

Field Name	Description
<code>CourseID</code>	Unique ID of a course
<code>CourseDescription</code>	Description of the course
<code>CourseInstructorID</code>	ID of the instructor, matching an entry in the <code>instructors</code> table

**Table D.7: The `instructors` Table**

Field Name	Description
<code>InstructorID</code>	Unique ID of an instructor
<code>InstructorName</code>	Name of the instructor
<code>InstructorNotes</code>	Any notes regarding the instructor

The third normal form is usually adequate for removing redundancy and allowing for flexibility and growth. Next, you normalize the `my_contacts` table, used previously in this book.

## Normalizing the `my_contacts` Table

In the original `my_contacts` table, there's not a lot of repeating information, but there very easily could be if you expanded this to be an

actual address book. In an address book, people usually have contact information for home and work, multiple phone methods (land line, cell phone, and so on), and even multiple e-mail addresses. It would make much more sense to break all of those elements out into separate tables and attach the information to people through a primary key. [Table D.8](#) shows the original `my_contacts` table as reference.

**Table D.8: The Original `my_contacts` Table**

Field Name	Description
<code>id</code>	Creates a unique ID number for the entry
<code>f_name</code>	The person's first name
<code>l_name</code>	The person's last name
<code>address1</code>	First line of the address
<code>address2</code>	Second line of the address
<code>address3</code>	Third line of the address
<code>postcode</code>	ZIP or postal code
<code>country</code>	Country in which the person resides
<code>prim_tel</code>	Primary telephone number
<code>sec_tel</code>	Secondary telephone number
<code>email</code>	E-mail address
<code>birthday</code>	The person's birthday

Now identify the different areas for which different tables will exist: address, phone, and e-mail are adequate for this example. [Tables D.9](#), [D.10](#), and [D.11](#) show the fields for these new tables.

**Table D.9: Fields for the address Table**

Field Name	Description

<code>id</code>	Creates a unique ID number for the address entry
<code>contact_id</code>	ID corresponding to a person in the master contact table
<code>address1</code>	First line of the address
<code>address2</code>	Second line of the address
<code>address3</code>	Third line of the address
<code>postcode</code>	ZIP or postal code
<code>address_type</code>	Type of address, such as home, work, or other

**Table D.10: Fields for the phone Table**

<b>Field Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
<code>id</code>	Creates a unique ID number for the phone entry
<code>contact_id</code>	ID corresponding to a person in the master contact table
<code>phone_number</code>	Phone number
<code>phone_type</code>	Type of phone number, such as home, work, cell, or fax

**Table D.11: Fields for the email Table**

<b>Field Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
<code>id</code>	Creates a unique ID number for the e-mail entry
<code>contact_id</code>	ID corresponding to a person in the master contact table
<code>country</code>	Country in which the person resides
<code>email</code>	E-mail address

<code>email_type</code>	Type of e-mail address, such as home or work
-------------------------	----------------------------------------------

These new tables all contain the `contact_id` key, which corresponds to an entry in the new master contact table. The basic `my_contacts` table, used as the master contact table, should now look something like [Table D.12](#).

**Table D.12: The New `my_contacts` Table**

Field Name	Description
<code>id</code>	Creates a unique ID number for the entry
<code>f_name</code>	Person's first name
<code>l_name</code>	Person's last name
<code>birthday</code>	Person's birthday

With these new tables in place, you will have a much more flexible (and normalized!) set of tables for maintaining contact information.

## Basic MySQL Reference

In this section, you'll take a very brief glance at the Structured Query Language (SQL), as well as some basic functions you can use with MySQL to make development a lot easier. See the MySQL manual at <http://www.mysql.com/> for a comprehensive list of MySQL functions and language elements, or for a good introduction to using MySQL, pick up my book *Teach Yourself MySQL in 24 Hours*.

**Note** Throughout this appendix, anything inside brackets should be considered placeholder text. For example, you would replace [yourDBName] with your actual database name in the command.

In the sections addressing MySQL-related functions, realize that these are specific to MySQL and are not available in other databases such as Oracle, Microsoft SQL Servers, or even SQLite (which you'll learn about in [Appendix E](#)). However, the basic elements of SQL are common to such SQL-aware databases.

### Creating or Dropping a Database

Starting with something simple, you can use the SQL CREATE command to create a new database. The syntax is

```
CREATE DATABASE [yourDBName];
```

When you create a database with this command, you're really just creating a directory to hold the files that make up the tables in the database.

To delete an entire database from the system, use the DROP command:

```
DROP DATABASE [yourDBName];
```

Be extremely careful when using the DROP command, because once you delete the database, all of the tables are removed as well!

## Creating or Dropping a Table

You can also use the SQL CREATE command to create a table within the current database. The syntax is

```
CREATE TABLE [yourTableName] ([fieldName1] [type],  
[fieldName2] [type], ...) [options]
```

To delete a table from the current database, use the DROP command:

```
DROP TABLE [yourTableName];
```

Be extremely careful when using the DROP command, because once you drop the tables, they're gone!

## Altering a Table

The SQL ALTER command gives you the opportunity to modify elements of a particular table, such as renaming columns, changing the type of a column, adding columns, deleting columns, and so on. Following are some common uses:

- To add a column to a table, use this:

```
ALTER TABLE [yourTableName] ADD [newColumn] [filedType];
```

- To delete a column from a table, use this:

```
ALTER TABLE [yourTableName] DROP [columnName];
```

- To change a column from one type to another, use this:

```
ALTER TABLE [yourTableName] CHANGE [columnName] [newName] [type];
```

- To make a unique column in your table, use this:

```
ALTER TABLE [yourTableName] ADD UNIQUE [columnName];
```

- To index a column in your table, use this:

```
ALTER TABLE [yourTableName] ADD INDEX [columnName];
```

Using the ALTER command alleviates the need to delete an entire table

and re-create it just because you spelled a field name incorrectly or made some other minor mistake.

## Inserting, Updating, or Replacing within a Table

The SQL `INSERT` and `REPLACE` commands populate your tables one record at a time. The syntax of `INSERT` is

```
INSERT INTO [yourTableName] ([fieldName1], [fieldName2]
    VALUES ('[value of fieldName1]', '[value of field]
```

When inserting records, be sure to separate your strings with single quotes or double quotes. If you use single quotes around your strings and the data you are adding contains apostrophes, avoid errors by escaping the apostrophe (`\'`) within the `INSERT` statement. Similarly, if you use double quotes around your strings and you want to include double quotes as part of the data, escape them (`\"`) within your `INSERT` statement.

Here is an example of a string where escaping is necessary:

O'Grady said "Wow"

If you enclose your strings in double quotes, the `INSERT` statement would look like this:

```
INSERT INTO table_name (column_name) VALUES ("O'Grady")
```

If you enclose your strings in single quotes instead, the `INSERT` statement would look like this:

```
INSERT INTO table_name (column_name) VALUES ('O\'Grady')
```

The `REPLACE` statement has the same syntax and requirements as the `INSERT` statement. The only difference is that you use `REPLACE` to overwrite a record in a table when the replacement is based on a unique value:

```
REPLACE INTO [yourTableName] ([fieldName1], [fieldName2]
    VALUES ('[value of fieldName1]', '[value of field]
```

The `UPDATE` command modifies parts of a record without replacing the entire record. To update an entire column in a table with the same new value, use this:

```
UPDATE [yourTableName] SET [fieldName] = '[new value]'
```

If you want to update only specific rows, use a `WHERE` clause:

```
UPDATE [yourTableName] SET [fieldName] = '[new value]'  
expression;
```

`UPDATE` can be a very powerful SQL command. For example, you can perform string functions and mathematical functions on existing records and use the `UPDATE` command to modify their values.

## Deleting From a Table

Like the SQL `DROP` command, using `DELETE` without paying attention to what you're doing can have horrible consequences in a production environment. Once you drop a table or delete a record, it's gone forever. Don't be afraid—just be careful. To delete all the contents of a table, use the following:

```
DELETE FROM [yourTableName];
```

If you want to delete only specific rows, use a `WHERE` clause:

```
DELETE FROM [yourTableName] WHERE [some expression];
```

If you're going to start deleting records, be sure you have a backup, just in case something goes wrong. Everyone screws up once—and hopefully never again.

## Selecting From a Table

When creating database-driven websites, the SQL `SELECT` command will likely be the most often-used command in your arsenal. The `SELECT` command causes certain records in your table to be chosen, based on criteria that you define. Here is the basic syntax of `SELECT`:

```
SELECT [field names] FROM [table name]
```

```
WHERE [some expression]
ORDER BY [field names];
```

To select all the records in a table, use this:

```
SELECT * FROM [yourTableName];
```

To select just the entries in a given column of a table, use this:

```
SELECT [columnName] FROM [yourTableName];
```

To select all the records in a table and have them returned in a particular order, use an expression for ORDER BY. For example, if you have a date field for record entries and you want to see all the record entries ordered by newest to oldest, use this:

```
SELECT * FROM [yourTableName] ORDER BY [dateField] DESC
```

DESC stands for "descending." To view from oldest to newest, use ASC for "ascending." ASC is the default order.

You can also perform mathematical and string functions within SQL statements (specific to your database), thereby using SELECT to do more than just echo existing data. Some examples follow.

## A Few MySQL-Specific String Functions

This list contains only a few of the many string-related functions listed in the MySQL manual. Visit <http://www.mysql.com/doc/> and check out the entire manual for more information.

- You can concatenate values using the CONCAT() function. The syntax is

```
SELECT CONCAT([field1], [field2], ...) AS [newName]
```

- Convert your results to lowercase using the LOWER() function. The syntax is

```
SELECT LOWER([field1], [field2], ...) FROM [yourTa]
```

- Convert your results to uppercase using the `UPPER()` function.  
The syntax is

```
SELECT UPPER([field1], [field2], ...) FROM [yourTable];
```

## A Few MySQL-Specific Date and Time Functions

This list contains only a few of the many date and time-related functions listed in the MySQL manual. Visit <http://www.mysql.com/doc/> and check out the entire manual for more information.

- Get the day of the week (1 = Sunday, 2 = Monday, ...) from a date field using the `DAYOFWEEK()` function. The syntax is

```
SELECT DAYOFWEEK([date]) FROM [yourTableName];
```

- Get the weekday (0 = Monday, 1 = Tuesday, ...) from a date field using the `WEEKDAY()` function. The syntax is

```
SELECT WEEKDAY([date]) FROM [yourTableName];
```

**Note** The difference between the `DAYOFWEEK()` and `WEEKDAY()` functions is the starting point of the week. When you're getting the day of the week, the week starts at Day 1, which is Sunday. When you're getting the weekday (or "work week"), the week starts at Day 0, which is Monday.

- Get the day of the month (1 through 31) from a date field using the `DAYOFMONTH()` function. The syntax is

```
SELECT DAYOFMONTH([date]) FROM [yourTableName];
```

- Get the day of the year (1 through 366) from a date field using the `DAYOFYEAR()` function. The syntax is

```
SELECT DAYOFYEAR([date]) FROM [yourTableName];
```

- Get the month (1 through 12) from a date field using the `MONTH()` function. The syntax is

```
SELECT MONTH([date]) FROM [yourTableName];
```

- Get the month name (January, February, ...) from a date field using the MONTHNAME() function. The syntax is

```
SELECT MONTHNAME([date]) FROM [yourTableName];
```

- Get the day name (Monday, Tuesday, ...) from a date field using the DAYNAME() function. The syntax is

```
SELECT DAYNAME([date]) FROM [yourTableName];
```

- Get the week (0 through 53) from a date field using the WEEK() function. Start the week with Sunday (0) or Monday (1). The syntax is

```
SELECT WEEK([date], [0 or 1]) FROM [yourTableName];
```

- Get the year (1000 through 9999) from a date field using the YEAR() function. The syntax is

```
SELECT YEAR([date]) FROM [yourTableName];
```

## Using the SHOW Command

There are several types of SHOW commands, which will produce output to help you administer your MySQL database. The usual method for executing these commands is through the MySQL Monitor, the command-line interface to MySQL, which you used in [Chapter 1](#), "Installing and Configuring MySQL."

The basic SHOW commands are SHOW DATABASES and SHOW TABLES, which simply display the names of the databases and tables on your server. If you use the SHOW CREATE TABLE command, it shows you the exact SQL statement used to create the specified table.

If you need to know the structure of the table but don't necessarily need the SQL command to create it, you can use the SHOW COLUMNS command:

```
mysql> SHOW COLUMNS FROM [testTable];
```

Field	Type	Null	Key	Default	Extra
id	int(11)			NULL	
testField	varchar(75)	YES	PRI	NULL	auto_increment

2 rows in set (0.00 sec)

For administrative purposes, the SHOW STATUS and SHOW VARIABLES commands quickly provide important information about your database server. For more information on the numerous rows of output from these commands, please read the relevant sections of the MySQL manual, found at <http://www.mysql.com/doc/>.

## **Appendix E: Using SQLite**

## Overview

In [Appendix D](#), "Database Normalization and SQL Reference," you learned about the importance of a normalized database and potential problems with the flat file. However, there are many instances in which your PHP applications might only need a single database table, and there's nothing wrong with that. For instance, suppose you're just archiving the content of simple contact forms set through your website, as a backup in case the e-mailed versions never arrive. This simple table might have fields for name, e-mail address, comments, and date sent—no real need to normalize that!

If you find yourself in a development situation without a database and some mandate that you must not install one, PHP 5 introduces another option into the mix—the capability to utilize SQLite, which is a flat file database with an SQL-based interface.

**Note** SQLite is enabled by default in PHP 5. For detailed information beyond what's covered in this appendix, please visit the SQLite website at <http://www.sqlite.org/>, or search the PHP manual section for SQLite at <http://www.php.net/sqlite/>.

To use SQLite, you must still have a fundamental understanding of how databases, tables, and fields all work together, and SQL syntax itself. Everything you have learned in this book is still viable with regards to the process of connecting to a database, issuing queries, and obtaining results—except that you learned to use the MySQL-specific functions for sending the commands to the MySQL server. SQLite has its own set of functions that you use to perform the same types of tasks.

## Examples of SQLite in Action

This section steps through some of the basic tasks in working with databases, using the SQLite version of things. Before doing anything, you must create a database:

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block:  
<?>
2. Use the `sqlite_open()` function to open a database called `test.db` one level up from the document root—do not worry that it has not been created yet, because this function will create the file if it does not already exist. The `sql_error_string()` function will display any error message if the command fails:

```
$db = sqlite_open("../test.db") or die(sql_erro.
```

**Note** You might notice that no username or password is used to create or open a SQLite database. This is true, because the SQLite database is technically just a plain file, with no requirements for access other than the capability to read and write to the directory in which you are placing the file.

3. Close the PHP block:

```
?>
```

Save this file as `sqlite1.php` and place it in the document root of your web browser. Access the script at <http://127.0.0.1/sqlite1.php> to create the database.

**Note** There will be no output if this script is successful. You will see a message only if the script fails to perform.

Now that you have a working SQLite database, you can move on to creating tables and issuing queries.

## Creating a Table and Storing Data with SQLite

When you created tables using MySQL (and in fact when you create a table in any relational database system), you specifically defined the field types and field lengths. For example, you might have had a field called `name` that was a 25-character `varchar` field, or a field called `start_date` that was a `datetime` field. SQLite is *loosely typed*, meaning the contents of all fields, regardless of what type they actually are, are stored as strings. Thus, SQLite does not require you to define your fields when you create a table, and if you do, they will be ignored.

In the next example, you will create a table that just holds first names, last names, and e-mail addresses, and populates the table with a few records:

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. Use the `sqlite_open()` function to open the database previously created:

```
$db = sqlite_open("../test.db") or die(sql_error());
```

3. Use the `sqlite_query()` function to issue a table-creation command:

```
sqlite_query($db, "CREATE TABLE my_friends (first_name, last_name, email)");
```

4. Use the `sqlite_query()` function to add a few entries using the SQL `INSERT` command:

```
sqlite_query($db, "INSERT INTO my_friends
    VALUES ('John', 'Smith', 'john@smith.com')");
sqlite_query($db, "INSERT INTO my_friends
    VALUES ('Jane', 'Doe', 'jane@doe.com')");
sqlite_query($db, "INSERT INTO my_friends
    VALUES ('Julie', 'Meloni', 'julie@thickbook.com'));
```

5. Close the PHP block:

```
?>
```

The complete script should look like this:

```
<?
$db = sqlite_open("../test.db") or die(sql_error_string());
sqlite_query($db, "CREATE TABLE my_friends (first_name
sqlite_query($db, "INSERT INTO my_friends
    VALUES ('John', 'Smith', 'john@smith.com')");
sqlite_query($db, "INSERT INTO my_friends
    VALUES ('Jane', 'Doe', 'jane@doe.com')");
sqlite_query($db, "INSERT INTO my_friends
    VALUES ('Julie', 'Meloni', 'julie@thickbook.com')
?>
```

Save this file as `sqlite2.php` and place it in the document root of your web browser. Access the script at <http://127.0.0.1/sqlite2.php> to issue these SQLite commands. Again, there will be no output if this script is successful. You will see a message only if the script fails to perform one or more of the commands.

In the [next section](#), you retrieve items from your table.

## Retrieving Items with SQLite

Now that you have records in your SQLite table, you can retrieve them. Again, the process is quite similar to retrieving data from a MySQL table.

1. Open a new file in your text editor and start a PHP block:

```
<?
```

2. Use the `sqlite_open()` function to open the database you previously created:

```
$db = sqlite_open("../test.db") or die(sql_error_string());
```

3. Use the `sqlite_query()` function to issue a `SELECT` command, intended to retrieve records in ascending order by

**last name:**

```
$r = sqlite_query($db, "SELECT * FROM my_friends");
```

4. Check for a result and print a message if the query was not successful:

```
if (!$r) {  
    echo "Sorry, no records.";  
} else {
```

5. Add a `while` loop to handle a successful query. This loop will use the `sqlite_fetch_array()` function, which works just like the `mysql_fetch_array()` function you used throughout the book:

```
while ($record = sqlite_fetch_array($r)) {
```

6. Create variables for each field you're pulling from your table:

```
$first_name = $record[first_name];  
$last_name = $record[last_name];  
$email = $record[email];
```

7. Print each record to the screen, and then close the `while` loop, the `if...else` block, and the PHP block:

```
echo "record: $last_name, $first_name ($email)" .  
}  
}  
?>
```

Your entire code should look like this:

```
<?  
$db = sqlite_open("../test.db") or die(sql_error_string());  
$r = sqlite_query($db, "SELECT * FROM my_friends ORDER BY last_name");  
if (!$r) {  
    echo "Sorry, no records.";  
} else {  
    while ($record = sqlite_fetch_array($r)) {  
        $first_name = $record[first_name];  
        $last_name = $record[last_name];  
        $email = $record[email];  
        echo "record: $last_name, $first_name ($email)" .  
    }  
}
```

```
$last_name = $record[last_name];
$email = $record[email];
echo "record: $last_name, $first_name ($email) <b>
}
?>
```

Save this file as `sqlite3.php` and place it in the document root of your web browser. Access the script at <http://127.0.0.1/sqlite3.php> to issue these SQLite commands and display the output.

Now that you've seen the process for working with SQLite is procedurally similar to working with other databases, you can glance through the [next section](#) to pick up some other tidbits of information.



## Performing Other Tasks with SQLite

In the previous sections, you've seen how to create SQLite databases and tables, and insert and select elements into/from these tables. It's safe to make the leap that you can issue `DELETE` and `DROP` commands similarly to remove records and tables, and you can also use `UPDATE` to change fields within a record—all of these actions are simply variations on the SQL query that is issued using the `sqlite_query()` function.

As to the tasks you can perform with SQLite, they're the same tasks that you can perform with MySQL; all of the MySQL-based code in this book

can be rewritten to use SQLite. However, there are two things the code relied on when using MySQL that haven't been covered in this appendix: auto-incrementing fields and date-stamping.

To implement the use of auto-incrementing fields, you simply have to make some changes to the `sqlite2.php` script:

1. Open `sqlite2.php` in your text editor.
2. Change the table-creation command to:

```
sqlite_query($db, "CREATE TABLE my_friends2 (id  
    PRIMARY KEY, first_name, last_name, email)
```

3. Change the record-insertion commands to:

```
sqlite_query($db, "INSERT INTO my_friends2 (fir  
    last_name, email) VALUES ('John', 'Smith',  
    'john@smith.com')");  
sqlite_query($db, "INSERT INTO my_friends2 (fir  
    last_name, email) VALUES ('Jane', 'Doe',  
    'jane@doe.com')");  
sqlite_query($db, "INSERT INTO my_friends2 (fir  
    last_name, email) VALUES ('Julie', 'Meloni  
    'julie@thickbook.com')");
```

Save this file as `sqlite4.php` and place it in the document root of your web browser. Access the script at <http://127.0.0.1/sqlite4.php> to issue these SQLite commands. Again, there will be no output if this script is successful. You will see a message only if the script fails to perform one or more of the commands.

To see if this script did the trick, modify the `sqlite3.php` script to retrieve and print the ID field:

1. Open `sqlite3.php` in your text editor.
2. Change the name of the table in the query:

```
$r = sqlite_query($db, "SELECT * FROM my_friend
```

3. Change the while loop:

```

while ($record = sqlite_fetch_array($r)) {
    $id = $record[id];
    $first_name = $record[first_name];
    $last_name = $record[last_name];
    $email = $record[email];
    echo "record ID# $id: $last_name, $first_n
}

```

Save this file as `sqlite5.php` and place it in the document root of your web browser. Access the script at <http://127.0.0.1/sqlite5.php> to issue these SQLite commands and display the output.



Just like in MySQL, the ID fields are automatically incremented upon record insertion.

Next, let's take a look at how to handle date-stamping of records, because there's no `now()` function as there is in MySQL, nor are there particular methods for formatting date-related fields. The solution is simply to store an integer, the output of the PHP `time()` function. You can then format this stored value any way you want, using PHP, when you retrieve it for display.

The next steps will work again with the same tables and records used in this appendix, just building on the previous steps.

1. Open `sqlite4.php` in your text editor.

2. Change the table-creation command to:

```
sqlite_query($db, "CREATE TABLE my_friends3  
    (id INTEGER PRIMARY KEY, first_name, last_  
     date_added);
```

3. Change the record-insertion commands to:

```
sqlite_query($db, "INSERT INTO my_friends3  
    (first_name, last_name, email, date_added)  
    ('John', 'Smith', 'john@smith.com', '".time()  
sqlite_query($db, "INSERT INTO my_friends3  
    (first_name, last_name, email, date_added)  
    ('Jane', 'Doe', 'jane@doe.com', '".time()  
sqlite_query($db, "INSERT INTO my_friends3  
    (first_name, last_name, email, date_added)  
    ('Julie', 'Meloni', 'julie@thickbook.com',
```

Save this file as `sqlite6.php` and place it in the document root of your web browser. Access the script at <http://127.0.0.1/sqlite6.php> to issue these SQLite commands. Again, there will be no output if this script is successful. You will see a message only if the script fails to perform one or more of the commands.

To see if this script did the trick, modify the `sqlite5.php` script to retrieve, format, and print the values in the `date_added` field:

1. Open `sqlite5.php` in your text editor.
2. Change the name of the table in the query, and order the records by ID:

```
$r = sqlite_query($db, "SELECT * FROM my_friend
```

3. Add the following inside the `while` loop, after the line that defines the value of `$email`:

```
$date_added = date("l, M d Y, h:i:s A", $record
```

**Note** In this example, the `date()` function formats the value of stored in the `date_added` field. You can learn more about the numerous formatting options for the `date()` function in [Appendix B, "Basic PHP Language Reference,"](#) and in the PHP manual at <http://www.php.net/date>.

4. Change the `echo` statement inside the `while` loop to:

```
echo "record ID# $id: $last_name, $first_name ("
added on $date_added<br>";
```

Save this file as `sqlite7.php` and place it in the document root of your web browser. Access the script at <http://127.0.0.1/sqlite7.php> to issue these SQLite commands and display the output. You should see something like this figure, including the formatted version of the date-stamp stored in the SQLite table.



As you can see, virtually anything you can do with MySQL, you can do (with a little elbow grease in some instances) with SQLite. If you find yourself without a database server, nothing should keep you from utilizing this new feature of PHP 5.

## **Appendix F: Getting Help**

One of the greatest aspects of the open source community is that people are eager to help you learn as much as you can, so that you can become an advocate as well. However, you probably should attempt to find answers to your questions before posing them to the community at large. This includes reading available manuals and FAQs, searching through mailing list archives, and visiting websites. Chances are good that someone else has had the same question you have.

The website for this book, and other books I have written, is <http://www.thickbook.com/>. You will find book errata, downloadable code from the books, recommendations for books and other items, and anything else I think up in my spare time. The book errata will help you to determine if your troubles are due to an error during printing, or if you should re-read the content of the section and try again.

# PHP Resources

PHP-related websites, newsgroups, and mailing lists are abundant, and the ones listed here are just a smattering of what's available.

## Websites

The majority of these sites are maintained by normal people on their own time, so if you use any of their resources, try to give back to the community by helping others with their questions when you can, contributing code snippets to code repositories, and so forth.

### [www.php.net](http://www.php.net)

The home of PHP is <http://www.php.net>. The annotated online manual is here, as well as the PHP FAQs, bug reports, links to ISPs that offer access to PHP, news articles, and much more!

### [www zend com](http://www zend com)

Zend Technologies, the folks behind the Zend engine of PHP, have created a portal site for PHP developers. This personalized site not only showcases how you can build a high-traffic, dynamic site using PHP, but it also provides pointers, resources, and lessons on how to maximize the potential of PHP in all your online applications.

### **DevShed ([www.devshed.com](http://www.devshed.com))**

This site contains many user-submitted tutorials, news articles, interviews, and competitive analyses of server-side programming languages. Covers PHP as well as many other topics of interest to developers, such as servers and databases.

### **PHPBuilder ([www.phpbuilder.com](http://www.phpbuilder.com))**

This is a very good tutorial site for intermediate and advanced PHP developers. It contains How To columns for real-world applications, such

as "Building Dynamic Pages with Search Engines in Mind," "Generating Pronounceable Passwords," and tons more. Recommended!

## WeberDev ([www.weberdev.com](http://www.weberdev.com))

A longtime favorite of PHP developers, this site contains development tricks and tips for many programming languages (just to be fair), as well as a content-management system for everyone to add their own code snippets, tutorials, and more! It has a great weekly newsletter and high traffic. Go contribute!

## px.sklar.com

This is a bare-bones code repository, but who needs graphics when all you're looking for are code snippets? Borrowing from the "take a penny, leave a penny" mentality, you grab a code snippet to start with and then add your own when you feel confident in sharing.

## Webmonkey ([hotwired.lycos.com/webmonkey/](http://hotwired.lycos.com/webmonkey/))

The company that brings us *Wired* magazine also brings us HotWired, which spawned Webmonkey, a developer's resource site with a section devoted to PHP. Don't limit yourself to the PHP section of Webmonkey, because there's much information to be had in other sections as well.

## PHP KnowledgeBase ([php.faqs.com](http://php.faqs.com))

The PHP KnowledgeBase contains questions and answers posed on PHP mailing lists. Anyone can answer questions at the website or ask new ones.

## Mailing Lists

Several high-traffic mailing lists are available for PHP discussion in English as well as other languages. Please remember your netiquette when asking a question: be polite, offer as many examples as you can (if you're describing a problem), provide your system information (if looking for a solution), and did I mention to say please and thank you?

You can find mailing list subscription information at <http://www.php.net/mailing-lists.php>. The English PHP mailing lists are archived and available for searching at <http://marc.theaimsgroup.com/>. Just look for the PHP-related lists under the WWW heading.

## User Groups

Sometimes, knowing other developers in real life can prove helpful. You can find a list of PHP user groups a <http://www.phpusergroups.org/>.

## MySQL Resources

Many of the PHP-related websites listed earlier also contain information on development with MySQL, but the MySQL website at <http://www.mysql.com/> is the place to start for comprehensive MySQL information.

The online MySQL manual is immense, but it's so well-written and useful that its size should not scare you. You can find the manual at <http://www.mysql.com/doc/>. If you're looking for a quick introduction to MySQL, I have written a book called *Teach Yourself MySQL in 24 Hours*, available in bookstores worldwide. Other recommended books on MySQL include anything written by Paul DuBois. (And in fact, he is responsible for a majority of the MySQL manual itself!)

As with PHP, several high-traffic mailing lists are available for MySQL discussion, in English as well as other languages. You can find mailing list subscription information at <http://www.mysql.com/documentation/lists.html>, and the MySQL mailing lists are archived and available for searching at <http://marc.theaimsgroup.com/> as well.

## Apache Resources

Start at the Apache Foundation website, <http://www.apache.org/>, for server documentation and a list of FAQs. Many of the developer-oriented websites listed above, such as DevShed, offer Apache-specific tutorials —you just have to hunt them down.

The ApacheWeek website (<http://www.apacheweek.com/>) is full of Apache-related tips, articles, reviews, and much more. Content is published weekly (hence the name), and an archive of past issues is available.

# Index

## Symbols

- + (addition) operator, [74](#)
- && (and) operator, [81](#)
- { } (curly braces), [464](#)
- / (division) operator, [74](#)
- \$ (dollar sign), [459](#)
- " (double quotes), [65](#)
- == (equals to) operator, [77](#)
- / (forward slash), [142](#)
- % (modulus) operator, [74](#)
- \* (multiplication) operator, [74](#)
- \n (newline character), [122](#), [153](#)
- != (not equal to) operator, [77](#)
- || (or) operator, [81](#)
- ; (semicolon), [10](#), [55](#)
- ' (single quotes), [65](#)
- (subtraction) operator, [74](#)
- \t (tab character), [126–127](#)
- \_ (underscore), [64](#), [459](#)

# Index

## A

a mode, fopen() function, [146](#)  
a+ mode, fopen() function, [146](#)  
access reports  
    code snippet, [418–422](#)  
    count, displaying, [422–425](#)  
    database table creation, [417–418](#)  
    page breakdowns, displaying, [431–435](#)  
    personal, [425–427](#)  
    user agents, displaying, [428–431](#)  
addition (+) operator, [74](#)  
addresses, contacts management systems, [313](#)  
addslashes() function, [486](#)  
administrative menus  
    contact management systems, [298–303](#)  
    tables, [232–234](#)  
ALTER command, [514–515](#)  
altering tables, [514–515](#)  
and (&&) operator, [81](#)  
Apache  
    configuring  
        on Linux/Unix, [32–34](#)  
        to use PHP, [44–45](#)  
        on Windows, [27–28](#)  
    installing  
        for Linux/Unix, [30–31](#)  
        on Windows, [24–27](#)  
    log files, [416–417](#)  
    resources, [534](#)  
    starting and connecting to, [29–30, 34–35](#)

website, [24](#)  
ApacheWeek website, [534](#)  
arithmetic operators, [71](#), [74–77](#), [462](#)  
arrays, [461](#)

- array() function, [467](#)
- array\_keys() function, [468](#)
- array\_merge() function, [468](#)
- array\_pop() function, [467](#)
- array\_push() function, [467](#)
- array\_shift() function, [468](#)
- array\_unshift() function, [468](#)
- array\_values() function, [468](#)

artists

- artist\_fn field, [202](#)
- artist\_ln field, [202](#)
- displaying records ordered by, [240–244](#)

assignment operators, [71–74](#), [462](#)  
attributes

- MAXLENGTH, [220](#), [251](#)
- NAME, [220](#)
- VALUE, [138](#)

authentication

- cookies, [269–275](#)
- database-driven, [248](#)
- login forms, [257–258](#)
- scripts, creating, [258–261](#)
- user addition form and script, [250–254](#)
- user tables, [248–249](#)

# **Index**

## **B**

- backslash (/), [58–60](#), [142](#)
- BIGINT data type, [201](#)
- bin directory, [34](#)
- bindec() function, [479](#)
- birthdates, contact information, [372–378](#)
- BLOB data type, [201](#)
- browser-specific HTML, [100–103](#)

# Index

## C

- calculation forms, [86–88](#)
- calculation scripts, [89–91](#)
- Cascading Style Sheets (CSS), [438](#)
- case-sensitivity, XML, [440](#)
- ceil() function, [479](#)
- cell data, tables, [221–222](#)
- CHAR data type, [201](#)
- checkdate() function, [472](#)
- chgrp() function, [474](#)
- chmod() function, [474](#)
- chop() function, [487](#)
- chown() function, [474](#)
- client-side code, [50](#)
  - code
    - client-side, [50](#)
    - cohabitation, [53–55](#)
    - commenting, [60–62](#)
    - escape characters, [58–60](#)
    - server-side, [50](#)
  - code snippet, access reports, [418–422](#)
- commands
  - ALTER, [514–515](#)
  - CREATE, [513–514](#)
  - DELETE, [516](#)
  - DROP, [513–514](#), [516](#)
  - echo, [55](#)
  - GRANT, [180–181](#)
  - INSERT, [515](#)

makefile, [31](#)  
REPLACE, [515](#)  
SELECT, [12](#), [20](#), [516–517](#)  
SHOW, [519–520](#)  
Start menu, Run, [8–9](#)  
UPDATE, [516](#)  
varchar, [249](#)

comments, [60–62](#)

comparison operators, [71](#), [77–80](#), [463](#)

concat() function, [242](#), [517](#)

concatenation, strings, [122](#)

conditional expressions, [78](#)

configuring

- Apache
  - on Linux/Unix, [32–34](#)
  - to use PHP, [44–45](#)
  - on Windows, [27–28](#)
- Linux, [453–455](#)
- Windows extensions, [452–453](#)

connecting

- to Apache, [29–30](#), [34–35](#)
- to MySQL, [181–182](#)

console window, launching, [27](#)

constants, variables, [68–70](#)

constructors, [502](#)

contacts

- adding
  - record-addition form, creating, [316–321](#)
  - record-addition scripts, creating, [321–325](#)
  - table population, [325–326](#)
- birthdates, showing, [372–378](#)
- date, displaying, [370–372](#)
- deleting

overview, [358–360](#)  
record-deletion form, creating, [351–355](#)  
record-deletion script, creating, [355–358](#)  
record-selection form, creating, [346–350](#)  
editing  
overview, [341–343](#)  
record-modification forms, creating, [333–337](#)  
record-modification script, creating, [337–341](#)  
record-selection forms, creating, [328–333](#)  
management system  
administration menu, creating and planning, [298–303](#)  
logging in, [303–305](#)  
my\_contacts table, [305–306](#), [312–314](#)  
table-creation scripts, [306–312](#)  
normal form examples, [510–513](#)  
number of, showing, [362–370](#)  
read-only records, [384–390](#)  
record lists, displaying, [379–383](#)  
control structures, [464–466](#)  
cookies  
with authentication, [269–275](#)  
counting time, [266](#)  
defined, [264](#)  
setting, [264–266](#)  
test cookies, setting, [267–268](#)  
variables from, [460](#)  
copy() function, [160–161](#), [474](#)  
copying files, [160–162](#)  
count, displaying, access reports, [422–425](#)  
count() function, [213](#), [469](#)  
counting time, cookies, [266](#)  
CREATE command, [513–514](#)  
CSS (Cascading Style Sheets), [438](#)  
curly braces {}, [464](#)

# Index

## D

### data

appending to files, [152–153](#)  
reading from files, [154–157](#)

### data types

BIGINT, [201](#)  
BLOB, [201](#)  
CHAR, [201](#)  
DATE, [201](#)  
DATETIME, [201](#)  
ENUM, [201](#)  
FLOAT, [201](#)  
INT, [201](#)  
MEDIUMINT, [201](#)  
SMALLINT, [200](#)  
TEXT, [201](#)  
TIMESTAMP, [201](#)  
TINYINT, [200](#)  
VARCHAR, [201](#)

### databases

connectivity functions, [470–471](#)  
creating, [513–514](#)  
creating new, [193–195](#)  
deleting, [196–197](#)  
dropping, [513–514](#)  
listing on servers, [185–187](#)  
listing tables in, [188–192](#)

### date

contact information, [370–372](#)  
displaying records ordered by, [238](#)  
functions, [472–474](#)

DATE data type, [201](#)

date format, table creation, [221](#)  
date() function, [370–371](#), [472–473](#), [530](#)  
date\_acq field, [202](#)  
DATETIME data type, [201](#)  
DAYNAME() function, [519](#)  
DAYOFMONTH() function, [518](#)  
DAYOFWEEK() function, [518](#)  
DAYOFYEAR() function, [518](#)  
db\_connect() function, [497](#)  
decbin() function, [479](#)  
dechex() function, [480](#)  
decoct() function, [480](#)  
define() function, [69](#)  
DELETE command, [516](#)  
deleting  
    databases, [196–197](#)  
    files, [164–166](#)  
DevShed website, [532](#)  
die() function, [147](#), [149–150](#), [153](#), [157](#), [213](#), [482](#)  
directories  
    bin, [34](#)  
    contents of, displaying, [142–145](#)  
    htdocs, [29](#)  
distributions, MySQL, [4](#)  
division (/) operator, [74](#)  
dollar sign (\$), [459](#)  
domain parameter, setcookie() function, [265](#)  
double quotes ("'), [65](#)  
DROP command, [513–514](#), [516](#)

dropping databases, [513–514](#)

# Index

## E

e-mail  
  contacts management systems, [313](#)  
  sending  
    feedback forms, creating, [120–121](#)  
    feedback forms, with custom error messages, [127–137](#)  
  file contents, [157–158](#)  
  scripts, [121–124](#)  
  SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol), [118–119](#)

each() function, [469](#)

echo command, [55](#)

echo() function, [487](#)

else statement, [150](#), [165](#)

end tags, PHP, [50–52](#), [458](#)

ENUM data type, [202](#)

environment variables, [460–461](#)  
  discussed, [92](#)  
  HTTP\_USER\_AGENT, [95–96](#)  
  REMOTE\_ADDR, [93–94](#)

equals to (==) operator, [77](#)

eregi\_replace() function, [485](#)

ereg\_replace() function, [485](#)

errors  
  mysql\_error() function, [181](#)  
  sending e-mail  
    error checking, adding, [130–135](#)  
    form submission, [135–137](#)  
    initial script creation, [128–129](#)  
    values, saving, [138–139](#)

escape characters, [58–60](#)

`exec()` function, [483](#)

`exit` statement, [482](#)

`expiration` parameter, `setcookie()` function, [265](#)

`explode()` function, [487](#)

expressions, conditional, [78](#)

Extensible Markup Language. See [XML](#)

# Index

## F

- F option, date formatting, [371](#)
- `fclose()` function, [145](#), [476](#)
- feedback forms
  - with custom error messages, [127–137](#)
  - e-mail, [120–121](#)
- fields
  - ID numbers, unique, [203](#)
  - SET, [339](#)
  - table fields
    - defining, [202–203](#), [205–210](#)
    - input fields, [204](#)
    - UPDATE, [339](#)
- file paths and permissions, [142](#)
- file pointers, [147](#)
- file system functions, [474–477](#)
- files
  - appending data to, [152–153](#)
  - contents, sending via e-mail, [157–158](#)
  - copying, [160–162](#)
  - creating new, [146–149](#)
  - deleting, [164–166](#)
  - existence, checking, [150–152](#)
  - file pointers, [147](#)
  - file uploads
    - discussed, [168](#)
    - form creation, [170–171](#)
    - process of, [169](#)
    - upload scripts, [172–173](#)
  - reading data from, [154–157](#)
  - renaming, [162–164](#)

filesize() function, [155](#)  
first normal forms, [507–508](#)  
FLOAT data type, [201](#)  
floating-point numbers, [65](#), [459](#)  
floor() function, [480](#)  
font\_family variable, [284–285](#)  
font\_size variable, [284](#), [286](#)  
fopen() function, [145–147](#), [150](#), [153](#), [157](#), [475](#)  
for statement, [466](#)  
format field, [202](#)  
forms  
    calculation, [86–88](#)  
    feedback, e-mail, [120–121](#)  
    file uploads, [170–171](#)  
    input forms, string functions, [107–108](#)  
    login, authentication, [257–258](#)  
    newsletter, mailing lists  
        creating, [407–408](#)  
        testing, [411–413](#)  
    record addition  
        contact management system, [316–321](#)  
        table creation, [220–223](#)  
    record deletion, deleting forms, [351–355](#)  
    record-modification, contact management systems, [333–337](#)  
    record selection  
        contact management systems, [328–333](#)  
        deleting contacts, [346–350](#)  
    redirection, [113–115](#)  
    submitting, [91](#)  
    subscription forms, mailing lists, [397–404](#)  
    user addition, authentication, [250–254](#)  
    values, displaying, string functions, [109–110](#)  
forward slash (/), [142](#)

`fputs()` function, [476](#)

`fread()` function, [155–156](#), [158](#), [476](#)

## functions

`addslashes()`, [486](#)

`array()`, [467](#)

`array_keys()`, [468](#)

`array_merge()`, [468](#)

`array_pop()`, [467](#)

`array_push()`, [467](#)

`array_shift()`, [468](#)

`array_unshift()`, [468](#)

`array_values()`, [468](#)

`bindec()`, [479](#)

`ceil()`, [479](#)

`checkdate()`, [472](#)

`chgrp()`, [474](#)

`chmod()`, [474](#)

`chop()`, [487](#)

`chown()`, [474](#)

`concat()`, [242](#), [517](#)

`copy()`, [160–161](#), [474](#)

`count()`, [213](#), [469](#)

database connectivity, [470–471](#)

`date()`, [370–371](#), [472–473](#), [530](#)

`DAYNAME()`, [519](#)

`DAYOFMONTH()`, [518](#)

`DAYOFWEEK()`, [518](#)

`DAYOFYEAR()`, [518](#)

`db_connect()`, [497](#)

`decbin()`, [479](#)

`dechex()`, [480](#)

`decoct()`, [480](#)

`define()`, [69](#)

`die()`, [147](#), [149–150](#), [153](#), [157](#), [213](#), [482](#)

`each()`, [469](#)

`echo()`, [487](#)

eregi\_replace(), [485](#)  
ereg\_replace(), [485](#)  
exec(), [483](#)  
explode(), [487](#)  
fclose(), [145](#), [476](#)  
file system, [474–477](#)  
filesize(), [155](#)  
floor(), [480](#)  
fopen(), [145–147](#), [150](#), [153](#), [157](#), [475](#)  
fputs(), [476](#)  
fread(), [155–156](#), [158](#), [476](#)  
fwrite(), [153](#)  
getenv(), [93–95](#), [103](#), [461](#)  
header(), [113–114](#), [477–478](#)  
hexdec(), [480](#)  
htmlentities(), [488](#)  
htmlspecialchars(), [488](#)  
HTTP, [477–478](#)  
implode(), [487–488](#)  
include(), [497–498](#)  
isset(), [491](#)  
list(), [469](#)  
LOWER(), [517](#)  
ltrim(), [487](#)  
mail(), [118](#), [123](#), [158](#), [410](#), [413](#), [478–479](#)  
mathematical, [479–481](#)  
microtime(), [472](#), [474](#)  
mkdir(), [476](#)  
mktime(), [472](#)  
MONTH(), [518](#)  
MONTHNAME(), [518](#)  
multiplier(), [494](#), [497](#)  
mysql\_connect(), [181](#), [470](#)  
mysql\_error(), [181](#), [366](#), [471](#)  
mysql\_fetch\_array(), [233–234](#), [471](#)  
mysql\_list\_dbs(), [185](#), [189](#)  
mysql\_list\_tables(), [188–190](#)

`mysql_num_rows()`, [185](#), [329](#), [471](#)  
`mysql_query()`, [193](#), [214](#), [224](#), [242](#), [471](#)  
`mysql_result()`, [366](#)  
`mysql_select_db()`, [213](#), [471](#)  
`mysql_tablename()`, [185](#)  
`n12br()`, [159](#), [488](#)  
`now()`, [528](#)  
`number_format()`, [480](#)  
`octdec()`, [480](#)  
`opendir()`, [143](#)  
`passthru()`, [484](#)  
`PASSWORD()`, [252](#)  
`phpinfo()`, [68](#), [92](#)  
`pow()`, [481](#)  
`preg_match()`, [100](#)  
program execution, [483–484](#)  
`rand()`, [481](#)  
`readdir()`, [143](#)  
regular expression, [485](#)  
`rename()`, [162–164](#), [476](#)  
`require()`, [497–498](#)  
`reset()`, [470](#)  
returning values from, [494–496](#)  
`rmdir()`, [477](#)  
`round()`, [481](#)  
session-handling, [486](#)  
`session_destroy()`, [486](#)  
`session_start()`, [279–280](#), [486](#)  
`setcookie()`, [265–267](#), [478](#)  
`shuffle()`, [470](#)  
`sizeof()`, [470](#)  
`sleep()`, [482](#)  
`split()`, [485](#)  
`sprintf()`, [489](#)  
`sql_error_string()`, [522](#)  
`sqlite_open()`, [522](#)  
`sqlite_query()`, [527](#)

`sqrt()`, [481](#)  
`rand()`, [481](#)  
`string`, [486–491](#)  
`stripslashes()`, [227](#), [242](#), [410](#), [486](#)  
`strlen()`, [112](#), [489](#)  
`strrev()`, [112](#)  
`strtolower()`, [112](#), [490](#)  
`strtoupper()`, [112](#), [490](#)  
`substr()`, [214](#), [490](#)  
`symlink()`, [477](#)  
`system()`, [484](#)  
`time`, [472–474](#)  
`time()`, [266](#), [472](#)  
`trim()`, [235–236](#), [242](#), [487](#)  
`ucfirst()`, [491](#)  
`ucwords()`, [112](#), [491](#)  
`uniqid()`, [483](#)  
`unlink()`, [164–165](#), [477](#)  
`unset()`, [491](#)  
`UPPER()`, [517](#)  
`usleep()`, [482](#)  
`var_dump()`, [443](#)  
`variable`, [491](#)  
`WEEK()`, [519](#)  
`WEEKDAY()`, [518](#)  
`YEAR()`, [519](#)

`fwrite()` function, [153](#)

# Index

## G

GET method, [460](#)

getenv() function, [93–95](#), [103](#), [461](#)

global variables, [67](#)

GRANT command, [180–181](#)

greater than or equal to operator, [77](#)

# Index

## H

- header() function, [113–114, 477–478](#)
- hexdec() function, [480](#)
- hidden variables, [130](#)
- htdocs directory, [29](#)
- HTML
  - browser-specific, [100–103](#)
  - platform-specific, [103–106](#)
- htmlentities() function, [488](#)
- htmlspecialchars() function, [488](#)
- HTTP
  - environment variables
    - discussed, [92](#)
    - `HTTP_USER_AGENT`, [95–96](#)
    - `REMOTE_ADDR`, [93–94](#)
  - functions, [477–478](#)
- `HTTP_USER_AGENT` environment variable, [95–96](#)

# Index

## I

ID, displaying records ordered by, [233–234](#)  
id field, [202](#)  
ID numbers, unique, [203](#)  
if statement, [89](#)  
if...else statement, [79–81](#), [464](#)  
implode() function, [487–488](#)  
include() function, [497–498](#)  
increment/decrement operators, [463](#)  
inheritance, objects, [502–504](#)  
input forms, string functions, [107–108](#)  
INSERT command, [515](#)  
installing  
    Apache  
        for Linux/Unix, [30–31](#)  
        for Windows, [24–27](#)  
    MySQL  
        on Linux, [14–16](#)  
        on Windows, [4–8](#)  
    PHP  
        for Linux/Unix, [43–44](#)  
        on Windows, [38–41](#)  
instruction terminator, [55–57](#)  
INT data type, [201](#)  
integers  
    defined, [65](#)  
    variables, [459](#)  
isset() function, [491](#)

# Index

## J

j option, date formatting, [371](#)

# Index

## L

- I option, date formatting, [371](#)
- launching console window, [27](#)
- less than operator, [77](#)
- less than or equal to operator, [77](#)
- Linux
  - Apache configuration, [32–34](#)
  - Apache installation, [30–31](#)
  - configuration options, [453–455](#)
  - MySQL installation, [14–16](#)
  - PHP installation, [43–44](#)
- list() function, [469](#)
- local variables, [67](#)
- log files, Apache, [416–417](#)
- logical operators, [71](#), [81–83](#), [464](#)
- login forms, authentication, [257–258](#)
- LOWER() function, [517](#)
- ltrim() function, [487](#)

# Index

## M

mail() function, [118](#), [123](#), [158](#), [410](#), [413](#), [478–479](#)  
mailing lists  
  newsletter forms  
    creating, [407–408](#)  
    testing, [411–413](#)  
    troubleshooting, [413–414](#)  
  newsletter scripts, creating, [408–411](#)  
  PHP resources, [533](#)  
  subscribers table, creating, [394–396](#)  
  subscription form  
    creating, [397–404](#)  
    testing, [404–406](#)  
makefile command, [31](#)  
mathematical functions, [479–481](#)  
MAXLENGTH attribute, [220](#), [251](#)  
MEDIUMINT data type, [201](#)  
methods  
  GET, [460](#)  
  objects, [501–502](#)  
  POST, [86](#), [107](#), [113](#), [120](#), [460](#)  
Microsoft Internet Explorer (MSIE), [95](#)  
microtime() function, [472](#), [474](#)  
MIME type, [172](#)  
mkdir() function, [476](#)  
mktime() function, [472](#)  
modulus (%) operator, [74](#)  
MONTH() function, [518](#)  
MONTHNAME() function, [518](#)

msg variable, [298](#)  
MSIE (Microsoft Internet Explorer), [95](#)  
multiplication (\*) operator, [74](#)  
multiplier() function, [494](#), [497](#)  
my\_contacts table, [305–306](#), [312–314](#)  
my\_notes field, [202](#)  
MySQL  
    connecting to, [181–182](#)  
    distributions, [4](#)  
    installing  
        on Linux, [14–16](#)  
        on Windows, [4–8](#)  
    resources, [534](#)  
    starting, [8–9](#)  
MySQL Monitor, [10–11](#)  
mysql\_connect() function, [181](#), [470](#)  
mysql\_error() function, [181](#), [366](#), [471](#)  
mysql\_fetch\_array() function, [233–234](#), [471](#)  
mysql\_list dbs() function, [185](#), [189](#)  
mysql\_list\_tables() function, [188–190](#)  
mysql\_num\_rows() function, [185](#), [329](#), [471](#)  
mysql\_query() function, [193](#), [214](#), [224](#), [242](#), [471](#)  
mysql\_result() function, [366](#)  
mysql\_select\_db() function, [213](#), [471](#)  
mysql\_tablename() function, [185](#)

# Index

## N

- n12br() function, [159](#), [488](#)
- NAME attribute, [220](#)
- name parameter, setcookie() function, [265](#)
- naming variables, [64–65](#)
- newline character (\n), [122](#), [153](#)
- newsletter forms, mailing lists
  - creating, [407–408](#)
  - testing, [411–413](#)
  - troubleshooting, [413–414](#)
- newsletter scripts, mailing lists, [408–411](#)
- normal forms
  - contact management example, [510–513](#)
  - first normal forms, [507–508](#)
  - overview, [506](#)
  - second normal forms, [508–509](#)
  - third normal forms, [509–510](#)
- not equal to (!=) operator, [77](#)
- now() function, [528](#)
- number\_format() function, [480](#)

# Index

## O

objects

- constructors, [502](#)
- creating, [499–500](#)
- inheritance, [502–504](#)
- methods, [501–502](#)
- properties of, [500–501](#)

octdec() function, [480](#)

opendir() function, [143](#)

operators

- arithmetic, [71](#), [74–77](#), [462](#)
- assignment, [71–74](#), [462](#)
- comparison, [71](#), [77–80](#), [463](#)
- increment/decrement, [463](#)
- logical, [71](#), [81–83](#), [464](#)
- types, [71](#)

or (||) operator, [81](#)

# Index

## P

page breakdowns, access reports, [431–435](#)

passthru() function, [484](#)

PASSWORD() function, [252](#)

path parameter, setcookie() function, [265](#)

permissions, file paths and, [142](#)

personal access reports, [425–427](#)

PHP

Apache configuration, [44–45](#)

code cohabitation, [53–55](#)

installing

for Linux/Unix, [43–44](#)

on Windows, [38–41](#)

resources, [532–534](#)

start and end tags, [50–52](#), [458](#)

structure of, [50](#)

website, [532](#)

XML with, [441–444](#)

PHPBuilder website, [532](#)

phpinfo() function, [68](#), [92](#)

platform-specific HTML, [103–106](#)

populating tables, [229–230](#)

POST method, [86](#), [107](#), [113](#), [120](#), [460](#)

pow() function, [481](#)

pre-defined variables, [68](#)

preferences, sessions, [284–288](#)

preg\_match() function, [100](#)

privileges

GRANT command, [180–181](#)  
users, creating new, [180–181](#)

program execution functions, [483–484](#)

properties, of objects, [500–501](#)

# Index

## R

r mode, fopen() function, [146](#)

r+ mode, fopen() function, [146](#)

rand() function, [481](#)

read-only records, [384–390](#)

readdir() function, [143](#)

reading data from files, [154–157](#)

rec\_label field, [202](#)

record addition forms

    contact management systems, [316–321](#)

    table creation, [220–223](#)

record addition scripts

    contact management systems, [321–325](#)

    table creation, [223–229](#)

record-deletion forms, deleting contacts, [351–355](#)

record-deletion scripts, deleting contacts, [355–358](#)

record lists, contact information, [379–383](#)

record-modification forms, contact management systems, [333–337](#)

record-modification scripts, contact management systems, [337–341](#)

record-selection forms

    contact management systems, [328–333](#)

    deleting contacts, [346–350](#)

records, displaying

    by artist, [240–244](#)

    by date acquired, [238](#)

    by ID, [233–234](#)

    by title, [239–240](#)

redirection forms, [113–115](#)

registering sessions, [282–283](#)  
regular expression functions, [485](#)  
REMOTE\_ADDR environment variable, [93–94](#)  
rename() function, [162–164](#), [476](#)  
renaming files, [162–164](#)  
REPLACE command, [515](#)  
replacing tables, [515–516](#)  
reports, access  
  code snippet, [418–422](#)  
  count, displaying, [422–425](#)  
  database table creation, [417–418](#)  
  page breakdowns, displaying, [431–435](#)  
  personal, [425–427](#)  
  user agents, displaying, [428–431](#)  
require() function, [497–498](#)  
reset() function, [470](#)  
resources  
  Apache, [534](#)  
  MySQL, [534](#)  
  PHP, [532–534](#)  
return statement, [495–496](#)  
returning values from functions, [494–496](#)  
rmdir() function, [477](#)  
round() function, [481](#)  
Run command (Start menu), [8–9](#)

# Index

## S

S option, date formatting, [371](#)  
scripts, creating  
  authentication, [258–261](#)  
  calculation, [89–91](#)  
  contact management systems, [306–312](#)  
  e-mail, sending, [121–124](#)  
  file uploads, [172–173](#)  
  newsletters, mailing lists, [408–411](#)  
record addition  
  contact management systems, [321–325](#)  
  tables, [223–229](#)  
record-deletion, deleting contacts, [355–358](#)  
record-modification, contact management systems, [337–341](#)  
table creation, [212–216](#)  
user addition, authentication, [250–254](#)  
second normal forms, [508–509](#)  
security parameter, setcookie() function, [265](#)  
SELECT command, [12](#), [20](#), [516–517](#)  
semicolon (;), [10](#), [55](#)  
sending e-mail  
  feedback forms  
    creating, [120–121](#)  
    with custom error messages, [32](#), [127–131](#), [133–137](#)  
  scripts, [121–124](#)  
    SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol), [118–119](#)  
server-side code, [50](#)  
servers, listing databases on, [185–187](#)  
session-handling functions, [486](#)  
session\_destroy() function, [486](#)

sessions  
defined, [278](#)  
editing, [282–283](#)  
registering, [282–283](#)  
starting, [279–281](#)  
user preferences, managing, [284–288](#)  
variables, [279](#)

session\_start() function, [279–280](#), [486](#)

SET field, [339](#)

setcookie() function, [265–267](#), [478](#)

setup.exe application, [5](#)

SHOW commands, [519–520](#)

shuffle() function, [470](#)

Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP), [118–119](#)

single quotes ('), [65](#)

sizeof() function, [470](#)

sleep() function, [482](#)

SMALLINT data type, [200](#)

SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol), [118–119](#)

split() function, [485](#)

sprintf() function, [489](#)

SQL (Structured Query Language)  
ALTER command, [514–515](#)  
CREATE command, [513–514](#)  
date and time functions, [518–519](#)  
DELETE command, [516](#)  
DROP command, [513–514](#), [516](#)  
INSERT command, [515](#)  
REPLACE command, [515](#)  
SELECT command, [516–517](#)  
string functions, [517](#)  
UPDATE command, [516](#)

`sql_error_string()` function, [522](#)

SQLite

  creating tables and storing data with, [523–524](#)

  examples, [522–523](#)

  retrieving items with, [524–526](#)

`sqlite_open()` function, [522](#)

`sqlite_query()` function, [527](#)

`sqrt()` function, [481](#)

`srand()` function, [481](#)

start and end tags, PHP, [50–52](#), [458](#)

Start menu commands, Run, [8–9](#)

starting

  Apache, [29–30](#), [34–35](#)

  MySQL, [8–9](#)

  sessions, [279–281](#)

statements

`for`, [466](#)

`else`, [150](#), [165](#)

`exit`, [482](#)

`if`, [89](#)

`if...else`, [79–81](#), [464–465](#)

`return`, [495–496](#)

`while`, [81](#), [466](#)

strings

  concatenation, [122](#)

  functions, [486–491](#)

    discussed, [106](#)

    form values, displaying, [109–110](#)

    input forms, [107–108](#)

    values, [459–460](#)

  variables, [65](#)

`stripslashes()` function, [227](#), [242](#), [410](#), [486](#)

`strlen()` function, [112](#), [489](#)

`strrev()` function, [112](#)  
`strtolower()` function, [112](#), [490](#)  
`strtoupper()` function, [112](#), [490](#)  
Structured Query Language. See [SQL](#)  
subscribers table, mailing lists, [394–396](#)  
subscription forms, mailing lists  
    creating, [397–404](#)  
    testing, [404–406](#)  
`substr()` function, [214](#), [490](#)  
subtraction (-) operator, [74](#)  
superglobals, pre-defined variables, [68](#)  
`symlink()` function, [477](#)  
`system()` function, [484](#)

# Index

## T

- tab character (\t), [126–127](#)
- tables
  - administrative menus, [232–234](#)
  - altering, [514–515](#)
  - cell data, [221–222](#)
  - creating
    - access reports, [417–418](#)
    - script for, [212–216](#)
    - two-step form process, [203](#)
  - data types, list of, [200–202](#)
  - deleting from, [516](#)
  - fields
    - defining, [202–203, 205–210](#)
    - ID number, unique, [203](#)
    - input fields, [204](#)
  - inserting within, [515–516](#)
  - listing in databases, [188–192](#)
  - populating, [229–230](#)
  - record addition form, [220–223](#)
  - record addition script, [223–229](#)
  - records, displaying
    - by artist, [240–244](#)
    - by data acquired, [238](#)
    - by ID, [233–234](#)
    - by title, [239–240](#)
  - replacing, [515–516](#)
  - selecting from, [516–517](#)
  - updating, [515–516](#)
  - user tables, authentication, [248–249](#)
- tags, start and end tags, PHP, [50–52](#)
- test cookies, setting, [267–268](#)

testing

  Apache installation

    on Linux/Unix, [34](#)

    on Windows, [34](#)

  MySQL installation

    on Linux, [16–21](#)

    on Windows, [8–13](#)

  newsletter forms, mailing lists, [411–413](#)

  PHP installation

    for Linux/Unix, [44–45](#)

    for Windows, [41–42](#)

  subscription forms, mailing lists, [404–406](#)

TEXT data type, [201](#)

third normal forms, [509–510](#)

time() function, [266, 472](#)

time functions, [472–474](#)

TIMESTAMP data type, [201](#)

TINYINT data type, [200](#)

title

  displaying records ordered by, [239–240](#)

  title field, [202](#)

trim() function, [235–236, 242, 487](#)

typical installation method

  Apache installation, [26](#)

  MySQL installation, [6–7](#)

# Index

## U

- ucfirst() function, [491](#)
- ucwords() function, [112](#), [491](#)
- underscore character (\_), [64](#), [459](#)
- uniqid() function, [483](#)
- Unix
  - Apache configuration, [32–34](#)
  - Apache installation, [30–31](#)
  - PHP installation, [43–44](#)
- unlink() function, [164–165](#), [477](#)
- unset() function, [491](#)
- UPDATE command, [516](#)
- UPDATE field, [339](#)
- updating tables, [515–516](#)
- uploads, files
  - discussed, [168](#)
  - form creation, [170–171](#)
  - process of, [169](#)
  - upload scripts, [172–173](#)
- UPPER() function, [517](#)
- user agents, access reports, [428–431](#)
- user authentication. See [authentication](#)
- user groups, PHP resources, [534](#)
- user tables, authentication, [248–249](#)
- users, creating new, [180–181](#)
- usleep() function, [482](#)

# Index

## V

VALUE attribute, [138](#)  
value parameter, setcookie() function, [265](#)  
values, returning from functions, [494–496](#)  
varchar command, [249](#)  
VARCHAR data type, [201](#)  
var\_dump() function, [443](#)  
variables  
    arrays, [461](#)  
    constants, [68–70](#)  
    from cookies, [460](#)  
    creating, [64](#)  
    defined, [64](#)  
    environment variables, [460–461](#)  
        discussed, [92](#)  
        HTTP\_USER\_AGENT, [95–96](#)  
        REMOTE\_ADDR, [93–94](#)  
    floating-point values, [65, 459](#)  
    font\_family, [284–285](#)  
    font\_size, [284, 286](#)  
    functions, [491](#)  
    global, [67](#)  
    hidden, [130](#)  
    HTML forms, [460](#)  
    integers, [65, 459](#)  
    local, [67](#)  
    msg, [298](#)  
    naming, [64–65](#)  
    pre-defined, [68](#)  
    sessions, [279](#)  
    string values, [65, 459–460](#)  
    superglobals, [68](#)

# Index

## W

- w mode, fopen() function, [146](#)
- w+ mode, fopen() function, [146](#)
- websites
  - Apache, [24](#)
  - ApacheWeek, [534](#)
  - DevShed, [532](#)
  - PHP, [532](#)
  - PHPBuilder, [532](#)
  - WeberDev, [533](#)
  - Webmonkey, [533](#)
  - Zend Technologies, [532](#)
- WeberDev website, [533](#)
- Webmonkey website, [533](#)
- WEEK() function, [519](#)
- WEEKDAY() function, [518](#)
- while statement, [81](#), [466](#)
- Win32 Binary, [24](#)
- Windows
  - Apache configuration, [27–28](#)
  - Apache installation, [24–27](#)
  - extensions, configuring, [452–453](#)
  - MySQL installation, [4–8](#)
  - PHP installation, [38–41](#)

# Index

## X

XML (Extensible Markup Language)  
case-sensitivity, [440](#)  
defined, [438](#)  
parse and display content from, [444–447](#)  
with PHP, [441–444](#)  
structure of, [438–440](#)  
`xmlparse.php`, [447](#)  
XSL (Extensible Style Language), [438](#)

# **Index**

## **Y-Z**

Y option, date formatting, [371](#)

YEAR() function, [519](#)

Zend Technologies website, [532](#)



## **List of Tables**

## **Chapter 4: Mixing PHP and HTML**

Table 4.1: Basic PHP Start and End Tags

## **Chapter 5: Introducing Variables and Operators**

[Table 5.1:](#) Assignment Operators

[Table 5.2:](#) Arithmetic Operators

[Table 5.3:](#) Comparison Operators

## **Chapter 9: Using Your File System**

Table 9.1: Modes Used with `fopen()`

## **Chapter 12: Creating a Database Table**

[Table 12.1:](#) Some MySQL Data Types

[Table 12.2:](#) Fields for my\_music

## **Chapter 16: Using Cookies**

Table 16.1: Common Times

## **Chapter 18: Planning Your System**

Table 18.1: Fields for my\_contacts

## **Chapter 22: Working with Contacts**

Table 22.1: Date Formatting Example

## **Chapter 23: Managing a Simple Mailing List**

Table 23.1: Fields for the subscribers Table

## **Chapter 24: Creating Custom Logs and Reports**

Table 24.1: Apache Log File Settings

## **Appendix A: Additional Configuration Options**

Table A.1: Windows Extensions

Table A.2: Some Available Extensions

## **Appendix B: Basic PHP Language Reference**

[Table B.1:](#) Basic PHP Start and End Tags

[Table B.2:](#) Arithmetic Operators

[Table B.3:](#) Assignment Operators

[Table B.4:](#) Comparison Operators

[Table B.5:](#) Increment/Decrement Operators

[Table B.6:](#) Logical Operators

[Table B.7:](#) date () Function Formats

[Table B.8:](#) fopen () Function Modes

[Table B.9:](#) sprintf () Function Formatting Directives

## **Appendix D: Database Normalization and SQL Reference**

[Table D.1:](#) The Student and Courses Table

[Table D.2:](#) The students Table

[Table D.3:](#) The students\_courses Table

[Table D.4:](#) The courses Table

[Table D.5:](#) The New students\_courses Table

[Table D.6:](#) The courses Table

[Table D.7:](#) The instructors Table

[Table D.8:](#) The Original my\_contacts Table

[Table D.9:](#) Fields for the address Table

[Table D.10:](#) Fields for the phone Table

[Table D.11:](#) Fields for the email Table

[Table D.12:](#) The New my\_contacts Table